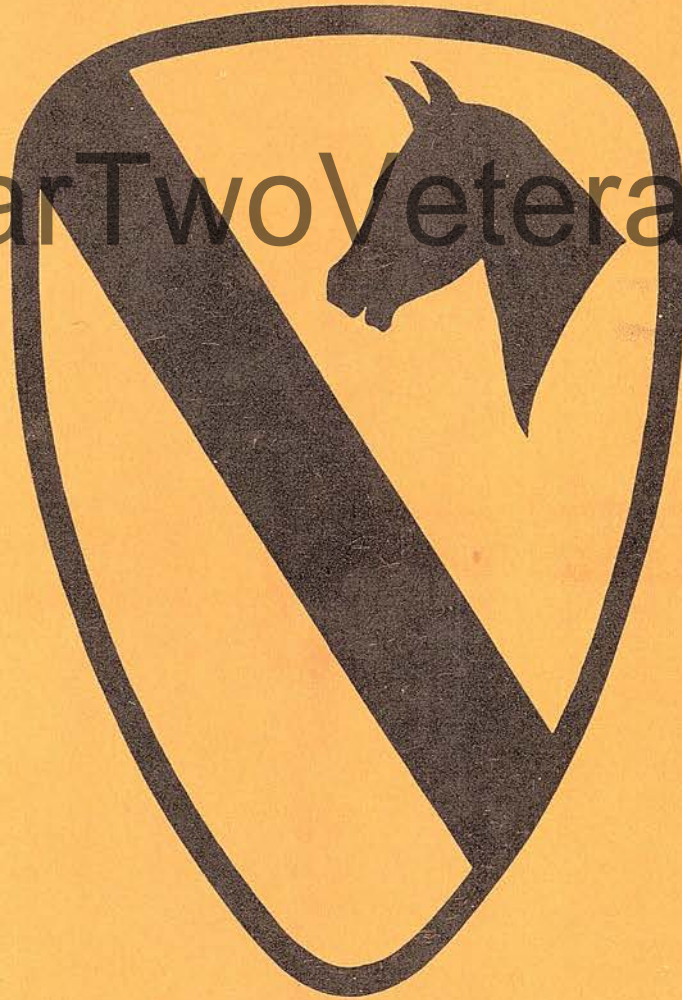


RY  
s/DN  
IN  
ORLD  
AR II  
IGHT



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

PPAN





JAPAN

Tokyo

CHINA

Luzon

PHILIPPINES

Leyte

MANILA

BORNEO

CELEBES

EQUATOR

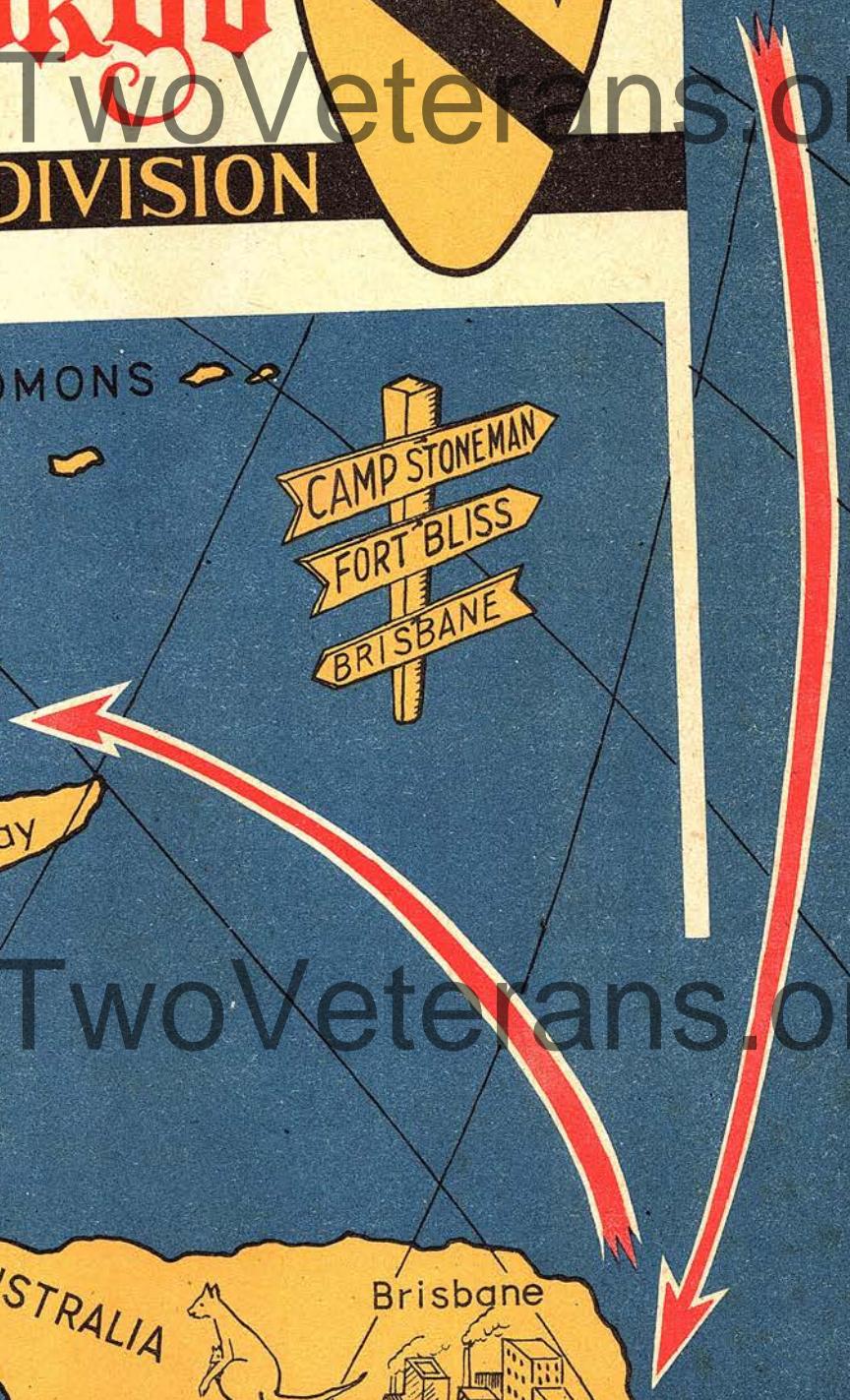
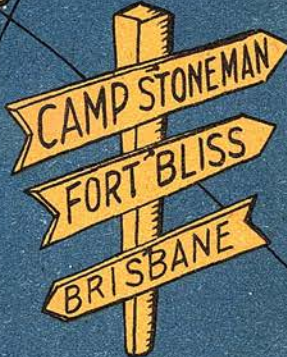
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# Road to Tokyo

1ST CAVALRY DIVISION





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

THE 1ST CAVALRY DIVISION  
IN WORLD WAR II

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



THE  
1ST CAVALRY DIVISION

IN

WORLD WAR II

---

Compiled By

Major B. C. Wright

Division Historian

PRINTED IN OCCUPIED JAPAN

BY THE

TOPPAN PRINTING COMPANY LTD.

TOKYO



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

Copyright, 1947

By Bertram C. Wright

*1st Printing, November 1947 . . . . . 5,000 copies*

*2d Printing, December 1947 . . . . . 25,000 copies*

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

This history of the 1st Cavalry Division  
in World War II

is dedicated to the memory of the brave fighting men  
of the division who moved in to kill the enemy and  
who gave their lives in battle.

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# CONTENTS

Foreword .....	vii
Acknowledgements .....	viii
From Indian Fighting to New Guinea .....	1
Australian Pictorial .....	5
The Admiralty Campaign .....	15
Admiralty Pictorial .....	39
The Leyte-Samar Campaign .....	71
Leyte Pictorial .....	101
The Luzon Campaign .....	125
Luzon Pictorial .....	157
Artillery Combat Operations, Col. Rex E. Chandler .....	199
The Occupation of Japan .....	203
Occupation Pictorial .....	209
The Chain of Command .....	239
Organic Units of the Division .....	240
Distinguished Unit Citations .....	241
The 1st Cavalry Division Association .....	242
We Shall Not Forget .....	243
Photo Credits .....	245



[WorldWarTwoVeterans.org](http://WorldWarTwoVeterans.org)

[WorldWarTwoVeterans.org](http://WorldWarTwoVeterans.org)



## FOREWORD

This is the account of the 1st Cavalry Division's activities in World War II. It has been prepared in an effort to pay a measure of tribute to those brave heroes, living and dead, who gave so much of themselves and their abilities in order that The First Team might be First.

Although much space has been devoted to describing the movements and locations of the various component units during the progress of the different campaigns, this book does not treat exhaustively of all phases of the tactics and strategy employed in the 1st Cavalry successes. Such treatment was not feasible for many reasons.

It may seem to some readers that too much attention has been given to the individual acts of heroism, and that the text has been supersaturated with references to the bravery and gallantry that were so necessary to the winning of the 1st Cavalry Division's objectives. In explanation of this aspect, let it be said that inasmuch as this book was written for the troopers, their friends, and their families, it seemed only fitting that emphasis should be placed on the actions of the individuals. Most of this information came from the citations as published in general orders and therefore is eye-witness testimony of the conditions encountered and the manner in which they were overcome. By presenting facts rather than opinions the way is left clear for the reader to draw his own conclusions as to the danger, hardships, and valor that prevailed. This book contains the name of nearly every 1st Cavalry trooper who won a Silver Star or higher award during World War II. Because there were so many of these, not enough space existed in which to describe the brave acts of the thousands of men who won Bronze Stars and Purple Hearts. Nearly everybody mentioned in the book was the recipient of a Silver Star or higher award whether the text specifically says so or not.

In the selection of the pictures, particular attention was paid to scenes which showed the troops in action or depicted the conditions which they encountered. In deference to the desire for accuracy, identification of the individuals in many of the pictures was not attempted. If the reader thinks he sees himself or an acquaintance in one of the pictures, he is probably correct. It is hoped that no one will be disappointed.

Accuracy in the spelling of names cannot be guaranteed for many reasons. The names of the home towns are those given in the general orders as addresses of the next of kin.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The preparation of this book has not been easy but it would have been much more difficult if it had not been for the generous cooperation of so many persons who were closely connected with the 1st Cavalry Division during its World War II combat. The writer is particularly grateful to those officers and men who labored so long and so carefully to prepare the official histories of the various campaigns wondering as they worked, no doubt, who, if anybody would ever read their product. Thanks are also freely given to all of the press and Signal Corps photographers who at frequent risk of their lives recorded the pictures published in this book.

The writer has called on many persons for answers to questions of time, fact, and location. Among the many persons who have been helpful in providing information were: Lieut. Colonel William E. Lobit, Colonel Charles A. Sheldon, Lieut. Colonel Willis G. Ethel, Lieut. Colonel Lyman D. Bothwell, Lieut. Colonel Boyd L. Branson, Lieut. Colonel Allen Bozarth, Lieut. Colonel William L. Nash, Lieut. Colonel William L. Kerr, Lieut. Colonel Rowland H. Renwanz, Major Henry W. Freidinger, Capt. Howard Peak, Lieut. Colonel Charles E. Tenneson, Lieut. Colonel Haskett L. Conner, Colonel Walter Finnegan, Colonel William J. Bradley, Mr. Tom Shafer of Acme Newspictures, Mr. Carl Mydans of Time-Life, Brigadier General Hugh F.T. Hoffman, and Major General William C. Chase.

Among the publications which have been a source of information and to which the writer is indebted were: Battle Diary of the Admiralty Campaign by Colonel James B. Corbett, The First Was First by Major Harold D. Steward, the Sixth Army's official accounts of the Admiralty, Leyte-Samar, and Luzon Campaigns, Report After Action of XIV Corps in the M-1 (Luzon) Operation, and The History of the United States Army by Colonel William A. Ganoe.

Thanks are freely given to the Armored-Cavalry Journal for permission to reprint Colonel Chandler's article on the 1st Cavalry Division Artillery which appeared in the May-June 1947 issue of that magazine.

Especially grateful is due the personnel of the Toppan Printing Company in Tokyo for the efforts they have made under difficult conditions in publishing this book.



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

**THE TOP COMMANDERS**

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

No greater record has emerged from the War than that of the 1st Cavalry Division—swift and sure in attack, tenacious and durable in defense, and loyal and cheerful under hardship. It has written its own noble history. My personal connection with it in many moments of crisis has especially endeared it to me.

MacArthur

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*For You Arthur  
1945*

General of the Army Douglas MacArthur



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

The record made by the 1st Cavalry Division during World War II is one of which everyone of its members may be justly proud.

Outstanding as a mounted organization in the Third Army, it was equally outstanding as a dismounted organization in the Sixth Army. Its brilliant performance during the Admiralties, Leyte and Luzon campaigns of the Sixth Army in the Southwest Pacific Theater and the valor, tenacity, and fortitude displayed by its members during those operations in fighting the determined, fanatical enemy, frequently under adverse terrain and weather conditions, have never been surpassed. Its deeds form a glorious page in the military history of our country.

Walter Kreuger  
General, U. S. Army

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

To my comrades of the First Cavalry Division  
with affectionate regards  
Walter Kreuger

General Walter Kreuger



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

The stirring exploits of the 1st Cavalry Division in the Pacific during this war can only instill in one who looks back on them a feeling of admiration, respect and pride in the fact that the Army of the United States can produce such a splendid fighting organization.

Robt Eichelberger  
Lieut. General, U.S. Army

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

Lieut. General Robert Eichelberger

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Major General Innis P. Swift who commanded the 1st Cavalry Division at Fort Bliss when we exchanged our horses for jeeps, who brought the division overseas and trained it in Australia, who led it to victory in the Admiralty Campaign, and who commanded I Corps under which the division served in January 1945 in Luzon, P.I.*





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



CORPS



*Major General Franklin C. Sibert, commander of X Corps under which the 1st Cavalry Division fought the Leyte Campaign.*



*Lieutenant General Oscar W. Griswold, commander of XIV Corps under which the division served during the Luzon Campaign.*



• COMMANDERS

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

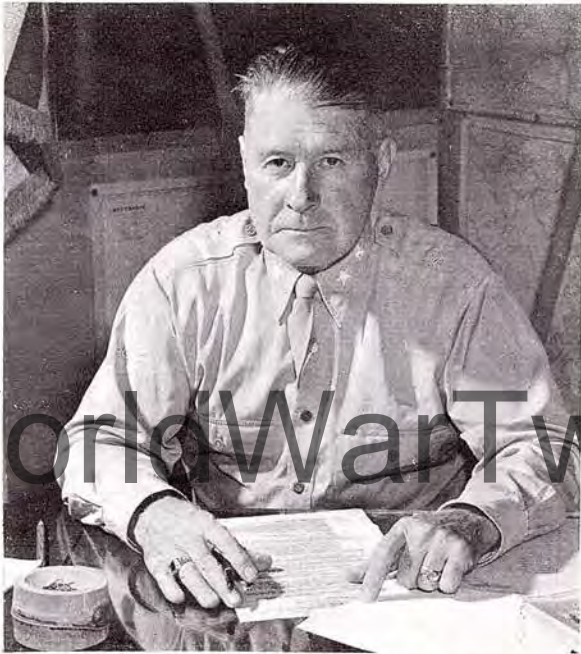


*Licutenant General Charles P. Hall, commander of XI Corps to which the division was assigned for its movement to Japan and the first six months of the occupation.*



*Major General Charles W. Ryder, commander of IX Corps to which the division was assigned 1 March 1946.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



DIVISION

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Major General Innis P. Swift under whose command the division went overseas, trained in Australia and won the Admiralty Campaign.*



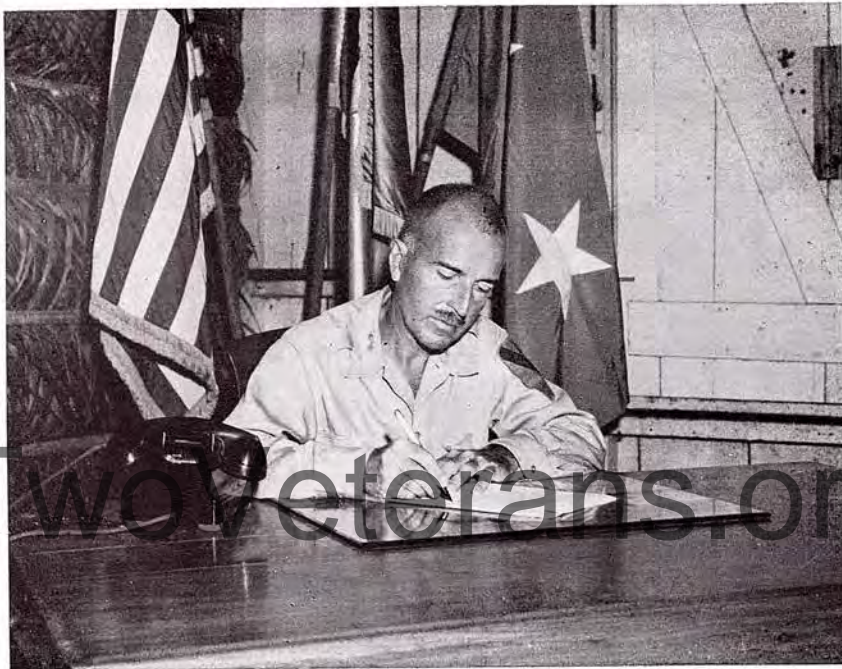
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Major General Verne D. Mudge who led the division through the Leyte and Luzon campaigns until he was wounded at Antipolo, Luzon, P.I.*



COMMANDERS

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



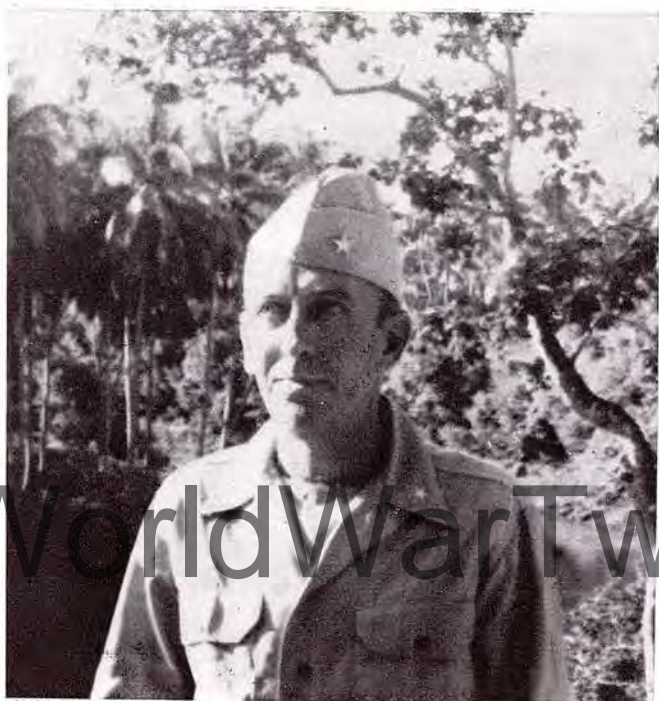
*Major General William C. Chase, commander of the flying column which dashed to Manila, and of the 1st Cavalry Division during the occupation of Japan.*



*Brigadier General Hugh F. T. Hoffman who led the division to victory in the Luzon Campaign.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Brigadier General Rex Chandler, commanding general of the 1st Cavalry Division Artillery during the campaigns of World War II.*



*Brigadier General John H. Stadler, Jr. who commanded the 12th Cavalry Regiment in the Admiralty and Leyte Campaigns and the 1st Cavalry Brigade during the Luzon Campaign.*



*Colonel Charles A. Sheldon, Chief-of-staff of the 1st Cavalry Division throughout the War.*



# FROM INDIAN FIGHTING TO NEW GUINEA

The traditions of the 1st Cavalry Division go back to the era in United States history when the American frontier was being pushed westward. As the early pioneers moved their families and their meager belongings into the vast unoccupied Great Plains Area, bands of marauding Indians saw an easy opportunity to acquire the material benefits of western civilization without going through the formality of legal acquisition. The settlers did not have much in the way of worldly goods, but they had firearms, horses, and a moderate supply of food. These items appealed to the rapacious aborigine. They were his for the taking, according to his viewpoint, and he frequently took them along with the scalps of their owners.

The United States Government's answer to this challenge was to increase the military forces and send army units to protect the settlers. The 1st Cavalry Division itself did not come into being as a division until 1921, but the histories of its component units are studded with valorous deeds and brave fighting that began in the frontier days before the Civil War and have continued through the Second World War.

The 5th Cavalry, oldest of the division's regiments, once rode in revengeful pursuit of the savage Sioux Indians after the massacre of five troops of the 7th Cavalry Regiment commanded by Brevet Major General George Armstrong Custer at the Little Big Horn.

The 7th and 8th Cavalry Regiments fought together against the Utes, and old Chief Sitting Bull on the western plains.

The 12th Cavalry, a later addition to the 1st Cavalry Division, won its spurs in the Mexican Border uprising, and in two tours of duty in the Philippine Islands.

Jefferson Davis was Secretary of War when, on 3 March 1855, Congress authorized the formation of the 5th Cavalry Regiment (then designated as the 2d Cavalry but subsequently redesignated as the 5th Cavalry when the senior mounted units consisting of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Dragoons, and the 1st Cavalry Regiment were respectively renamed the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th Cavalry Regiments). Troops for the 5th Cavalry were drawn from Alabama, Virginia, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Missouri, Kentucky, Indiana, and Ohio.

After being activated at Louisville, Ky., the 5th Cavalry marched to Fort Belknap, Texas, in the fall of the year. Its mission was to stop the lawless activities of the Kickapoo, Lipan, and Apache Indians.

During the next four years, the 5th Cavalry engaged in 40 fights against the Indians.

At the outbreak of the Civil War in 1861, the regiment's first commanding officer resigned to lead the armies of the South against those of the North. He was Lieut. Colonel Robert E. Lee.

During the Civil War the regiment, or some of its troops, participated in battles at Gaines Mill, Fairfax Courthouse, Falling Waters, Martinsburg, Bull Run, Yorktown, Williamsburg, Charlottesville, The Wilderness, Shenandoah Valley, and many others. At the war's end, men of the 5th Cavalry sat on their horses at Appamattox to watch the surrender of General Lee.

For the next ten years the 5th Cavalry fought the Sioux, Cheyenne, Arapaho, and Apache Indians. The Apaches were defeated in 94 engagements. Through the history of the 5th Cavalry in the Indian Wars run the names of Sitting Bull, Crazy Horse, and Chief Joseph, leader of the "Pierced Noses," and recognized as one of the wildest of all Indian warriors.

In 1876, burning with revenge for the annihilation of five troops of Colonel Custer's 7th Cavalry, the 5th Cavalry stormed after the Sioux Indians in the Big Horn and Yellowstone campaigns. In the ranges of the Big Horn, led by Buffalo Bill Cody's scouts and commanded by Colonel Wesley Meritt, men of the 5th Cavalry made a charge which broke the back of Chief Crazy Horse's Cheyennes for all time.

Recalled to San Antonio, Texas in 1898, the regiment proceeded to Tampa, Florida for the duration of the Spanish-American War, then sailed to Porto Rico where, for outstanding performance of duty in skirmishes at Hormigueros and Las Marias, the regiment won the right to carry the Maltese Cross. Early the following year the regiment returned to the United States where it remained until it went to the Philippines in 1901 for two years of campaigning.

From 1903 to 1908, the regiment was scattered through Colorado, Arizona, New Mexico, and Utah. It participated in action against the Navajo Indians in northern Arizona and southern Utah.

After a four-year tour of duty in the Hawaiian Islands, the 5th Cavalry returned again to the United States. It spent eleven months in Mexico as a part of the Punitive Expedition before coming back to take up station at Fort Bliss, Texas. In 1919, the regiment moved to Marfa, Texas and was in action against Pancho Villa near Juarez, Mexico. In 1921, it moved to Fort Clark, Texas.



In 1941, after a long period of border patrolling interspersed with participation in army maneuvers, the 5th Cavalry went to Fort Bliss to gird itself for action in World War II. At that time, the regimental standard bore the following streamers: Cheyenne—Utes; Nez Percés—Bannocks; Apaches—Little Big Horn; Arizona 1872-1874, Comanches; Oklahoma 1858-1859; Texas 1856-1860; Shenandoah—Appomattox; Cold Harbor—Petersburg; Wilderness—Spotsylvania; Gettysburg—Maryland 1863; Chancellorsville; Antietam—Fredericksburg; Bull Run—Peninsula; Virginia 1861, 1863, 1864; Philippines.

The 7th Cavalry Regiment was organized in 1866 at Fort Riley, Kansas. One of its first commanders was Brevet Major General George A. Custer, famous for his "last stand" against the Sioux Indians. Originally formed with a rough and ready crew of trappers, traders, ex-Civil War veterans, and new recruits, the 7th Cavalry has long been known as the "Garry Owen" regiment, so named after an Irish drinking song which took the fancy of Colonel Custer and his men.

In 1867, the regiment went into action against the savage redskins who were preying on the white settlers on the western plains. In 1868, the 7th Cavalry brought the campaign against the Cheyenne Indians to a close by the battle of Washita which broke their power. For the next five years, the regiment rode out against the Sioux, Apaches, and other tribes who felt its force in a score of bloody battles.

After service in the Yellowstone Valley in 1873, the 7th Cavalry moved to the Black Hills of Dakota in 1874 providing protection for the construction parties of the Northern Pacific Railroad and opening that territory for the discovery of gold and the resultant influx of miners which incidentally brought about renewed hostilities with the Sioux Indians.

In the comprehensive campaign against the Sioux in 1876, the 7th Cavalry was detailed to Major General Alfred H. Terry's column which marched from Bismarck, N.D. to the Yellowstone. At the mouth of the Rosebud, General Terry sent Colonel Custer forward to locate the enemy while he marched on to join forces with Major General Gibbon. Custer discovered the Indian encampment on the Little Big Horn River, 25 June, little dreaming of the tremendous strength which the Indians had concentrated at the place. He deployed his regiment into three columns, and, sending two of them under Major Reno and Captain Benteen to attack abreast on his left, he himself led the third, consisting of five companies totalling 264 men. He was surprised by an overwhelming force of Indians concealed in the ravine, and his followers were slaughtered to a man. Reno and Benteen were themselves kept on the

defensive and not until the arrival of the 5th Cavalry and 17th Infantry the next day was the extent of the tragedy known. A horse named "Comanche," bleeding from bullet and arrow wounds, was the only thing left alive on the battlefield.

By 1877 the 7th Cavalry was once more in action, this time against one of the shrewdest of all Indian generals, Chief Joseph of the Nez Percés Indians. In one of the bloodiest battles of the campaign, troops of the 7th and 5th Cavalry Regiments slashed into Joseph's savages. For four days Joseph held out while bullets whistled into his lines. At last, he surrendered never to fight again.

Foreshadowing events to come, the regiment had served two tours of duty in the Philippines prior to 1906. It took part in the Punitive Expedition into Mexico and afterward continued to patrol the Mexican border. With station at Fort Bliss, Texas, the 7th Cavalry became a part of the 1st Cavalry Division in 1921.

Prior to World War II, the 7th Cavalry was authorized to carry the following battle streamers: Little Big Horn, Comanche, Dakota, and Wounded Knee. During its existence, five officers and 38 enlisted men of the regiment have been awarded the Congressional Medal of Honor.

The 8th Cavalry Regiment was organized in California in 1866 when there was an imperative need for mounted units to combat the hostile Indians of the Southwest. It fought with the 7th Cavalry against the Sioux Indians. In 1866, the 8th Cavalry made a memorable march of more than 2000 miles on horseback when it moved from Fort Concho, Texas to Montana and South Dakota. Regimental headquarters were set up at Fort Meade, South Dakota where they remained until 1898 when the unit moved to Alabama and was shipped to Cuba. In 1902, the regiment returned to the Mexican Border where it engaged in patrolling activities until 1905 when it was sent to the Philippines. There the regiment patrolled the supply lines, water points, and communication system on Luzon and Jolo until 1907 when it was returned to the United States with station at Marfa, Texas. Going to the Philippines again in 1912, the 8th Cavalry remained overseas until 1915 when unrest along the Mexican Border in 1915 brought the regiment back to the Southwest, where, with the 5th and 7th Cavalry Regiments, it participated in the Mexican Punitive Expedition. Disappointed at being ordered to remain on the Border during the First World War, the troopers once more sustained the reputation of their regiment by doing their part in keeping the peace with Mexico. In 1919, the regiment marched to Fort Bliss where it later became a part of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade.

The regimental battle standard bore four battle



streamers in 1943: Arizona—1867, 1868, and 1869; Oregon—1868; Mexico—1877; South Dakota—Pine Ridge; and, Sioux Indians. In the course of its campaigns, troopers of the 8th Cavalry have been awarded 92 Congressional Medals of Honor.

The 12th Cavalry was organized at Fort Sam Houston, Texas in 1901. It performed two tours of duty in the Philippines—from 1903 to 1905 and from 1909 to 1911. In 1914, the regiment was assigned to patrol the Mexican Border which duty it continued to fulfill throughout the First World War. In 1916, the 1st Squadron was ordered to Corozal, Canal Zone where it stayed until 1921. The 2d and 3d Squadrons remained on the Border.

Although the 1st Cavalry Division was organized in 1921, the 12th Cavalry did not become a member of it until 1932 when the 1st Cavalry Regiment was transferred out to become a mechanized unit.

On 12 September 1921, the 1st Cavalry Division was formally activated under the new National Defense Act as a regular army division. In addition to the two brigades of cavalry, the original organization included the 82nd Field Artillery Battalion (Horse), the 8th Mounted Engineers, the 1st Signal Troop, Ambulance Company No. 1, and truck companies and pack troops. Major General Robert Lee Howze served as the first division commander.

Other generals who have commanded the division since are: Joseph C. Castner, Edwin B. Winans, Samuel D. Rockenback, George Van Horn Mosely, Charles J. Symmonds, George C. Barnhardt, Walter Cowan Short, Ewing E. Booth, Frank R. McCoy, Hamilton S. Hawkins, Francis Le J. Parker, Ben Lear, Kenyon A. Joyce, Robert C. Richardson, Jr., Innis P. Swift, Verne D. Mudge, Hugh F. T. Hoffman, and William C. Chase.

In 1923, the division assembled for maneuvers in the Camp Marfa area. From 1923 through 1927 its units served at Fort Bliss, Fort Clark, and Camp Marfa, again engaging in combined maneuvers in 1927. In 1928, the 8th Engineer Squadron changed station to Fort McIntosh, Laredo, and the 1st Armored Car Squadron, after its activation at Aberdeen Proving Ground, marched across the country to join the division in November. This unit remained with the division through various reorganizations until it went overseas as the 91st Reconnaissance Squadron to take part in the February, 1943 engagements at Kasserine Pass, and in later battles in Tunisia and Sicily.

In 1929, elements of the division stationed at Fort Bliss were deployed along the border from El Paso, Texas to Douglas, Arizona as a precautionary measure during the Escobar Revolution in Mexico. Artillery reorganization in 1932 converted the 82d Field Artillery Battalion (Horse) into the 82d Field Artillery Regiment.

During the Depression of the 1930's, the 1st Cavalry Division assumed the operation of the Arizona-New Mexico District of the Civilian Conservation Corps, and with a total division strength of 3,300 provided the nucleus and the headquarters for CCC Companies which at one time aggregated more than 62,500 in strength.

The division engaged in maneuvers in 1936 at Camp Marfa, and in 1938 and 1939 at Balmorhea, Texas. After the Third Army maneuvers in Louisiana in 1940, the division (less the 1st Cavalry Brigade) undertook the assignment of constructing cantonments for 20,000 anti-aircraft troops at Fort Bliss and developing the El Paso Army Air Base.

Expansion of the division by the reactivation of Troops "C" and "G" in each regiment occurred in 1940.

Early in 1941, the entire division was assembled at Fort Bliss for the first time and an era of intensive training was inaugurated in preparation for the expansion of the army. The division itself was increased in size by the separation of the Service Troop from the Headquarters Troop, and the activation of the 61st Field Artillery Battalion as the first medium artillery support of the division. The authorized strength of the division was increased from 3,575 to 10,110. At the same time cadres were furnished for other newly activated units. The 56th Cavalry Brigade, Texas National Guard, had joined the division in the late fall of 1940 and was integrated into the intensive training program.

In 1941, the division, then consisting of 70 per cent replacement personnel, again engaged in Third Army maneuvers in Louisiana training areas, returning to Fort Bliss in October as finely trained and conditioned and with as supreme a confidence in its own military efficiency, as any unit ever enjoyed. The news of Pearl Harbor found some members of the division on furlough and others back in civilian life after a year's training, but the majority of these absentees hurried to Fort Bliss from all over the United States to be with their favorite outfit when it went overseas.

Although the division was champing at the bit for immediate combat, its first war-time mission was to continue its border surveillance as a component of the Southern Land Frontier of the Southern Defense Command. Shortly after the outbreak of war, the division commander submitted plans for the conversion of the division from horse to bantam truck operation, with emphasis on the desirability of early employment in active combat.

1942 dawned with the division apparently fated to continue in the role of border patrol which it had performed during the First World War. Maintenance of the fine edge of training was assured by



participation in the fourth Louisiana maneuvers later that year, and with the desire for overseas service growing more intense, morale still remained high.

In February 1943 came the welcome orders which alerted the division for an overseas assignment as a dismounted unit. Immediately horses and horse equipment were turned in; the 8th Engineer Squadron came back from the Desert Training Center to replace the recently activated 61st Engineer Squadron; the 7th Reconnaissance Squadron replaced the 3d Reconnaissance Squadron; and the 99th Field Artillery, a 75mm pack battalion, was assigned to supplement artillery support. Transition to a dismounted status was completed well in advance of the scheduled movement date. The last elements of the division cleared Fort Bliss on 18 June 1943, staged through Camp Stoneman, California, departing from the United States on 3 July and closing at Strathpine in Queensland, Australia on 26 July 1943.

The trip to Australia was made in two ships: the S.S. Monterey and S.S. George Washington. Trucks met the debarking troops and transported them to their base, Camp Strathpine, fifteen miles north of Brisbane. There, for the next six months, the troopers had a busy time building their camp into a show place that became known as the most beautiful military establishment in Australia, engaging in jungle and amphibious training, and entertaining themselves and the Australians with such spectacles as a rodeo and a field meet. All during the period there was a steady stream of official visitors

who came to inspect the camp and the activities of the soldiers.

Tactical lessons had established the need for additional fire support in the South West Pacific Theater; so in the fall of 1943, the 271st Field Artillery Battalion of 105mm howitzers was activated in the division, and weapons troops (designated Troops "D" and "H") in each cavalry regiment were formed. The 7th Reconnaissance Squadron was inactivated, one troop being reformed and designated the 302 Cavalry Reconnaissance Troop, and another being organized into the 603rd Light Tank Company (later equipped with medium tanks).

The 99th Field Artillery, until this time organized as a pack 75mm howitzer battalion, was reorganized to become truck drawn and act as the counterpart of the 82nd Field Artillery Battalion.

Early in 1944, the 1st Cavalry Division completed a movement to Oro Bay, New Guinea. Ready and impatient for immediate combat service, the troopers had difficulty in concealing their disappointment at being employed as labor troops to unload ships at their new location. The work kept them physically hardened, however, for the combat service which came later.

To men of the 1st Cavalry Division it had seemed to be a long, hard battle just to get the privilege of fighting the enemy but their opportunity came on the last day of February 1944 and they were ready to make the most of it.



AUSTRALIAN

PICTORIAL

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*IN AUSTRALIA*

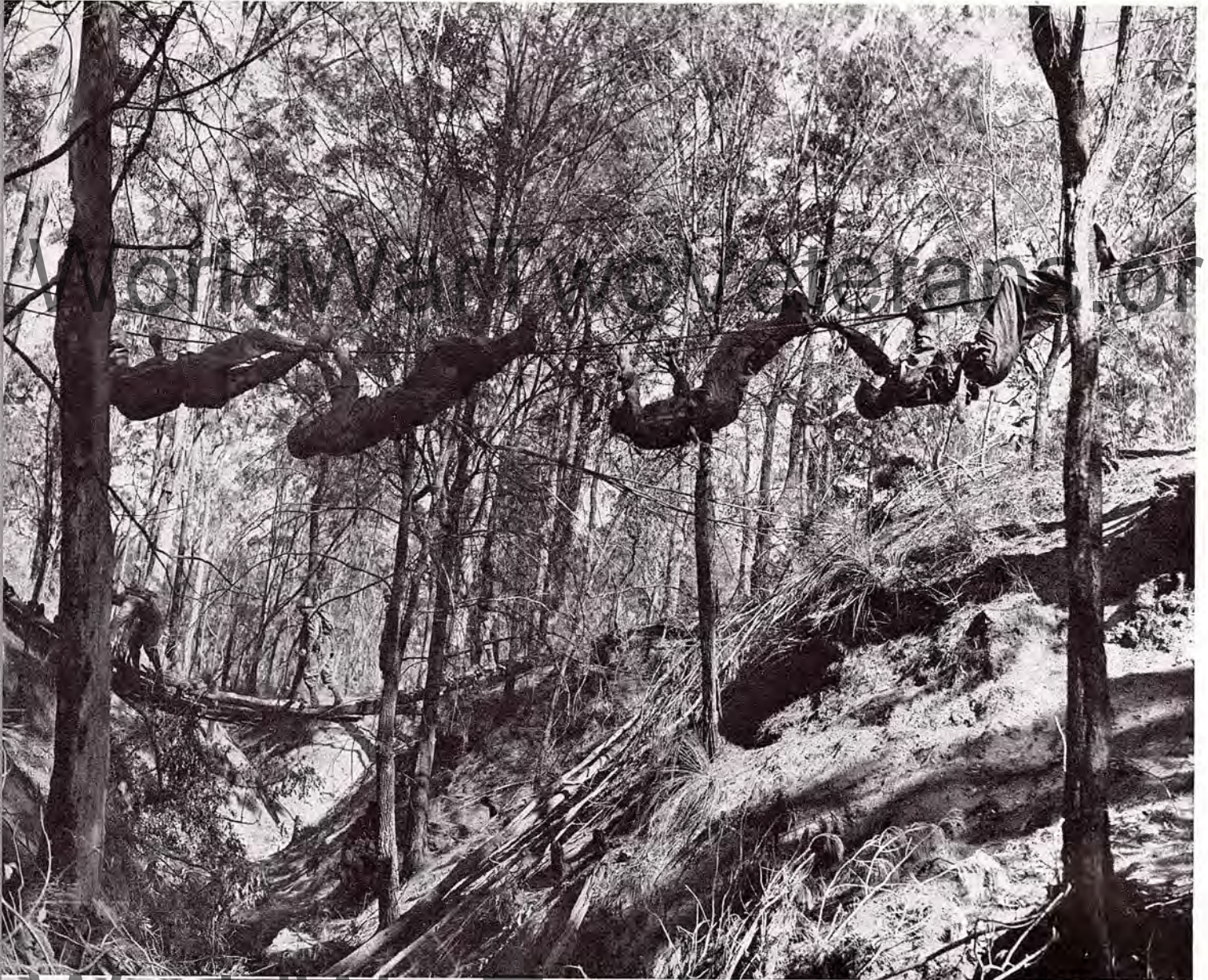
*We built our camp at Strathpine*



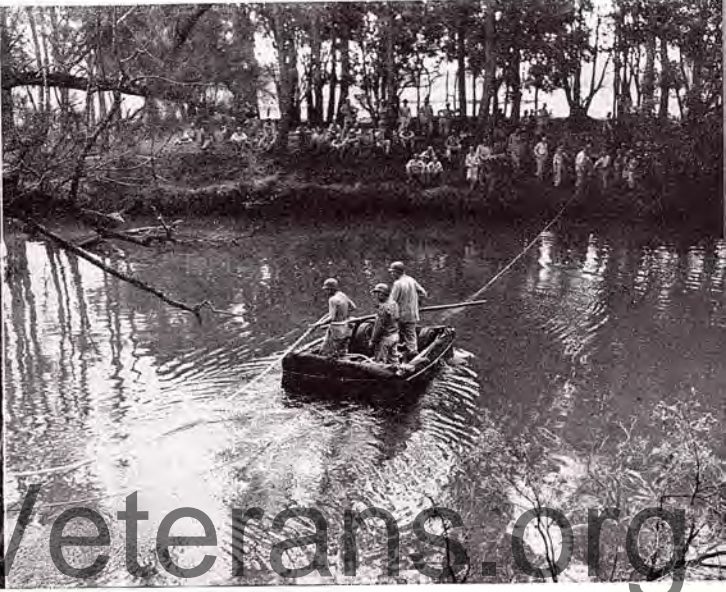
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*We trained*







WorldWarVeterans.org



WorldWarVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*We were inspected*

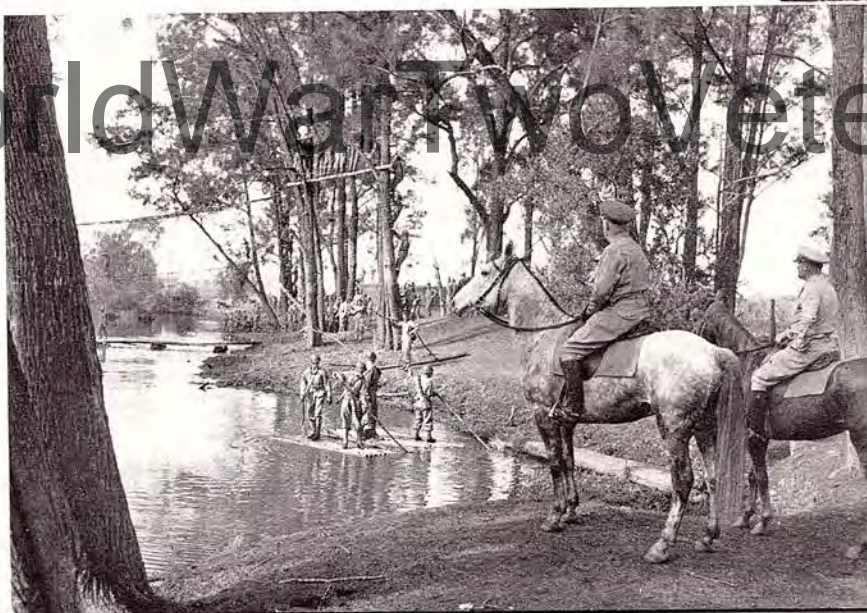


WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*We paraded in Brisbane*











*We held a rodeo*

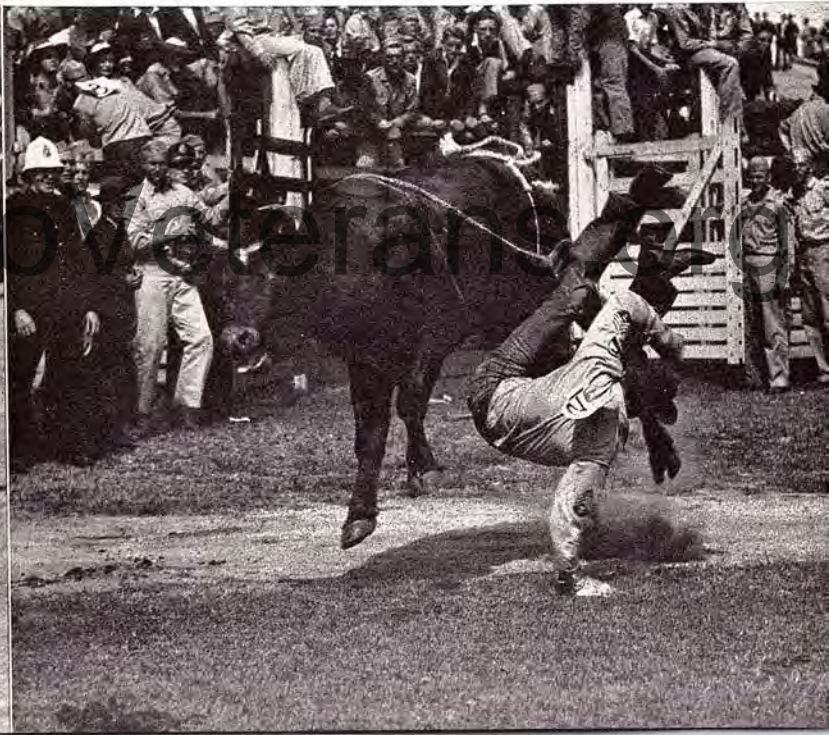


WorldWarVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWar

Veterans



## ARMY RODEO.

60,000 People Around R.N.A. Ring.

A Great Day for Everyone.

Among the 141 competitors scheduled to appear in the Army Rodeo last Sunday at the Royal National Association stadium for international Allied world championships were Ted Mumford, of Ocean View, and Cecil Cruice, from Lacey's Creek. Several rodeo have been held at Dayboro and of course there was a very big exodus of Pine Shire folk to see the grand array of performers in a picturesque setting unequalled anywhere in the world. Some were also there from Mt. Mee. At one stage, under the wings of a Flying Fortress, the Australian Scots Band, everyone of whose members fought in the Great War and major operations in this one, without the loss of a man, performed in the centre of the arena while a mob of bullocks which the announcer described as calves, seemed equally interested in the strains of the internationally famous band under the direction of Mr. Gordon Young and featuring Miss Jessie Massie's Girl Scot Dancers. Colourful civilian crowds, the frocking of the feminine sightseers blending with the khaki and civilian dressing of the 60,000 men, women and children who looked on from every vantage point. Daring young men whose nerve was measured by the height of the three lofty electric flood-lighting standards, gazed down from these giddy heights. Before the show began the scoreboard awning collapsed with a resounding roar, pitching its over-burden of rodeo fans into a sea of humanity below amid a whirl of dust and indescribable confusion. Happily, perfect weather prevailed for the display of millinery and headgear was only appreciated by those aloft, and only an occasional umbrella blocked out the scene for those unfortunate enough to be in the rear of its vicinity. Carefree crowds assembled on the clover lawn and were only disturbed when maddened bullocks or wild horses essayed to scare the wits out of them—then it was a scramble. The pleading and praying of the announcer to get back out of danger only served to soothe them on. In U.S.A. he said the Americans went back, but he forgot the Australian always goes forward. American Army nurses scored well in selling programmes. These depicted Major-General Innis Palmer Swift, the Commanding General, whose interest in the enlisted men's sports and educational activities made possible this "Madison Square" show and others of a similar nature that break the arduous strain of a strenuous training schedule. The show was directed by Lieut "Dick" Ryan and, believe you me, it was a great day for everyone.

From the "North  
Coast and  
Stanley Dis-  
trict News"

Thurs., 4 Nov 1943

Expressing backwoodsey  
style dear to the  
Division and which  
endears it to its  
friends.

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# THE ADMIRALTY CAMPAIGN

The Bismarck Archipelago is a chain of islands that extends like a flexed and disjointed arm from the north coast of New Guinea and curves to the west, pressing the warm blue waters of the Bismarck Sea against New Guinea's palm-fringed shore. The islands of New Britain and New Ireland give, respectively, the principal substance to the upper arm and forearm of this unconnected appendage. Out in the place of the finger-tips are the Admiralty Islands, commanding the northwest approaches to the Bismarck Sea.

Early in the war, the Japanese, in their southward march, moved into the Bismarck Archipelago and established strong bases at Rabaul and Kavieng which remained in the possession of Nippon until after the final surrender. In the Admiralty Islands, too, they set up garrisons to protect the strategically situated airdromes at Lorengau and Momote, but the 1st Cavalry Division put this area under new management in March, 1944.

After the Allied forces had fought their way back along the New Guinea coast to Finschhafen and Sador in 1943 and early 1944, General MacArthur's island-hopping campaign was continued with the landing of the 112th Cavalry at Arawe and the 1st Marine Division at Cape Gloucester on New Britain Island. The next step was to by-pass the Japs at Rabaul and Kavieng by seizing the Admiralties. These islands with their important airdromes would provide a springboard for future operations and serve as a base from which Japanese shipping could be prevented from reinforcing the garrisons at Rabaul and other Japanese troops stranded in the Bismarck Archipelago. "We'll leave them to wither on the vine," said General MacArthur.

Major islands of the Admiralty Islands group are Los Negros and Manus, separated by a shallow, creek-like strait extending south from Seeadler Harbor to the Bismarck Sea. The islands were seized from Germany in 1914 by Australian forces and were in turn occupied by the Japanese in April 1942.

Los Negros, focal point of the Allied attack, is a horseshoe-shaped island. The southeastern section, where Momote airdrome is situated, is generally flat, well drained, and fertile. Elsewhere, except in the Seeadler plantation areas on the north prong of the horseshoe, the island is rugged with razorback hills covered by dense rain forests and jungle growth. Los Negros Island, prior to the operation, was devoid of roads capable of withstanding heavy motor traffic. Hills, wide streams, and lagoons were major obstacles

to construction of the traffic system.

Manus is an elliptical shaped island approximately 50 miles long and 20 miles wide with an axial mountain range running its entire length. The central and western sections are heavily forested, mostly unexplored, and sparsely inhabited. The greater part of the island is covered by rain forest, with a thick mangrove growth on the foreshore. Manus has a veritable network of streams navigable by canoe for several miles inland. These streams are the principal routes of transportation for the natives. Such trails as exist pass through areas that are either extremely rugged or swampy. Hence, they are easily defended.

On the northeast tip of Manus sits the settlement of Lorengau looking out at Seeadler Harbor. Before the arrival of the Japanese, it was the Australian administrative seat and the only European community in the Admiralty Islands. With a harbor suitable for capital ships, Lorengau had a jetty, customs sheds, government stores, hospital facilities, administrative offices, a radio station, police barracks, traveling officers' bungalow, several private dwellings, and huts occupied by native laborers and servants. An airstrip is situated nearby on the old Australian government plantation. In all there were less than 100 Europeans on Manus and Los Negros when the Japanese arrived. Most of them managed to escape.

In planning for the seizure of the Admiralties, D-Day was originally set for 1 April 1944. On 23 February 1944, however, low flying air reconnaissance of Los Negros and Manus Islands failed to provoke any enemy reaction and the pilots saw no signs of occupation. The next day, General Headquarters, Southwest Pacific Area, instructed General Walter Kreuger, Commanding General of the Alamo Force, "to prepare plans for an immediate reconnaissance in force of Los Negros Island in the vicinity of Momote airstrip, with the object of remaining in occupancy in case the area was found to be inadequately defended by the enemy; or, in case of heavy resistance, to withdraw after all possible reconnaissance had been accomplished." The force was limited to 1,026 men under the command of a brigadier general. It was recommended that the reconnaissance force be composed of one squadron of cavalry, one airborne antiaircraft battery, one light field artillery battery, a pioneer detachment, and miscellaneous troops. The target date was designated as the earliest practicable date, but not later than 29 February 1944. It was further directed that in event the operation succeeded, the reconnaissance force would prepare the Momote air-



strip for transport planes; and that the air force units would follow at the earliest moment bringing airborne engineers to prepare the airdrome for fighter operations. The air force was to neutralize the objective area and the airfields along the northern coast of New Guinea. The navy was to furnish the overwater transportation and to support the attack by heavy preliminary bombardment covering the approach and initial debarkation.

These were the instructions that launched the 1st Cavalry Division into its first combat in World War II.

Major General Innis P. Swift, the division commander, designated Brigadier General William C. Chase to command the reconnaissance force which was composed of:

2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry Regiment  
 Battery "B", 99th Field Artillery Battalion (less 2 gun sections)  
 673d Antiaircraft Machine Gun Battery (Airborne)  
 Reconnaissance Platoon, Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade  
 Communications Platoon, Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade  
 1st Platoon, "B" Troop (Clearing), 1st Medical Squadron  
 30th Portable Surgical Hospital  
 Detachment, Australian New Guinea Administration Unit  
 Air Force Detachment (Supervisors)  
 Naval Gunfire Support Party  
 Air Liaison Party

A supporting force was organized under the command of Colonel Hugh Hoffman, commanding officer, 5th Cavalry, Troops assigned to this force were:

5th Cavalry Regiment (less 2d Squadron)  
 99th Field Artillery Battalion (less 2 gun sections)  
 1st Platoon, "A" Troop, 8th Engineer Squadron  
 1st Collecting Troop, 1st Medical Squadron  
 Signal Detachment, 1st Signal Troop  
 40th Construction Battalion, U.S. Navy  
 Battery "C" 168th Antiaircraft Battalion (Gun)  
 Battery "A" 211th Antiaircraft Battalion (AW)  
 Company "E," Shore Battalion, 592d Engineer Boat and Shore Regiment.

Although prior reconnaissance by aircraft had indicated a fair possibility that the Admiralty Islands were only lightly garrisoned, the reconnaissance force sailed from Cape Sudest, New Guinea, prepared for some tough action and before the operation was over, they got it.

A small patrol of Alamo Scouts, sent to Los Negros by General Kreuger, landed from a Catalina flying boat and spent 24 hours south of Momote airstrip on 27-28 February. They discovered that there

were numerous Japs hidden in the jungle and sent back a report stating, "The island is lousy with Nips." The patrol leader later reported to General Chase aboard the flagship enroute to Los Negros and gave a valuable detailed report.

The Brewer Task Force traveled across the Bismarck Sea in three APD's (destroyers converted to transport troops) accompanied by thirteen destroyers and two cruisers. General MacArthur was present on one of the cruisers.

Before daylight on 29 February the convoy had approached the south shore of Los Negros Island. When dawn finally broke, the naval task force commanded by Admiral Thomas C. Kincaid opened up with a devastating bombardment. As the cruiser and destroyer divisions, under the immediate command of Rear Admiral William W. Fichteler, sent their shells hurtling ashore, four B-24's and a squadron of B-25's from the 5th Air Force came in to strafe and bomb. Additional air support had been planned but bad weather kept it away.

The first missiles must have created considerable consternation in the ranks of the Japanese garrison. When they looked out to sea and discovered the source of the tremendous barrage, their first thought, it was later learned, was that the Yanks were preparing to attack the islands with at least a division of troops. Not being familiar with APD's, they assumed that all of the ships in view were a screening force for a fleet of transports yet to come. At any rate, the Japs hastened to man their prepared defensive positions and had their guns ready for action when the first waves of the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry started for shore soon after eight o'clock. The only trouble with the prepared defenses was that they nearly all pointed in the wrong direction. Hyane Harbor, the point of attack, was guarded by a score of 20mm. antiaircraft guns while the heavier defenses had been placed to protect Seadler Harbor, a much more logical landing place with better beaches and a better anchorage. Entrance to Hyane Harbor could be gained only through a fifty-foot channel in the protecting coral reef. So well had the defenders calculated the unlikelyhood of landing at this point that they had failed to defend it adequately; and so well had General Kreuger's Alamo Force Headquarters estimated the Japanese calculations that the first three waves of the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry came ashore without being hit. It is true that they were fired at, but the AA guns were not sited to deliver fire below a horizontal elevation and their missiles skimmed over the landing craft with only millimeters to spare. It was not until the fourth wave of assault troops were coming ashore that effective fire was felt from these guns, hasty modifications having been made while the landing craft were shuttling back to get





*THE LANDING ON LOS NEGROS. On D-Day the landing force occupied more territory than it could defend during the night, so the defensive perimeter was set up east of the airstrip. Two days later, when the force had been strengthened, the perimeter was expanded to include all of the airstrip and the surrounding dispersal areas.*

more troops. Meanwhile, the air force was watching for muzzle flashes and then strafing Japanese gun positions as soon as they were discovered. Some of the landing craft were hit, however. In one, the Navy coxswain had his head blown off by a 20mm. shell, but the boat went back and got a new coxswain and then continued on to shore. Another boat was seri-

ously damaged and the one in which Staff Sergeant Bobbie K. Horton of Alpine, Texas and his "H" Troop platoon were crossing the harbor had its machine gun silenced by enemy fire which killed the Navy gunner. Horton left his position behind the ramp of the craft and manned the gun putting it back into operation. Despite his exposure to enemy



fire, he was able with cool courage to return fire so effectively as to permit the landing of his platoon without casualties.

As the assault troops charged ashore under the command of Lieut. Colonel William E. Lobit of Galveston, Texas, further evidence of the unexpectedness of this point of attack was disclosed. The first Japanese installations encountered were hastily abandoned kitchens 25 yards in from the water's edge.

The entire Momote strip was occupied by 0950. Patrols probed a half mile beyond the strip to the northwest without making contact with the enemy in strength. Another patrol, reconnoitering the northern approaches to the strip, advanced almost to the Native Skidway, an isthmus connecting the northern and southern halves of Los Negros Island, before being stopped by organized resistance.

Lieut. Howard W. Peak of El Paso, Texas, the squadron intelligence officer, led a patrol a mile into Jap territory south of the strip where they found an enemy command post. They gathered up several arm-loads of documents and made off with them just as the Japs came charging back. Lieut. Peak was awarded the Legion of Merit for this action and for his aggressive S-2 work during the period which followed.

The United Press called the Admiralty landing "one of the most brilliant maneuvers of the war." The Associated Press described it as "a masterful, strategic stroke" because it combined perfectly coordinated air, land and sea attacks which caught the enemy completely by surprise. William Courtenay of the London Sunday Times stated, "They had evidently regarded the prolonged air attacks upon Rabaul as a prelude to invasion there, and turned their backs on the Admiralties. Also, when they began to fear that there might be an attack upon the Admiralties, they concentrated their strength and guns around Seadler Harbor and the north side of Manus Island, at the former seat of the government, Lorengau."

Six hours after the initial assault wave hit Momote Beach, General MacArthur went ashore from his flagship, the U.S.S. Phoenix, and with General Chase inspected the perimeter established by our troopers. The commander-in-chief made an on-the-spot award of the Distinguished Service Cross to Lieut. Marvin J. Henshaw of Haskell, Texas ("G" Troop), the first American to land on Los Negros in the operation. General MacArthur also ordered General Chase to hold the Momote airstrip at all costs. Later in Tokyo General Chase decorated General MacArthur with the Bronze Star for bravery displayed during his inspection of the beach-head.

The original plan of the invasion had called for the establishment of a perimeter encompassing the

entire airstrip and its surrounding revetments. By mid-morning the troopers had swept the Japs from this area, but as patrols sent back word of the probable size of the garrison as indicated by the scope of the installations they had found, it became evident to the Reconnaissance Force commander that the selected area would be too large to be adequately defended through the coming night by his comparatively small force. Colonel Lobit asked for and was granted permission by General Chase to set up a restricted perimeter running generally along the western edge of the airstrip. Digging foxholes in the coral ground was a slow, difficult process. Patrols continued to probe until late afternoon when they returned to the perimeter and got set for the night.

The 673d AAA (MG) Battery integrated its weapons into the defenses where they not only could afford anti-aircraft protection, but could also reinforce the fire of the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry against ground targets.

The 30th Portable Surgical Hospital, working in conjunction with the medical detachments, had been in operation since immediately after the landing. Enemy dug-outs were used as aid stations and Jap mess tables served as operating tables at first. Arrangements had been made for the evacuation of the seriously wounded to destroyers lying off shore, but darkness halted the evacuation and it later became necessary to finish an exploratory laparotomy by electric lantern and flashlight.

The rain which had begun soon after the landing continued as darkness fell. At first it appeared that enemy action would be confined to sniping and minor sallies against the perimeter, but about two hours after midnight, the enemy launched an organized counterattack in an obvious attempt to drive the invaders back into the sea. Numerous infiltrations were made to the accompaniment of harassing fire and much hand-to-hand fighting occurred in the wet, murky jungle. Telephone lines were cut and it became impossible to communicate from one foxhole to the next. All attacks were repulsed, however, and many of the enemy never returned to their outfits. The dismounted cavalrymen acquitted themselves heroically.

Typical was the behaviour of Pvt George L. Sumpster of Mt. Holly, N.C. and Troop "E", who, while holding his post in the perimeter during an enemy infiltration, observed a comrade in an adjoining foxhole being attacked by two enemy soldiers and an enemy officer. Although Sumpster was being stalked by a Jap himself, he rose to his feet and killed the enemy officer and then turned and killed his own attacker.

The fighting continued until dawn. During the



height of its intensity Pvt Walter E. Hawks of Wylie, Texas, who occupied a foxhole in the advanced rim of the perimeter with "E" Troop, saw a group of eight enemy soldiers establishing a machine gun position in the darkness. He watched them carefully, waiting until they had all assembled in a small area and then, disregarding the fact that his action exposed his position, he killed the entire group with his automatic rifle. Having detected his position from the firing, the enemy attempted to rush his foxhole and overwhelm him by superiority of numbers. On one occasion, 20 Japs in one group charged in throwing hand grenades, but Hawks calmly withheld his fire until they were within 15 feet of him, and thereupon killed the entire group. His gallantry in holding his position against overwhelming odds enabled his troop to retain its perimeter throughout the night.

As the welcome dawn of 1 March appeared, those Japanese who had made the mistake of remaining within the perimeter were quickly sent to their ancestors. General Chase's troops were carrying out the instructions of General MacArthur, the Commander-in-Chief, "You have all performed marvelously. Hold what you have taken, no matter against whatever odds. You have your teeth in him now. Don't let go."

During the morning the squadron again sent out patrols to the west and north. Strong opposition was met on the Native Skidway area where it was apparent that the main hostile strength was concentrated. That afternoon the enemy launched attacks which continued without success throughout the night.

Destroyers of the U.S. Seventh Fleet rendered effective naval gunfire support to the troops in the beachhead during the entire opening phase of the operation. The Fifth Air Force, also, gave valuable aid with its daily airstrikes. B-17's were employed to drop supplies of food and ammunition.

Several acts of bravery on the part of individual officers and men were recorded during this fighting.

Just after daylight, the Force Surgeon, Lieut. Colonel John R. Hall, Jr. of El Paso, Texas, observed a brother officer, Captain Joseph Q. Tuck of Winterville, Ga., severely wounded and in the direct line of fire from an enemy-occupied bunker. Braving heavy machine gun, rifle and grenade fire, Colonel Hall disregarded his own personal danger and removed the wounded officer to a place of safety. Naturally this display of heroism and cool devotion to duty was an inspiration and encouragement to nearby troops.

Captain Tuck, Communications Officer, of 1st Cavalry Brigade Headquarters, had been caught by fire from the enemy bunker while he was laying wire for the command post communications. While thus

engaged he had observed a wounded photographer in front of the pill-box and it was while he was dragging the wounded man to safety that he was severely wounded. After being hit, Captain Tuck caught a grenade thrown by the enemy and tossed it back into the pill-box greatly assisting in the eventual destruction of the Japanese position.

When enemy patrols had penetrated the defensive perimeter during the night attack, Pvt Andrew R. Barnabei of Philadelphia heard Japanese voices in the vicinity of his foxhole. Barnabei, a soldier of Battery "B," 99th Field Artillery, reached up and calmly laid a grenade outside his foxhole. The explosion killed five Japs but it also disclosed Barnabei's position, thereby subjecting him to concentrated attacks by the enemy patrol.

This same night Staff Sergeant Gilbert Newman of Mt. Enterprise, Texas, a member of Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade, distinguished himself by the daring manner in which he went through small arms fire and grenading from an enemy position to assist in removing to safety a wounded officer from in front of an enemy emplacement. He also participated in the reduction of the enemy strongpoint a few minutes later.

When a patrol of Jap officers and non-coms penetrated the perimeter and seriously threatened the command post. Major Julio Chiaramonte of Gallup, New Mex. and 1st Brigade Headquarters, organized and led a group of his troops so that they wiped out the entire enemy patrol which included Captain Baba, the commander of a Japanese infantry battalion and two of his company commanders.

The entry in the official diary under the date of 2 March says, "A number of Japanese were found within the American perimeter this morning, having infiltrated during darkness last night. Standard procedure is to mop up individual enemy groups and consolidate positions during the day, dig in for the night and wait for the Jap's inevitable counterattacks, when the heavy crossfire of the cavalry rifles and machine guns take a heavy toll."

After two days and two nights of steady combat, the original landing force was considerably heartened by the arrival of the 5th Cavalry supporting force which had sailed from Cape Cretin, New Guinea on 29 February. The fresh troops which had been sent forward by orders of General Kreuger, Sixth Army commander, landed from LST's on the site of the original beach-head after B-25's flying at tree-top level had strafed enemy positions opposite the American perimeter.

With the entire 5th Cavalry now consolidated ashore, the regiment under Colonel Hugh Hoffman launched an early afternoon attack and without opposition occupied and organized the entire Momote



airdrome.

While on reconnaissance during the day's action, Pvt Leo W. Zoeller of Buffalo, N.Y. and Master Sergeant David P. Garvin of Jacksonville, Fla., both assigned to Company "C," 583d Signal Battalion, encountered grenade and machine gun fire from an enemy fortification. While Sergeant Garvin kept the point under observation and carbine fire, Zoeller withdrew amid the flying lead, procured grenades, returned to the enemy strongpoint, and reduced it by throwing two grenades into the entrance, killing four of the Japs and wounding a fifth. Sergeant Garvin then killed the remaining enemy occupying the position, and secured valuable documents and equipment which greatly assisted in the continuing conduct of operations.

By the evening of 2 March a total of 372 of the enemy had been buried by the Americans.

During the night repeated Japanese attacks throughout the 5th Cavalry perimeter with the greatest pressure against the north and northwest sector, resulted in steadily increasing enemy casualties. The Japs repeatedly hurled themselves at the same points on the perimeter in fanatical attempts to break through it. By the morning of 3 March, it became apparent that the Japanese having determined their scheme of maneuver intended to follow it with dogged persistence in spite of repeated failure and terrific losses. Their ultimate complete and costly debacle on the night of 3-4 March was the turning point of the campaign. From that time on, the cavalry seized and kept the aggressive, driving the Japs back relentlessly, never allowing them to get set. On 4 March, the rising sun revealed the major portions of their forces prostrate on the field of battle. Scattered remnants fled to the inhospitable tropical jungle to live like hunted animals.

The fourth day of battle in the Admiralties, 3 March 1944, was also the eighty-ninth anniversary of the organization of the 5th Cavalry whose list of commanders is headed by Robert E. Lee and reads like an honor roll of military men. During the day, this message from the division commander was dropped by plane:

"Soldiers of the 5th Cavalry:

"On the 89th anniversary of the 5th Regiment, U.S. Cavalry, the 1st Cavalry Division is proud of its oldest regiment. Your courageous, victorious conquest of the Japanese-held Momote Air Field adds a luminous page to the regimental history. You have earned an honored seat beside your illustrious predecessors.

"This anniversary is not a celebration; rather let each of us make a prayer to Almighty God to care for our comrades who gave their lives to achieve this

victory.

"Your country, your Army, and your Division are proud of you, as am I—God bless you.

"INNIS P. SWIFT, Major General, U.S. Army, Commanding."

The message seemed to have the effect of accelerating the intensity of the fighting; the severest part was yet to come. By midnight, the Japanese had counterattacked and penetrated the northern sector of the perimeter several hundred yards. "G" Troop bore the brunt of this blow. To the south, members of the 1st Squadron decided that their first night on this isle was a far cry from the storied versions of languid tropical nights bathed in soft moonlight beneath the peaceful star-studded sky.

The Jap began to use some of his widely publicized ruses, frequently drawing automatic fire by catcalls and other noises, then attempting to exterminate the American positions with chattering machine guns. One desperate charge is reported to have been made by a force running and singing, "Deep in the Heart of Texas," apparently trying to give the impression that they were having a good time. As those fanatics approached, Corporal James R. Renfro of Kentucky, not Texas, cried out, "Let's get 'em. Those guys don't even know the right words." After thirty of a group of one hundred Japanese had been killed near one revetment, the remaining seventy realized at dawn that they were completely surrounded and gave their lives to the Emperor by solemnly standing in a circle and blasting their entrails with grenades. "That saves a lot of ammunition," commented General Chase.

The Jap tried another favorite trick during the night when they tapped the telephone wires connecting the mortar batteries with our forward observers. A clear voice in perfect English called, "For God's sake, lift your fire; you're hitting your own troops." Unfortunately for the Japs the party on the other end of the line was wise to the ruse, and called for an even heavier concentration.

Corporal Bill Alcine, YANK staff correspondent who accompanied the 5th in the landing, reported the following:

"The dead Japs were big men, Imperial Marines, and fresh troops. All were in good condition and well equipped, cool, tough, and smart. A large number of them could evidently speak English. Corporal Joe Hodonski of Chicago heard a noise outside his foxhole. Joe stuck his head up and saw a Jap setting up a machine gun about a yard away. The Nip said, 'How you doin', Joe?' Joe was doing o.k.—he killed the Jap with an automatic."

During the intense night-fighting several acts of individual bravery and leadership occurred which



resulted in citations. Corporal Clarence W. Josephson of Bay City, Wisconsin was cited for transporting artillery ammunition through an area in which infiltrating enemy patrols were battling it out with defending troops. Josephson's action enabled Battery "A", 99th Field Artillery Battalion to which he belonged, to maintain fire missions throughout the night.

Lieut. Colonel Kenneth L. Johnson of Santa Barbara, Calif., was cited for the manner in which his 99th Field Artillery Battalion efficiently emplaced their guns amid sniper and mortar fire and silenced the enemy pieces.

Major Donald G. Gentry of Topeka, Kansas directed the placing of the 168th CA Battalion's antiaircraft weapons in position and by his personal bravery under fire inspired his troops in placing concentrations upon enemy positions, knocking out artillery and mortar pieces.

Pfc Harold E. Schmidt of Bellevue, Iowa manned a machine gun in the outer rim of the defense perimeter of "G" Troop, 5th Cavalry, with such accuracy and determination during the midst of a particularly vicious enemy charge that he became the object of several desperate assaults. The Japs did not like the effectiveness of his fire but he continued to serve his weapon throughout the night and repulsed every attack on his position. His work was a major contribution to the defeat of the enemy counterattack.

The actions of Captain Carroll W. Seiber of Willis, Va., in keeping his 673d AAA (MG) Battery firing over a period of several days despite particular efforts of the enemy to destroy it, won him a citation. He quickly reorganized his battery on several occasions under constant enemy fire and his personal example was an inspiration to his men.

Corporal Jesse W. Keeton of McKinney, Tenn., and his squad from Troop "G" occupied a foxhole on the outer rim of the perimeter. Repeated attacks and intense fire from suicidal enemy groups kept the squad pinned to its defensive position. The frequency and intensity of the enemy assaults caused a serious drain on the ammunition in Corporal Keeton's foxhole. Despite enemy fire and fanatical enemy groups within the perimeter, as well as the extreme danger from the fire of friendly troops, Keeton left the protection of his foxhole and proceeded to the rear where he secured a supply of ammunition. He then returned through enemy fire to the foxhole bringing with him the ammunition which enabled his squad to hold its position and defeat the enemy attack.

The morning of 4 March brought to light more of the many valorous feats which had taken place during the battle of the previous night. After a sustained Japanese attack caused the platoon of Cor-

poral John E. Walkney of Pittsburgh, Penna. to withdraw to a previously prepared defensive position, Walkney returned to the original position, reassembled the machine gun which had been abandoned, and put it back into action. The fire of this gun contributed greatly to the repulse of the enemy attack. After the enemy had been driven off, Walkney, a member of the 592d Engineer Boat and Shore Regiment was found at the gun, killed by the enemy after his ammunition had been exhausted. Many of the enemy dead in front of the gun position had been killed by Walkney's machine gun.

Heavy enemy fire threatened momentarily to explode the artillery ammunition dump where two men from Battery "C", 99th Field Artillery Battalion, Pvt Carl E. Dorringer of Wichita, Kansas, and Corporal Henry W. Patrick of Big Sandy, Tenn., were loading new rounds for transport to their battery's gun positions. Nevertheless they completed their mission, thus enabling the battery to continue its fire support and contribute to the defeat of the enemy.

Pfc Frank J. Mitchell of Dorchester, Mass. was a member of a gun crew in Battery "A", 211th CA Battalion, which was hard-pressed by the enemy. He assumed command of the crew when the non-com in charge withdrew to bring forward ammunition and reinforcements. Shortly before, the enemy had directed a strong and desperate assault to break through the lines adjoining the gun position, and had succeeded in forcing back a portion of the adjacent platoons.

Notwithstanding his extremely perilous position and the imminent danger of being surrounded and cut off, Mitchell remained at his post and continued to deliver fire against the enemy. His gallant devotion to duty was principally responsible for checking and then driving back the enemy's determined assault.

During the enemy's fierce night infiltration attack, Lieut. Horace E. Beaman of Indianapolis, Ind. left the safety of his own shelter under heavy enemy fire in the sector held by Battery "C", 99th Field Artillery Battalion, to remove a wounded officer from a dangerously exposed position, thereby saving the officer's life.

When numerically superior forces launched a fierce and sustained amphibious attack against Troop "G", 5th Cavalry defensive positions lightly manned along the beach, Staff Sergeant Clarence D. Sparks of Dallas, Texas fired his machine gun at the approaching enemy barges until it burned out. With missiles from enemy guns hitting all around him, Sparks crawled to the rear and procured a new gun which he brought forward and speedily placed in action in his original position. He resumed fire with such telling effect on the enemy barges that the occu-



pants were forced to abandon ship and wade ashore where they were promptly annihilated.

As a prelude to the early morning attack, the enemy sent over an artillery barrage which came dangerously close to the forward observation post of Battery "C," 168th CA Battalion occupied by Captain Charles C. Wight, Jr. of Vernon, Texas. Despite the inferno that was going on around him and the fact that friendly fire had to pass directly over his position, Captain Wight made such an effective artillery adjustment that the enemy artillery was silenced as were several machine gun positions.

Lieut. Marvin J. Henshaw of Haskell, Texas, the "G" Troop platoon leader who had been decorated by General MacArthur for being the first ashore, again distinguished himself during the night's fighting. Prior to darkness he had organized the defenses of his section of the perimeter around one of the Japanese aircraft revetments at the northwest corner of the drome. With machine guns properly placed, he and his platoon were ready for the Jap attack which started at one A.M. As the enemy approached, Lieut. Henshaw called for mortar fire which was placed behind the Japs and served as a prod to herd them into his well-prepared trap. At precisely the right moment, the machine guns opened fire catching the Sons of Heaven from four different directions. The assessment of enemy casualties next morning showed that 167 of them had occurred in Lieut. Henshaw's sector of the perimeter.

Two weeks later Lieut. Henshaw lost his life by drowning when a boat he was in swamped and sank off the coast of Los Negros. He was a good swimmer himself and survivors reported that when last seen he was attempting to tow several non-swimmers ashore.

It was during this same banzai attack that the heroic actions of Sergeant Troy A. McGill of Ada, Oklahoma won the first Congressional Medal of Honor for the 1st Cavalry Division in World War II. Sergeant McGill, a squad leader in "G" Troop, had been assigned a defensive position in the perimeter consisting of foxholes dug into a revetment about 35 yards in front of the main line of resistance. The enemy had selected this point for their attack in the darkness of the early morning. At about 0400, more than 200 drink-crazed fanatics loomed out of the underbrush recklessly screaming threats and curses. As the attack progressed all of Sergeant McGill's men were killed or wounded except one whom he ordered to drop back to the safety of the next revetment. Sergeant McGill remained in his position and kept mowing down the enemy until his weapon would fire no more. By this time the Japs had reached a point about five yards from his bunker. With utter disregard for his personal safety and knowing that he faced certain death, he left his foxhole and using his rifle as a club engaged in hand-to-hand

combat until he was killed by the enemy. After daylight, 105 enemy dead were found in front of and within the area occupied by the 1st Platoon of Troop "G", the platoon of which Sergeant McGill's squad was the defensive spearhead. Sergeant McGill's courageous and determined stand, his spirit of self-sacrifice and devotion to duty were a source of inspiration to his comrades and contributed greatly toward breaking the frenzied attack.

The seizure of the airdrome enabled the 40th Naval Construction Battalion to commence work clearing debris from the pock-marked airstrip and leveling off the craters which had resulted from naval shelling and aerial bombing. This work and the role they had played as fighting troops subsequently won their organization a War Department citation.

Just before noon on 4 March additional reinforcements arrived at Hyane Harbor—the 2d Squadron of the famed "Garry Owen" 7th Cavalry, under Lieut. Colonel Robert P. Kirk of Roswell, New Mex. and the 82d Field Artillery Battalion commanded by Major Harry F. Lambert of Elbert, Colorado. Colonel Kirk's unit was immediately sent to relieve the 2d squadron of the 5th Cavalry which had been in combat continuously for four days and nights.

The leader of these gallant soldiers of the "Fighting Fifth" which had successfully seized and held their objective against overwhelming odds since the beginning of the campaign was Lieut. Colonel William E. Lobit of Galveston, Texas. He commanded the assault force in the initial landing on enemy-held territory of the Admiralty Island group on 29 February. During the ensuing four days of raging battle, when the chance of success teetered precariously in a fragile balance, his forcefulness, aggressiveness, cool courage and determination enabled him to lead his troops to victory and won him a Distinguished Service Cross.

For this gallant action, the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry was awarded a Distinguished Unit Citation which is contained in War Department General Orders No. 50, dated 17 June 1944.

By the evening of 4 March, 750 of the enemy dead had been counted and buried. Many others had perished in the jungle. The captured records of the Jap commander, Colonel Ezaki, showed that 1400 members of his force had become casualties in the severe fighting up to 4 March.

During the night of 4-5 March, there was little activity by any large enemy parties. Cavalry weapons routed several groups of 10 to 15 Japanese attempting to get through the line and enemy mortar fire continued all night long. While the activity was not so great as on previous nights, no one complained of boredom.

At 1100 on 5 March, the Division Commander,



Major General Swift arrived by destroyer and assumed command of the task force. He was accompanied by Colonel Charles A. Sheldon, Chief of Staff; Lieut. Colonel Roy Lassetter, Jr., G-2; Major Boyd L. Branson, Asst. G-3; Major Leonard E. Smith, and Captain Richard Morris, Aides-de-camp.

The 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry attacked north along the Native Skidway at 1500, 5 March, in preparation for the arrival of the 12th Cavalry the following day. Resistance was comparatively weak although the advancing forces had killed 25 enemy by the time they crossed the causeway in the late afternoon, whereupon they dug in for the night.

As an indication of the intensity of enemy attacks and counterattacks, by 5 March, 779 Japanese had been buried, and others awaited burial. American casualties totalled 83 killed and 415 wounded.

The 12th Cavalry, the 271st Field Artillery Battalion, and other task force units landed in Los Negros at Momote on the morning of 6 March. The 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry attacked to the north to seize Salami Plantation, assisted by nine B-25's of the Fifth Air Force. After advancing to a point 2-1/2 miles north of the Momote airdrome, the squadron moved to cover the northern flank of the 12th Cavalry which was moving toward the Mokerang peninsula under the command of Colonel John H. Stadler of San Antonio, Texas. Salami Plantation and Salami Beach were secured by the 12th Cavalry at 1630 thus providing an excellent landing beach in Seadler Harbor for the remainder of the division and relieving some of the congestion around Hyane Harbor.

Meanwhile the engineers and Seabees were working on the Momote airstrip and roads, the ANGAU (Australian New Guinea Administration Unit) was attempting to contact the local natives for information, and the various medical detachments were cooperating to take care of the sick and wounded.

Of the advance toward Salami Plantation, YANK Magazine said: "Eager for a fight, the men stormed through the sniper-infested territory, averaging an incredible 3-1/2 miles an hour. All units were imbued with a desire to 'move in on 'em and kill 'em.'"

In the attack toward Salami Beach the troops discovered that the Japs had been taken by surprise and caught with their backs turned. All fortified positions including machine guns and heavy weapons, strongly dug in, faced west toward Seadler Harbor in anticipation of an amphibious landing there. The enemy was unaware of the direction of the cavalry attack until the troopers had moved in on top of his defenses, which were quickly wiped out.

Captured diaries, describing the operation, stated that the Japanese battalion, known as the Iwakami battalion, in position along the Native Skidway, lost 600 of its strength, and the remaining 200 were directed to retreat across a 500-yard stretch of water to

the Papitalai Mission. Advancing cavalymen found most of the remnants of this battalion, and about 100 other miscellaneous troops, desperately running into the water in an attempt to reach the Papitalai Beach by swimming and using native canoes. So disorganized was their retreat that many of the panicky Japs were frantically paddling their canoes with their hands, not having had time to secure paddles from the beach or from native huts. Not more than 80 of this unit reached Papitalai.

Meanwhile, the 5th Cavalry occupied Porlaka. During the advance there, the troops uncovered large stores of equipment and provisions, including quantities of Japanese beer and sake. The beer was quickly disposed of. So was the sake, but in a different manner—the troops did not think it very palatable.

On this same day, the first American plane to land on Momote strip came in amid cheers and shouts of surrounding soldiers. The B-25 was piloted by Lieut. Colonel H. B. C. Claggett of the Fifth Air Force.

On 7 March, control of Seadler Harbor was increased when the 5th Cavalry made a short but difficult amphibious assault to seize Papitalai Village while the 12th Cavalry, with the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry attached, made others to secure Papitalai Mission and Lombrum Point. At all of these places the Japanese were establishing well-fortified defensive positions which, in their hands, would have made the greater portion of Seadler Harbor unusable.

The 5th Cavalry mission was accomplished with little opposition and the Papitalai Village perimeter was consolidated before dark. Prior to the attack, Captain William Cornelius of Nashville, Tenn., regimental S-2 of the 5th Cavalry, was authorized to organize a special reconnaissance force which had the mission of securing information of enemy installations and positions so necessary to the success of the ensuing assault. The reconnaissance force crossed the strait between Porlaka and Papitalai Village in rubber boats, under hostile fire, and attained its objective, but Captain Cornelius lost his life in the action. His cool courage and determination, despite extreme danger, was an inspiration to his men.

In the 12th Cavalry attack on Papitalai Mission which followed, the approach was made in amphibious tractors. Staff Sergeant Frank W. Rye of Stamford, Texas and a member of "G" Troop, 12th Cavalry, was in one of the leading vehicles. Upon reaching the beach and locating a trench from which an enemy machine gun was operating, Rye killed the occupants, thereby enabling the remainder of his platoon to occupy the beachhead without casualties. Shortly afterward, when the platoon leader became a casualty, Rye assumed command of the platoon, organized positions, and placed his men to repulse a strong counterattack. He disposed his personnel and weapons to such effect that the counterattack was



beaten off and his troop enabled to advance. His conspicuous qualities of leadership cost him his life, when his actions drew the concentrated attention of the opposing Jap forces.

Lieut. Alfred W. Prentice of El Paso, Texas, who had been wounded early in the engagement also distinguished himself. When his platoon had moved in 25 yards from the beach, Lieut. Prentice ordered the platoon to advance on a shack from which hostile fire had been received. One of his men was hit by a shot which came from the front doorway of the house. The lieutenant charged into the house through the side door and killed the Jap. He then rejoined his platoon as 25 Japs were advancing on it. He deployed his platoon so as to bring all available weapons into action. The enemy was dispersed but not before twelve of their number had been killed. Lieut. Prentice accounted for seven of them personally. His platoon then held the beachhead for almost an hour against numerically superior forces before supporting units could be placed on the shore.

The attack of the 12th Cavalry on Papitalai Mission was handicapped by transportation shortage. Of the five "Buffaloes" which set out from Momote for 12th's jump-off position at Red Beach on the Mokerang Peninsula, only two arrived in condition to make the attack. Nevertheless, the 2d Squadron, commanded by Lieut. Colonel Horace Goodrich, made the attack sending a force of 20 men of "G" Troop across Seadler Harbor in the initial wave. With the support of mortar fire, the first wave was able to land and hang on for 45 minutes until an additional 20 men were shuttled across to reinforce them. As more transportation arrived during the afternoon, the position was strengthened, and by 1930 a perimeter had been established.

During this landing the Japanese countered with heavy mortar fire and ten or fifteen rounds from a 70 mm. mountain gun. These enemy guns were quickly silenced by mortar fire from "H" Troop, 5th Cavalry positioned at Porlaka. In the meantime, the Lombrum operation was postponed due to lack of boats. The supply situation at Red Beach became difficult but it was alleviated by the cooperation of Division Artillery Liaison planes which were loaded with food, ammunition and medical supplies at the Momote strip to be dropped to the using units. The pilots performed their mission despite adverse weather and a red alert which was called during the operation.

The strain on medical facilities was eased by the arrival of the 58th Evacuation Hospital, commanded by Lieut. Colonel Thomas M. Kirk, which had landed at Hyane Harbor under harassing fire on 6 March.

During the night of 7-8 March, the Momote-Porlaka perimeter received little trouble, but at Papitalai Mission the Japs made three determined efforts to overcome the small beachhead. Their

suicidal attacks were repulsed with the assistance of well-directed artillery fire from the 271st Field Artillery Battalion whose forward observer brought 105 mm. shells to within 50 yards of the perimeter.

Two enemy planes made four runs over Los Neg-Island during the night. Battery "C", 168th CA Battalion suffered a direct hit on one of its 50 caliber gun positions which caused five casualties—three killed and two wounded.

On the morning of 8 March, the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry under the command of Lieut. Colonel Robert P. Kirk landed unopposed on Lombrum Plantation.

On this day, two minesweepers and two destroyers entered Seadler Harbor, clearing the way for the echelon of six LST's and one AK which arrived the next day. Remaining echelons subsequently discharged at Salami Beach.

8 March also saw the cavalrymen advance 800 yards west of Papitalai in their drive to mop up the remaining Japanese strong points on the island. Mortar and artillery concentrations were constantly placed on enemy positions located by patrols. Large numbers of enemy dead, evidently killed by this supporting fire, were found. The cumulative total enemy buried to date was 1139.

As the enemy's disorganized retreat degenerated into a rout, the troopers were afforded an opportunity to consolidate the occupied territory and engage in mopping-up activities. In the area west of Papitalai, the Japs were found to have abandoned large dumps of food and equipment.

In the afternoon, 69 Sikhs made their way into the 12th Cavalry lines. Upon interrogation, they were found to have been taken prisoner by the Japanese at Singapore and had been working at forced labor ever since. They were evacuated from Los Negros the following day.

On 9 March, the first prisoner of the 1st Cavalry Division's campaign in the Admiralties captured by a reconnaissance patrol of "F" Troop, 5th Cavalry, indicated that a heavy toll had been taken by American mortar fire in the fight on Los Negros. He said that the Japanese soldiers had been instructed repeatedly that "to be a prisoner is not only a great disgrace, but an embarrassment to family and relatives. Resolutely commit suicide when about to fall into enemy hands!"

On this day the 2d Cavalry Brigade, commanded by Brigadier General Verne D. Mudge, landed unopposed at Salami Beach in Seadler Harbor. The force included the remainder of the 7th Cavalry, commanded by Colonel Glenn S. Finley; the 8th Cavalry, commanded by Lieut. Colonel William J. Bradley; and the 61st Field Artillery Battalion, commanded by Lieut. Colonel Samuel K. Yarborough. A detachment from Company A, 69th Signal





AS ADDITIONAL TROOPS ARRIVED, the control of Los Negros Island was expanded. By 9 March, both brigades and all four regiments were ashore.



Battalion arrived to install communications for the entire task force. The engineers, meanwhile, commenced survey and construction work on roads on the Mokerang Peninsula. The supply agencies began to enter more fully into their tremendous task of keeping troops fed, armed, and clothed over lines of communications through difficult jungle terrain. The medical situation was revamped with the 58th Evacuation Hospital and the 30th Portable Surgical Hospital operating at Momote, while the 27th Portable Surgical Hospital, the 603d Medical Clearing Company, and the 1st Medical Squadron, less detachments, were set up at Red Beach. The 603d Medical Clearing Company, commanded by Major James E. Murphy, set up a clearing station 100 yards inland where it accomplished the important task of clearing the casualties which resulted from later operations.

The detachment of the 604th Quartermaster Graves Registration Company, commanded by Lieut. Harry Smith, arrived and took over the division cemetery. Working with the Australian Graves Registration Service, this unit performed the mission of recording, supervising, and assisting in burials and completed disinterment and reburial of bodies from isolated locations before the close of the campaign.

The dawn of 10 March followed a comparatively quiet night. There had been occasional sporadic firing on the perimeters, but the coming of daylight found the troops ready to take on the Japs for another round. "B" Troop of the 8th Cavalry set forth on the mission of mopping-up the remainder of the Mokerang peninsula, the northern prong of U-shaped Los Negros Island. Shortly after starting out, Lieut. James L. Childers of McAlister, Oklahoma, the leader of the left flank platoon, captured a prisoner. The troop pushed forward rapidly reducing isolated pockets of enemy resistance and by nightfall had reached the tip of the peninsula.

At about 1000, Lieut. Joseph Curtin, a member of the Division G-3 Section from Leominster, Mass., discovered a Jap hiding in a bunker about 100 yards from the Division CP. With the aid of a Nisei interpreter, Sergeant Ernest Hirai of Los Angeles, the Jap was persuaded to surrender.

The 5th Cavalry concentrated its efforts on patrolling to the west. In addition, elements of the 5th engaged in a minor naval action when a small patrol from Troop "B" led by Lieut. Ralph E. Hill, who was later killed in action, made a reconnaissance in a native dug-out canoe and sank a Jap supply barge which they surprised. The barge had been heavily laden and under way. Another barge carrying 10 or 15 Japs was sighted by the Weapons Troop which sank it with a concentration of mortar fire reinforced by fire from a 37 mm. antitank gun. The gunners and the mortar crew never did stop arguing about which shot was the "coup de grace." A third barge was sighted in the same area at 1830 but it succeeded

in escaping; which set the gunners and mortar crews to accusing each other of being rotten shots. A fourth barge was sighted about 30 minutes later, but since it was out of range of the regimental weapons, an artillery concentration was called for. When the first salvo landed, two more barges were flushed from their hiding places. All three fled to the south; although one was hit, all made good their escape.

By 10 March, the following additional service elements had closed on Red Beach: Headquarters, 466th Amphibious Truck Company, commanded by Lieut. James M. Dullea, which immediately began unloading ships in Seadler Harbor with its 16 Dukws; the 3d Platoon, 493d Quartermaster Depot Company, which set up its depot and then made record time in unloading and sorting supplies with its roller conveyors; and the 267th Ordnance Maintenance Detachment which under the Command of Lieut. John W. Kiser, performed 3d and 4th echelon maintenance of the antiaircraft weapon.

During the next few days troops continued their mop-up of Los Negros Island. By the end of March all enemy resistance there had been overcome, but only after some difficult fighting.

By 11 March attention was being focussed on Manus Island, the main objective of the task force. The key to successful occupation of this island was control of the area around Lorengau where the main Japanese defenses were concentrated. To support an operation against this area, forward artillery positions had to be selected and secured, the Division Commander decided. Butjo Luo and Hauwei Islands, and Bear Point, all in enemy territory, were chosen and reconnaissance teams from the 302d Reconnaissance Troop were organized to investigate them.

The patrols set forth, one going to Butjo Luo where it met no opposition; another to Bear Point which was found to be unoccupied but unsuitable for the desired purpose; and the third to Hauwei Island which proved to be a hornet's nest.

The Hauwei Island patrol, after making a thorough search, for an approach through the reefs surrounding the island, discovered a narrow channel near the western end. The channel was treacherous, weaving its way around the western end of the island and coming into a beach on the north side. The patrol landed on the beach and immediately pushed inland. The island was a coconut plantation and it showed signs of recent occupation because the underbrush was fairly well cleared.

After moving inland about 100 yards, the patrol was suddenly engulfed in a withering cross-fire of rifles, machine guns, grenades, and mortars. The patrol leader coolly disposed his patrol in the available cover, made a quick visual reconnaissance and an estimate of the situation and found that his position was precarious. His patrol was cut off from the



béach and unable to go farther inland. He had the information that he had been detailed to obtain and therefore decided to fight his way back to the beach, reembark and return to headquarters. This action was made possible when Pfc Warren Pruitt of Huntington, Tenn., who had been wounded by shrapnel, retained his position and continued firing at the enemy positions. Detecting an enemy pillbox from which three machine guns were firing on his comrades, Pruitt advanced through the jungle to eliminate the strongpoint, thereby drawing the concentrated fire of the enemy weapons upon himself. Pruitt was killed but his gallant act permitted the patrol to withdraw to the beach.

The LCV had backed off the beach when the firing started, but it immediately put back in when the patrol appeared. Some of the members of the patrol waded out to meet the craft and the LCV picked them up on its way into the beach. About six men and the boat crew were aboard when a mortar shell hit the boat which had already been damaged by machine gun fire. The boat sank and the patrol saw its only means of escape go down with it. Undaunted, however, the brave little band took to the water and started to swim to friendly shores seven miles away. PT boats from Squadron 18 stationed in the harbor rushed to the rescue and picked up most of the survivors. An LCM was later dispatched from Red Beach at Salami Plantation. This boat picked up one man who had been in the water for more than five hours.

It had been expensive reconnaissance. Out of a total of 26 men, five had been killed, fourteen wounded, and three were missing. However, the information gathered by the patrol indicated that two battalions of artillery could be placed on Hauwei and their eventual placement in this desirable location saved countless lives in the ensuing operations.

The next day, 12 March, the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, moved from its position at Lombrum Plantation in LCM's, LCV's, and Buffaloes and landed on the western tip of Hauwei Island. The attack was preceded by a heavy concentration of artillery fire by the 61st Field Artillery Battalion firing from Mokerang Plantation and by a naval bombardment from ships inside Seeadler Harbor. Kittyhawks of the 77th RAAF Squadron bombed and strafed the landing beach and inland areas of Hauwei prior to the assault. By evening of the following day, the island had been cleared of resistance and the 61st and 271st Field Artillery Battalions had moved in to take up positions there.

The 13th of March was a day of further preparation for the coming assault against Manus Island. The western approaches to Lorengau were bombed and strafed by B-25's which skimmed low over the dense jungle. Anti-tank guns and PT boats continued to disrupt Japanese barge traffic between Manus and

Los Negros. The 99th Field Artillery Battalion moved its guns to Butjo Luo Island and set up positions from which it could fire on the north coast of Manus. Supporting naval units shelled Pityilu Island four miles west of Hauwei.

On this day, the 8th Cavalry continued its patrolling to the north while the balance of the combat troops sent reconnaissance parties through their areas.

More service troops arrived from New Guinea, unloaded on Red Beach, and went immediately to their appointed tasks. Among these organizations were the 52d Malaria Control Unit, the 28th Malaria Survey Unit, elements of the 294th Port Company, the 4072d Quartermaster Service Battalion, elements of the 466th Amphibious Truck Company, and the 611th Ordnance Ammunition Company.

While this island-seizing was being conducted by the 7th Cavalry, the 5th was overcoming enemy resistance on the southern part of Los Negros Island. Pushing into the rugged jungle west of Papatilai, they encountered the enemy well ensconced in pill-boxes on Hill 260. In attacking these positions, the advance, supported by fire from the 82d Field Artillery Battalion, was made along a narrow ridge covered with dense undergrowth which limited the width of the front to about 20 yards. The assault was made by a platoon of Troop "B" commanded by Lieut. Ralph E. Hill. Close behind, Lieut. William H. Swan, executive officer of Troop "D," from Tucson, Ariz., was directing the firing of his machine guns when he was wounded in the left arm. He administered first aid to himself and continued to advance. By that time, the assault platoon had reached a point 15 yards from the enemy position, and Lieut. Hill had been killed. Lieut. Swan then came forward and assumed command. After reorganizing the platoon, he continued the attack and neutralized the enemy position. His prompt action and able leadership assisted the platoon in accomplishing its mission.

During this same action Corporal Elmer L. Carlton of Arkansas City, Kans., made a name for himself when, after heavy fire from enemy automatic weapons had stopped his troop and put its last remaining machine gun out of action by the wounding of two of its crew, he moved the gun, a heavy water-cooled model, to a better firing position and assisted a wounded crew member to deliver fire against enemy entrenchments. This brought a renewed rain of Jap bullets on the new position riddling Carlton's legs; nevertheless, he continued to support his wounded companion with fire from a submachine gun. His citation states that during the concentration of enemy fire on Carlton's position, and because of the effective fire of his machine gun, the remainder of the troop was enabled to secure its objective and eliminate the enemy position.

As of 14 March, the cumulative total enemy buried



was 1484. Total Allied dead were 161; wounded and injured, 411; and missing, 4.

Beginning at dawn on 15 March, the 61st and 271st Field Artillery Battalions firing from Hauwei and the 99th Field Artillery Battalion from Butjo Luo initiated preparatory fires on Lorengau Plantation, which was also struck by naval shelling and aerial bombardment.

Coordinating their movements with this pre-invasion softening, the dismounted 2d Cavalry Brigade combat team, under the command of Brigadier General Verne D. Mudge, stormed ashore on two beaches near the Lugos Mission Plantation completely surprising the Japanese who had placed the bulk of their defenses to guard the more suitable landing area near Lorengau Village. The 8th Cavalry Regiment, commanded by Lieut. Colonel William E. Bradley, had been designated as the assault force, while the 7th Cavalry, commanded by Colonel Glenn S. Finley, was to be the reserve.

General Swift observed the landing from a PT boat in Seadler Harbor. As he saw units of his command hit the beach in the second large-scale offensive in this area, he commented, "Our timing was a minute and a half off; we failed to take into account the heavy sea which retarded the landing craft as they turned toward the beach. Well, that's not too bad."

Finding that the resistance ashore was light, the landing force initiated a two-pronged advance toward the Lorengau airdrome, the only airstrip in the Admiralties in enemy hands. The 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry under the command of Major Moyers S. Shore of San Juan, New Mexico, led a drive against scattered resistance on the "Number Three Road," a track running along the beach; the 2d Squadron, under the command of Major H. L. Conner, pushing inland toward another track terminating in Lorengau Village, was forced to dig in for the night after encountering enemy opposition north of the track.

When an enemy sniper in the dense jungle along the beach held up the advance of "A" Troop, Pvt Garvin O. Preslar of Rouge River, Ore., crawled through shallow water subject to observation by the sniper, until he reached a point where he could observe the enemy. Preslar then killed the Jap and enabled his troop to proceed.

Pvt Albert H. McDonald of Oakland, Calif., was also cited for gallantry in action. When strongly entrenched enemy troops pinned down "A" Troop during its approach to the Lorengau airstrip, he crawled forward and, despite three wounds, threw a hand grenade into the entrenchment, thus assisting in its demolition.

Corporal Clifford Briney of Detroit, Mich., a member of the 592d Engineer Regiment, had the mission

of checking landing craft approaches to the beach to locate underwater reefs, mines, and other obstacles. Immediately after undertaking this mission, he was wounded by enemy sniper fire, but despite his severe wound, the intensity of the enemy fire, and the extreme danger to his own life, he waded into the water and completed his assignment, assuring the safe landing of the troops to continue their assault.

During the approach to Lorengau, harassing naval gunfire made the nights hideous for the Japs, while by day, the excellently situated field artillery firing from Hauwei Island on the left flank was able to lay down prearranged concentrations on call, clearing the path of the advancing troops. It was an ideal way to employ artillery.

By the evening of 15 March, the 1st Squadron had reached the western end of the airstrip where it dug in. The next morning, it resumed the advance across the strip in the face of fire from numerous well-concealed bunkers, each of which required and received individual attention from the cavalrymen. Many were the heroes of that day's action.

In the drive on Lorengau, a platoon from "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry was halted and forced to take cover when it encountered some particularly heavy machine gun fire which emanated from Japanese pill-boxes well-hidden in the jungle growth. A party of five volunteers was organized to attack the positions and destroy them with hand grenades. This group included: Corporal Richard L. Elliott of Turkey, Texas; Corporal Doyce C. Price of Sumitt, Ga.; Pfc Woodrow W. Chambers of Denham Springs, La.; Pfc Carson Hall of Detroit, Mich.; and Pvt Roy V. Little of San Bernardino, Calif. From the very outset, the mission was obviously suicidal; but that in no way deterred the stout-hearted volunteers who offered their own lives in order that the assault might proceed. Armed with grenades, the group crawled forward hoping that at least one of their number would get through to place an explosive where it would do the most good. The bushes were alive with bullets. By the time the volunteers were about ten yards from the enemy position all of them had been hit and wounded. Chambers, who was acting as the point man in the attack, got to within five yards of the pillbox when he was killed. Price had been seriously wounded and although Little, Elliot, and Hall had each been hit, they all refused to turn back and leave any member of their party in enemy territory. It was useless to proceed further, so, helping each other, they painfully crawled back to their own lines. Their mission had been a dismal failure, they thought, but their gallant efforts and personal bravery had a stimulating effect on the remainder of the unit. The final outcome of the battle is now history.

Other names that will live forever as a result of





SETTING FORTH FROM LOS NEGROS on 15 March, the 2d Cavalry Brigade made an amphibious assault on Manus Island which was followed by bitter fighting that culminated in the capture of Lorengau and Rossum, vital points of the last organized Japanese resistance in the Admiralty Islands.



that day's action are those of Pvt John A. Freese of Madison, Wis., "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry, who picked up a wounded comrade and ran with him 100 yards across an exposed area under withering fire to return him to a place of safety; Sergeant Virgil A. Hutchinson of Garrison, Tex., who assisted the advance of his platoon from "C" Troop by firing at a pillbox until the enemy abandoned it, whereupon he rushed forward and finished off the retreating Japanese soldiers with his carbine, all the while in continued danger from enemy fire; Pfc Elston B. Ferguson of Hillsboro, Ill., a "G" Troop man who crawled across an area swept by intense fire to lay wire to a forward mortar position thus enabling mortar shells to be laid on enemy strongpoints; "B" Troop's 1st Sergeant William J. Bretton of El Paso, Tex., who went to the assistance of a wounded trooper lying directly in front of an enemy position and then carried him to safety; Staff Sergeant Jesse P. Johnson of Oakland, Calif. who was mortally wounded when he exposed himself to enemy fire while disposing his platoon from "C" Troop so that it could protect itself while continuing to deliver fire against the enemy; Pvt Leslie A. Teter of St. Joseph, Mo. who, as a member of a reconnaissance patrol from Headquarters Troop, 5th Cavalry, deep behind enemy lines, single-handedly eliminated an enemy automatic rifle nest before he was killed by a burst of enemy machine gun fire; Sergeant Ervin M. Gauthreaux of White Castle, La. who assumed command of a platoon from "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry, after its leader had been wounded, and reformed it into an effective tactical position preventing further casualties and enabling it to assist in the completion of the troop's mission; Pvt John J. Kriger of Santa Barbara, Calif., also a member of "C" Troop, who, although mortally wounded en route, ran 200 yards through intense fire to deliver an important message to his platoon leader after wire communications had been destroyed; Pfc Leo V. Tomlin of Union, Miss. who, as a medical aid man of the 8th Cavalry, administered to fourteen wounded soldiers in the thick of the battle risking his own life and saving the lives of several men; another member of "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry, Sergeant Verley L. Leonard of Tuscaloosa, Ala. who voluntarily left the safety of his own temporary shelter and saved the lives of wounded comrades by removing them from positions exposed to intense enemy fire; Pvt Willard F. Meulbrook of Sheboygan, Wis. who, as No. 1 gunner of a gun squad from the Weapons Troop, 8th Cavalry, which had been raked by enemy machine guns, continued to operate his weapon thereby enabling his squad leader to evacuate four wounded comrades and thereafter assisted in moving the gun to a new position where it continued in action; Pvt Ivan J. Mudd of San Diego, Calif., a soldier from Headquarters Troop, 8th Cavalry, who single-handedly attacked an obstructing enemy pillbox killing three of the occupants with

a grenade and the fourth with a trench-knife thereby enabling his platoon to advance; Pfc Willard F. Russell of Caribou, Me., a tank commander in the 603d Light Tank Company who, although wounded, left the safety of his own tank to couple it to a disabled tank thus enabling it to return to action; Corporal Grady D. Sharber of Nashville, Tenn., who, when his squad from the Weapons Troop, 8th Cavalry was ambushed during the assault, disdained to protect himself by remaining under cover, but instead, removed his machine gun and four wounded members of his squad to safety and then returned to the assault; Staff Sergeant Leldon T. Webb of Childress, Tex., who, while commanding a machine gun position in the sector of "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry, assisted in the removal of three wounded crew members, and then assumed the gunner's duties declining to suspend fire to move the gun to a safer position with the result that the enemy opposition was eliminated; Pfc James B. Roche of Somerville, Mass., who, when "C" Troop was caught between two ridges and pinned to the ground by enemy machine gun fire, attacked a pillbox with two companions and when both of them were wounded about five yards from their objective, covered their withdrawal by automatic rifle fire (Pvt Roche was killed in action later the same day); and, Corporal Elmer J. Blanken of Loveland, Ohio, an aid man in the Medical Detachment, 8th Cavalry, who successfully crawled through enemy fire to care for a seriously wounded soldier lying within a few yards of an enemy bunker although he knew that another aid man had been killed attempting the same mission a short while before.

On 17 March the 7th Cavalry took over from the 8th Cavalry, and pressed on toward Lorengau Village. By nightfall a concentrated attack had secured the airdrome and contact had been made with the 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, coming in on the right flank from the southwest. The entire area west of the Lorengau River was now under control of the American forces and a bridgehead on the east bank of the river had been secured before the troops dug in for the night. Since the landing, they had destroyed or rendered ineffective 275 enemy bunkers, a majority of them occupied by the enemy.

Two persons cited for gallantry in this day's action were Corporal Harold P. Waldum of Black River Falls, Wis., a member of the 592d Engineer Regiment, who manned the automatic weapons on a landing craft from the exposed gunner's position thereby enabling the craft to proceed through intense enemy sniper and machine gun fire to the beach where it effected the embarkation of wounded men and then withdrew; and Lieut. Clyde W. James of San Antonio, Texas, who, while serving as forward observer from the 82d Field Artillery Battalion, saw two enemy barges offshore and immediately waded to a reef, despite concentrated sniper fire, where he directed



the speedy demolition of the Japanese craft.

The Japanese had expected the Manus landing to be made on the excellent beach at Lorengau and they were prepared for it there. The defenses were sited to cover the shoreline and its offshore approaches. The beach itself was thoroughly mined and covered with barbed wire. Rifle pits and gun emplacements had been constructed approximately 100 yards in rear of the beach, while on the hills surrounding the beach, harbor, and town, heavy bunkers had been prepared and camouflaged. The three roads which entered the village from the east, south, and northwest were protected by these and other emplacements. The Lorengau River, a sluggish stream 120 feet wide and 10 to 20 feet deep, provided additional protection on the western side of the village. With vigor and determination the 2d Cavalry Brigade crossed the river on the morning of 18 March and by afternoon had successfully demolished every Jap bunker in the area either killing or driving off all organized enemy resistance.

In the advance on Lorengau Village, Sergeant Glen A. Prater of White Pigeon, Mich., and Corporal Vincent J. Zlotow of Chicago, both of Headquarters Troop, 8th Cavalry demolished a pillbox that had been holding up the advance of their platoon.

Pvt Lee E. Wilkerson of Lebanon, Ky., and "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry went through heavy fire to the aid of five wounded companions and removed them to safety. Pvt Codzy L. Curnutt of Fruitvale, Texas, and Pfc Duane C. Irwin of San Francisco, Calif., moved a machine gun into position and operated it so effectively that their platoon from Headquarters Troop, 8th Cavalry, was able to proceed and accomplish its mission. All these men displayed exceptional gallantry in action and were later awarded Silver Star Medals.

With Lorengau Village captured, "A" Troop, 8th Cavalry moved out early the next morning, 19 March, in the direction of Rossum, a village to the south. Just beyond the regimental outpost line, stiff fire was met from several enemy bunkers. During the fire fight preceding the assault on the pillboxes, Corporal Peter J. Armstrong of Philadelphia, Penna., and Corporal Armando V. Valencia of Tucson, Ariz., both of "D", Troop 8th Cavalry set their machine gun in position at a range of 35 feet from one of the bunkers in the teeth of its fire. Armstrong commenced a continuous burst of fire on the bunker thereby disclosing his position and although he was hit and wounded by snipers' bullets, he sustained the fire until a grenade knocked him unconscious. Although the gun had been holed by Jap bullets and was leaking water from its jacket in several places, Valencia unhesitatingly took it over and continued its fire at the bunker slits until the gun froze, whereupon he continued the fire with his

submachine gun enabling a squad to finish off the obstacle with grenades. Other troopers who were decorated as a result of this day's action included Lieut. Allen F. Davis of Albany, Ga., a member of 2d Brigade Headquarters, who led a patrol deep into enemy territory gaining vital information and destroying enemy supplies; Pvt Joe T. Blackburn of Gearhart, Ky., who while acting as an advance scout for "A" Troop, 12th Cavalry, killed two enemy soldiers who had wounded two of his companions and then assisted the wounded in withdrawing while still under fire; and Pvt Maurice S. Noll of Easton, Kans., who, although wounded in the chest, covered an enemy machine gun with automatic rifle fire while his platoon from "A" Troop, 8th Cavalry advanced and destroyed it.

On 20 March, the 7th Cavalry took over the attack toward Rossum, while the 8th Cavalry concentrated their efforts eastward along the shore toward the Salesia Plantation. "F" Troop, 7th Cavalry was ordered to send patrols southward with the mission of scouting the southern coast of Manus Island if enemy resistance did not prevent it. The leading patrol set out accompanied by a tank and several other vehicles. The patrol had proceeded only a short distance down the narrow jungle trail when it began to receive fire from camouflaged enemy bunkers and pillboxes. In the fight which followed several men performed outstanding feats of heroism in attacking the well protected enemy positions and wiping them out with accurate grenade and rifle fire. Among those cited were: Pfc Edward F. Covin of Beaumont, Texas; Pvt John M. Ford of Lola, Texas; Staff Sergeant Grover C. McGraw of Mesquite, Texas; Pfc William T. Price of Little Falls, N. J., and Sergeant Willie B. Randolph of Kevil, Ky. Two medical aid men were later awarded Silver Stars for the fearless manner in which they went forward under fire to administer to wounded soldiers. They were Corporal James B. Anderson of Blytheville, Ark, and Sergeant Arvel O. Treadwell of Deming, New Mexico.

By the time the patrol had reached a point 900 yards south of Lorengau it had captured a recently evacuated Japanese hospital and several objects of interest to G-2 including a Japanese officer's brief case containing a map showing the defenses of Manus Island. Suddenly the leading elements of the patrol were engulfed in a hail of enemy bullets which came at them from all sides. The patrol was completely surrounded by Japs hidden in the jungle. After fighting an uneven battle for about an hour the troop received orders to withdraw to a defensive perimeter. 1st Sergeant John T. Guinn of Englewood, Fla., who had assumed command when the troop commander had been wounded, took a leading part in placing the dead and wounded aboard the tank so that they would not be left in Jap territory. The Japs, meanwhile, had infiltrated along the trail



in rear of the patrol and had planted mines, one of which blew a track off the tank as it began its withdrawal. For a moment it looked as though the tank with its helpless cargo would have to be abandoned. The other vehicles, their path blocked by the disabled tank, were given up for lost. Then, three daring bulldozer operators from the 8th Engineer Squadron sprang into action. Disregarding intense enemy fire they coupled their machines to the tank and dragged it to safety. They were Corporal Elijah B. Bailey of Drew, Miss.; Pvt Bill K. King of Durant, Okla. and Corporal Earl Van Treese of Kansas City, Mo. On the way back, Van Treese saw a wounded ANGAU Warrant Officer lying helpless along the trail. With complete disregard for his own safety, he paused long enough to remove the wounded man from danger and then resumed his tank-rescuing feat.

A platoon of "C" Troop, 12th Cavalry, reconnoitering south of Lombrum Point on 20 March was caught by enemy machine gun and sniper fire as it reached a small clearing in this area. When the platoon was ordered to withdraw and cover the evacuation of the wounded, Corporal Grover S. Jordan of Rose, Nebr., volunteered to stay and protect the platoon leader and three other wounded men. He placed himself between them and the enemy and then saved their lives by repulsing three successive Jap attacks.

By 20 March, the cumulative total of enemy buried amounted to 2078.

On 21 March, the field artillery and RAAF P-40's rained high explosives on Japanese fortifications in Rossum while the 7th Cavalry sent out patrols and gathered its strength for an attack. The 8th Cavalry moved into Salesia Plantation and set up a perimeter.

The next day the 7th Cavalry edged closer to Rossum but the going was slow because the route of approach was confined mainly to a track, flanked on both sides by precipitous banks, descending into deep, swampy jungle ravines. The terrain was ideal for Japanese defensive measures.

Sergeant Marion H. Young of Orange, Texas, was in command of a group of men from Service Troop, 12th Cavalry building a road for the supply route to advanced combat elements when an enemy ambush placed fire on the work detail. Sergeant Young dispersed his men and advanced in the direction of the enemy fire to silence it with a hand grenade. When he got within throwing distance, he raised himself and heaved a grenade into the enemy foxhole. But the grenade was a dud. Although his action had given away his position, he raised himself to throw another grenade but before he could dispatch it, he was killed. His display of bravery and determination was an inspiration to his comrades, and they reduced the strongpoint.

When front line troops were forced to withdraw

in order that an artillery barrage might be placed on the enemy it was discovered that a badly wounded soldier had been left in an exposed position. Pfc Roy G. Rosengrant of Lenox, Iowa, a member of a litter squad from the 2d Collecting Troop, 1st Medical Squadron, went forward and assisted with the evacuation of the wounded man. His total disregard for his own personal safety and intense devotion to duty was an inspiration to all who witnessed his act.

On 23 March, the 7th Cavalry was clearing out Jap remnants along its perimeter and getting poised for its strike at Rossum, while the 8th Cavalry secured full control of Salesia Plantation. The 302d Reconnaissance Troop, meanwhile, established bases on Ndrova and Amo Islands whence patrols were sent out to block the escape of Jap forces from the eastern sector of Manus Island. When one of these patrols, was caught between the fire from mortars and snipers in its path of advance and from snipers who had infiltrated behind it, Staff Sergeant John H. Smith of Harrisburg, Ill., and Pfc Joe E. Tyra of Tucson, Ariz., distinguished themselves by continuing to advance and blasting the enemy position with grenades. The patrol which was from Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade then went on to destroy a sizeable enemy supply dump.

On 24 March, after four days of some of the bitterest fighting in the Manus campaign, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, commanded by Lieut. Colonel John B. Maxwell, was relieved by the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry.

Indicative of the severity of the fighting is the fact that "B" Troop, 7th Cavalry, lost three troop commanders as casualties in three days.

The 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, passing through the 7th Cavalry under cover of a heavy artillery shelling and an aerial bombardment, successfully eliminated all opposition to bring to a close "The Battle of Rossum."

Thus a wide perimeter around Lorengau was secured permanently to permit the establishment of a large naval base unhindered by enemy action on the ground.

While the 2d Brigade was capturing Rossum and Salesia Plantation, the 1st Brigade was prying the Japs out of the rugged jungle on the southern half of Los Negros Island. Hand-to-hand fighting was the order of the day. The undergrowth was thick, the hills were steep, and the enemy had prepared positions on which to fall back and delay the relentless advance of the cavalrymen. For awhile the most economical way of destroying Japs was to push forward a perimeter and then mow them down when they launched their inevitable counter-attack. but that did not always work. Many of the enemy had to be dislodged from sturdy and well camouflaged bunkers or pillboxes. Sometimes the artillery and



air strikes could smash the fortifications, sometimes tanks could be brought into position to fire point-blank at them, but more often than not, it was necessary for soldiers employing small arms and grenades to move in and do the job. This required daring, cunning, patience, and indomitable fortitude. Getting close enough to the enemy to fire at him effectively was a two-way proposition; in so doing the effectiveness of his weapons was also increased.

After two weeks of operations in their respective sectors on southern Los Negros Island, the 5th and 12th Cavalry Regiments effected a juncture south of Papitalai Mission on 21 March. The 5th Cavalry had scoured the southern section of Los Negros Island and had captured the difficult Hill 260, while the 12th Cavalry had been sending out combat patrols from its position on Lombrum Plantation where until 20 March it had been held in task force reserve pending possible need for its services in the Manus invasion. Among the outstanding feats performed during the fighting on 21 March was that of Sergeant Herbert D. Zook of El Paso, Texas, and "D" Troop, 12th Cavalry. When his platoon ran into heavy machine gun and sniper fire from a typical burrowed emplacement, Zook set up his machine gun in an exposed position and kept it in operation with such effect that the enemy was silenced and the cavalrymen were able to reorganize and proceed.

On 22 March, combined elements of the 5th and 12th Cavalry regiments, consisting of two squadrons, launched an organized attack against enemy positions west of Papitalai Mission. The assault had been preceded by intense artillery concentrations from the 271st Field Artillery Battalion but the enemy still had plenty of mortar, machine gun, and rifle fire to pour on the advancing troopers. An even greater obstacle was the terrain consisting of razorback ridges and deep ravines covered with an almost impenetrable growth of matted vines. In this day's action, Corporal Diamond C. Dunzy of Wetunka, Okla., and "G" Troop, 5th Cavalry, distinguished himself by the gallant manner in which he single-handedly attacked and destroyed an enemy bunker with grenades after he had been wounded.

On the 23d, a lull developed while both regiments built up forward supply bases with the assistance of native bearers furnished by ANGAU, the Australia New Guinea Administration Unit. This was only one of a number of ways in which these hardy, friendly natives assisted the 1st Cavalry Division. They were an indispensable source of intelligence concerning the enemy and they provided much useful information regarding terrain and suitable routes of advance.

On 24 March the 5th and 12th Cavalry regiments launched a westward attack close behind a barrage laid down by the 82d and 271st Field Artillery Battalions. The attack, although strongly opposed, was

well coordinated and resulted in a virtual rout of the enemy. One of the highlights of this offensive was a unique maneuver conducted by "G" Troop, 5th Cavalry, as it advanced along the beach trail which skirts the southern shore of Los Negros. At a point where the trail ran between the sea and a swamp, the Japs had set up defensive bunkers which had to be eliminated before the advance could continue. It was here that some members of "G" Troop made a flanking movement to the left into the ocean. Standing neck-deep in the water, they fired their rifles with such effect that the Japs were forced to abandon their position and flee. "It was just like shooting fish from a bath-tub," said one of the troopers.

The 1st Brigade's drive broke organized enemy resistance on Los Negros. Those Japs who temporarily succeeded in avoiding death or capture retreated to Loniu Passage, a narrow strait which separates Los Negros from Manus. Patrols from the 8th Cavalry were waiting for them on the other shore. By 28 March, the campaign for Los Negros Island was finished except for the mopping-up of scattered die-hards in the jungle. As of that date, 2,721 enemy dead had been buried.

On 28 March, General Swift received the following messages from General MacArthur and General Kreuger:

TO: CMDR SEVENTH FLEET, CMDR ALLIED AIR FORCE, CG SIXTH ARMY, CG FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION.

FM: GHQ SWPA

GENERAL MARSHALL HAS SENT ME ABLE MESSAGE OF CONGRATULATION ON THE SKILL AND SUCCESS OF THE ADMIRALTIES OPERATION AND EXPRESSED HIS ADMIRATION FOR THE MANNER IN WHICH THE ENTIRE OPERATION WAS HANDLED. HE REQUESTED THAT HIS CONGRATULATIONS BE HANDED TO GENERAL KREUGER, GENERAL KENNY, ADMIRAL KINCAID AND PARTICULARLY TO GENERAL SWIFT AND HIS OFFICERS AND MEN FOR THE MAGNIFICENT SHOWING THEY MADE IN THEIR FIRST FIGHT.

SGD MACARTHUR

TO: CG BREWER FORCE

FM: CG ALAMO FORCE

MY HEARTY CONGRATULATIONS TO YOU AND TO THE OFFICERS AND MEN OF YOUR COMMAND FOR A BRILLIANT PERFORMANCE IN THE CAPTURE OF MOMOTE, LORENGAU, AND SEEDLER HARBOR AREA. THE FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION HAS ADDED A GLORIOUS PAGE TO CAVALRY ANNALS; THE GALLANTRY AND THE INDOMITABLE SPIRIT DISPLAYED BY ITS MEMBERS AND THOSE OF THE SUPPORTING ARMY AND







NAVY UNITS MERIT THE HIGHEST PRAISE. THE CONDUCT OF ALL CONCERNED IS IN KEEPING WITH THE FINEST TRADITIONS OF OUR ARMY AND NAVY.

SGD KREUGER

Although the 1st Cavalry Division bore the major burden of the fighting, much credit for the success of the Admiralty Campaign is directly due to General Kreuger and his Sixth Army staff who made the plans for the attack and supervised the support which was so necessary for victory. Shrewd strategy and capable direction was provided by the Alamo Force under which the division operated directly.

On 30 March, the 1st Cavalry Division made its sixth amphibious landing of the Admiralty campaign. Pityulu Island, about four miles off the north shore of Manus Island, was blasted for an hour by navy shells. Then RAAF planes strafed the beach for twenty minutes while the 105mm. howitzers of the 61st Field Artillery Battalion commenced a powerful bombardment from Lorengau. Following this, elements of the 7th Cavalry under the command of Colonel Glenn S. Finley landed on the southern shore of the island without meeting much opposition. Patrols were sent west through the coconut plantation while the main body turned eastward through a dense forest. By mid-morning, contact had been made with the Japs. At noon, the troopers dropped back about 100 yards to permit an artillery barrage to be placed on enemy positions. The advance was renewed immediately after the barrage, and by night-fall, 46 Japanese had been killed and the greater portion of the island occupied. The next day, after another barrage and some more strafing, the 7th Cavalry completed occupation of the island.

Lying just off the western tip of the Mokerang peninsula of Los Negros Island are the small islands of Koruniat and Ndrilo. 12th Cavalry units seized them on 1 April in a unique amphibious operation. After land, sea, and air forces had given these islands the customary softening treatment, the assault units headed for Koruniat in eighteen native canoes, four captured Japanese collapsible boats, and sixteen engineer half boats. The landing was unopposed, and by noon, troops had secured the entire island. Shortly after noon, the force moved on in the same manner to take Ndrilo Island.

It is recorded that as the first wave prepared to move out from Los Negros in the morning, the "skipper" of the "fleet", a squat, muscular native boy stood up in his outrigger canoe and gave the dismounted cavalrymen a touch of nostalgia with his signals. When all eighteen canoes were lined up ready to go, this sturdy, coal-black native raised his arm and slowly lowered it to his side, calling at the top of his voice, "Forward... hoooooo" in true, cavalry style.

At one point during the approach, the success of

the mission became doubtful when the native canoe handlers were excited by the discovery of a large number of dead fish which had been killed by mortar rounds dropping into the water. The paddlers were persuaded to forego the fresh food and the attack proceeded.

On 2 April, the process of securing outlying islands advanced another step when the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, landed on Rambutyo Island, southeast of Los Negros. The landing was preceded by bombing and strafing by two squadrons of P-40's, and by a rocket barrage from three small craft. The troops had difficulty in landing because the island was surrounded by reefs which prevented the landing craft from beaching. As a result, the troops had to move themselves and their supplies ashore through chest-high, medium surf across a jagged, treacherous, coral bottom.

On 9 April, Lieut. Colonel Gines Perez of El Paso, Texas, led his 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry in an assault landing on Pak Island. Three prisoners who had escaped from Rambutyo Island by native canoe were captured the next day. On 12 April, the troopers found more Japanese on the east end of Pak. Eight of them were destroyed in a large coral cave from which they fought until the cave was blown in on them by a demolition squad from the 8th Engineers.

From early April until after the official termination of the Admiralty Islands Campaign on 18 May 1944, the 1st Cavalry Division continued to send out Jap-hunting patrols. With his organized defenses smashed at Momote and around Seeadler Harbor, his leaders killed and his supplies gone, the enemy had no choice but to take to jungle in the unexplored sections of southern and western Manus. There disease and starvation awaited him if the natives or the patrols did not get him first.

Most of the patrolling on Manus was carried out by the 2d Brigade and the 302d Reconnaissance Troop. The mission took on something of the nature of big game hunting for a very dangerous quarry. Stalking Japs on the run had become a sporting proposition. Acting on information furnished by the ANGAU or by their own reconnaissance, the patrols would hurry forth into the jungle whenever they learned of one or more of the enemy's having been sighted. On one occasion, a native reported to an 8th Cavalry patrol that three unarmed Japanese were in a native hut to their front. Rather than take unfair advantage of the defenseless enemy, three members of the patrol dropped their arms, moved into the hut, and after a scuffle, killed the three with knives.

The spirit which prevailed throughout the division is well indicated by Brigadier General Mudge's description of Troop "F," 7th Cavalry, on 23 April, "You would have enjoyed the sight of one of our troops returning from patrol today. I had last seen



this troop three weeks ago, after they had been out two days. On that occasion the jungle was thick, it was raining in buckets, and the mud was knee-deep; the troopers were carrying four days' rations and their ammunition; they had nothing but ponchos, wool-knit sweaters, and toilet articles with them in the way of comfort—but their morale was high, and there wasn't a sour face nor a grumble in the entire outfit.

"The first glimpse I got of the troop was as it was coming down the Lukuli River in native canoes. Never in the world was there a more picturesque sight. Of all the rough, tough, muddy, ragged troops you ever saw, they were it. Yet you have never seen a more cheerful, enthusiastic, happy bunch of men anywhere. Nor was there a set of whickers among them; nor a rusty weapon. They were as happy as though they were headed for Coney Island. Every one of them had a grin on his face; anyone seeing them could not fail to notice that each man had achieved one of the most valuable of military qualifications—pride in himself and his troop."

While the fighting was being carried to a successful conclusion, Brigadier General Hanford MacNider, Commander, U.S. Army Services of Supply, Brewer Task Force, had arrived. Under his able direction, a vast and smoothly-functioning base had been set up on Los Negros. A deadline of 7 April to complete the construction of a 7000-foot strip at Momote and of 22 April for the 8000-foot strip at Mokerang had been established by GHQ. General MacNider so guided and coordinated the all-out efforts of the Naval Construction Battalions and of the Aviation Engineer Battalions that both of these vitally important projects were completed ahead of schedule.

Additional service elements had arrived, had been installed in permanent locations, and were already functioning in their difficult tasks of caring for the combat troops. Among the recently arrived units so engaged were: 1 section, 286th Quartermaster Refrigeration Company; the 123d Quartermaster Bakery Company; the 352d Quartermaster Truck Company, less two platoons; the 2d Platoon, 352d Quartermaster Provisional Bakery Company; a Provisional Coast Artillery Harbor Surveillance Detachment; the 164th Port Company; a detachment from the 3818th Quartermaster Supply Company; and the 588th Laundry Company.

Thus by 18 May when the Admiralty Islands Campaign was officially terminated by order of General Krueger, the Commanding General, Alamo Force, the elements of the Brewer Task Force were tactically distributed throughout the island group and were undergoing rehabilitation and training, with the exception of elements of the 2d Brigade which continued mopping up operations on Manus Island. Plans were made for the defense of the islands by the 1st Cavalry Division. The troops, having killed 3317 enemy with losses of 290 dead, 977 wounded or injured, and 4 missing in action, rested on their laurels, anxiously awaiting their next move in the destruction of the would-be omnipotent "Sons of Heaven."

The wise and efficient leadership displayed by General Swift in bringing the Admiralty Campaign to a victorious conclusion with a maximum of accomplishment and a minimum of casualties resulted in his being transferred from the 1st Cavalry Division during the summer of 1944 and given command of I Corps, which he led for the remainder of the war.

In addition to the troopers mentioned by name in the text of this chapter, the following won Silver Stars for gallantry in action during the Admiralty Campaign:

Name	Home	Organization	Date
Sgt. John T. Lee	Las Cruces, New Mex.	Hq Troop, 8th Engrs.	1 Mar. 44
Lieut. Kenneth H. Torgerson	Wolf Point, Mont.	"H" Troop, 5th Cav.	2 Mar.
Lieut. Leonard E. Williams	Waco, Texas	Wpns. Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Staff Sgt. Norman F. Elliott	Houston, Texas	"H" Troop, 5th Cav.	3 Mar.
Pfc. Charles L. MacDonald	Waterbury, Conn.	"A" Btry, 211th CA Bn.	4 Mar.
Pfc. Audie M. Denney	Blountsville, Ala.	"	"
Staff Sgt. Stephen A. Lowery	Stephenville, Texas	"G" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Cpl. James M. Madden	Hicksville, N. Y.	"H" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Pvt. Wilfred H. O'Claire	E. Millinocket, Me.	"G" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Sgt. Marion T. Burrus	Levelland, Texas	"	"
Pvt. John T. Laules	Columbus, Ohio	Wpns. Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Sgt. John H. Walker	Ellenwood, Ga.	"G" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Lieut. Clarence L. Vandebrake	Sioux Center, Iowa	Hq. Btry, 99th FA Bn.	"
Pfc. Floyd H. Lewis	Kannapolis, N. Car.	"H" Troop, 7th Cav.	5 Mar.
Sgt. Kenneth A. Tipton	Hobbs, New Mex.	Hq. Troop, 7th Cav.	"



Pvt. Thomas W. Ware	Greenville, Calif.	"B" Troop, 5th Cav.	7 Mar.
Pfc. Dan F. Bassigner	Kannapolis, N. Car.	"H" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Cpl. Jack E. Mills	Zionsville, Ind.	"	"
Capt. Herbert L. Gustafson	Erie, Penna.	"A" Btry, 271st FA Bn.	"
Brig. Gen. Rex E. Chandler	San Antonio, Texas	Hq. Div. Arty	9 Mar.
Sgt. Arvel J. Hughes	Konawa, Okla.	1st Col. Tp., 1st Med. Sqn.	10 Mar.
Cpl. Charles L. Severa	Mishowaka, Ind.	"G" Troop, 7th Cav.	12 Mar.
Pvt. James A. Blair	Easley, S. Car.	Med. Det. 7th Cav.	"
Pfc. William L. Lemming	Demossville, Ky.	"	"
Cpl. Charles L. Crawford	Timpa., Colo.	"E" Troop, 7th Cav.	13 Mar.
Pfc. Francis J. Cummings	Oak Park, Ill.	"F" Troop, 7th Cav.	"
Pvt. Grant C. Davies	Fellmore, Utah	"	"
Pfc. John M. Duckworth	Blueridge, Texas	"	"
Pvt. Ivan Hanners	Mount Gay, W. Va.	"	"
Pvt. Jacob C. Myres	Lubbock, Texas	"	"
Pvt. Ernest J. Shaw	Albuquerque, New Mex.	Med. Det., 7th Cav.	"
Staff Sgt. George N. Strawn	Cisco, Texas	"F" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. Lewis Hejna	Bolivar, Mo.	"B" Troop, 5th Cav.	14 Mar.
Pvt. Lawrence D. Ross	San Leandro, Calif.	"G" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. Dale R. Simmons	Polla, Kans.	"	"
Pfc. Urban J. Graman	St. Meinrad, Ind.	"F" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Lieut. Willis W. Leach	Abilene, Kans.	"F" Troop, 5th Cav.	15 Mar.
Pvt. Edward L. Irby	Newport News, Va.	"B" Troop, 8th Cav.	16 Mar.
Sgt. Bernard T. Owin, Jr.	Houston, Texas	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pvt. Donald W. Phillips	Sonoma, Calif.	"B" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Staff Sgt. Edward P. Weathers	Lubbock, Texas	"	"
Pvt. Donald E. Dickens	Clemenceau, Ariz.	Med. Det. 8th Cav.	"
Pvt. Herman M. Purdue	Americus, Ga.	"	"
Cpl. Edward M. Richardson	Tinnie, New Mex.	"B" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Pfc. Haskell O. Antonio	Coolidge, Okla.	"	"
Pvt. Thomas J. Sullivan	Stockton, Calif.	"	"
Pfc. Ted Walker	Worland, Wyo.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. Joe C. Barragan	Jamez, New Mex.	Hq. Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Capt. Donald Taylor	Keeline, Wyo.	"D" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Pfc. Joseph W. Turowski	Sayreville, N. J.	"A" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Pfc. Walter Piterniak	Cohoes, N. Y.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pvt. Virgil L. Falkenbury	Ava, Ill.	Hq. Troop, 1st Sqn., 7th Cav.	17 Mar.
Pvt. Robert L. Perry	Peekskill, N. Y.	Sv. Troop, 7th Cav.	"
Pvt. Edward J. Cohelmka	Brainard, Neb.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Sgt. Peter A. Cerrone	Springfield, Mass.	"A" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Sgt. Barney L. Echols	Big Spring, Texas	"	"
Pvt. Augustine Gonzales, Jr.	San Diego, Calif.	"	"
Pfc. Enrique Vasquez	Brownsville, Texas	"B" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Cpl. Lester Waddell	Houston, Texas	"B" Troop, 12th Cav.	12 Mar.
Lieut. Linda L. Barrett	Knox City, Texas	"A" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. Donald D. Chaso	Alexandria, Minn.	"	"
Cpl. Lester R. Gavoso	Dallas, Texas	Hq. Btry, 82nd FA Bn.	"
Staff Sgt. John W. Shaw	Celina, Texas	Wpns. Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Sgt. Jesse A. Arnold	Lufkin, Texas	"A" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Sgt. Leroy Mogus	Parma, Idaho	Hq. 2nd Sqn., 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. James W. King	Mullon, Texas	"F" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Sgt. Herman Kennedy	Whiteboro, Okla.	"J" Troop, 8th Cav.	19 Mar.
Sgt. William T. Johnson	Holly Springs, Miss.	"C" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Lieut. Dominic J. Chilos III	Fort Worth, Texas	"A" Troop, 8th Cav.	"

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



Lieut. James K. Hackett	London, Ohio	Hq. 2d Brig.	"
Lieut. James M. Concannon	El Paso, Texas	"A" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Pfc. Edgar R. Draper	Albany, Ore.	"B" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Sgt. John W. Roberson	Oak Grove La.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	20 Mar.
Master Sgt. Ottis C. Higgins	Plainview, Texas	Hq. Troop, 8th Engrs.	21 Mar.
Pvt. John M. Gale	Gallup, New Mex.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Cpl. Louis C. Herbert	Newark, N. J.	"D" Troop, 12th Cav.	22 Mar.
Pfc. Johnnie R. Womack	Asbford, Ala.	"F" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. Harold B. McGuffee	San Antonio, Texas	"C" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Sgt. Jack J. Bales	Waynesville, Mo.	"C" Troop, 7th Cav.	"
Pvt. Travis Jameson	Hot Springs, Ark.	Med. Det. 7th Cav.	"
Lieut. Orlin L. Calloway	Baraboo, Wisc.	Hq. 271st FA Bn.	"
Pvt. Walter E. Strom	Dear Ridge, Minn.	Hq. Troop, 7th Cav.	23 Mar.
Pfc. Sam Cronenwett	Palo Alto, Calif.	Hq. Troop, 2d Brig.	"
Sgt. Frank J. Toole	Trinity, Texas	"D" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Sgt. Joe T. McKinley	Cancee, Ala.	"	"
Staff Sgt. Lewis H. Wright	Koase, Texas	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. Porfirio M. Sandoval	Alameda, Texas	"H" Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Pfc. Elza Swindell	Everett, Penna.	"	"
Pfc. Coy F. Miller	Herber, Calif.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cav.	"
Lieut. Arthur W. McGrath	Newton Center, Mass.	Hq. 1st Cav. Div.	25 Mar.
Pvt. Johnson H. Crandall	Fort Smith, Ark.	"A" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Cpl. Clettus A. Daus	Haldeman, Ky.	"	"
Cpl. John R. Sinclair	Pittsburgh, Penna.	"	"
Cpl. Jack F. Gates	Culver City, Calif.	Wpns. Troop, 8th Cav.	"
1st Sgt. Floyd J. Zientek	Tucumcari, New Mex.	"A" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Staff Sgt. William H. Ofill	Portersville, Calif.	"C" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Cpl. Everett A. Lowery	Center, Texas	"C" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Pvt. R. L. Clark	Bonham, Texas	Hq. Troop, 8th Cav.	27 Mar.
Sgt. William R. Jinks	Memphis, Texas	2d Col. Tp, 1st Med. Sqn.	30 Mar.
Pfc. Paul A. Lehman	Albright, W. Va.	"A" Troop, 7th Cav.	"
Sgt. Russell I. Fullerton	Huntsville, Ohio	"	"
Sgt. William R. Allen	New Llano, La.	Hq. 1st Sqn., 12th Cav.	11 Apr.
Sgt. Claus G. Clausen	Elkton, S. Dak.	"A" Troop, 8th Engrs.	"





*We loaded at Cape Sudest, Oro Bay, New Guinea on 27 February 1944.*

## ADMIRALTY PICTORIAL

*An 81 mm. mortar squad of the 5th Cavalry boarding an LCM.*



*En route to the Admiralty Islands, we reviewed our plans for the attack.*





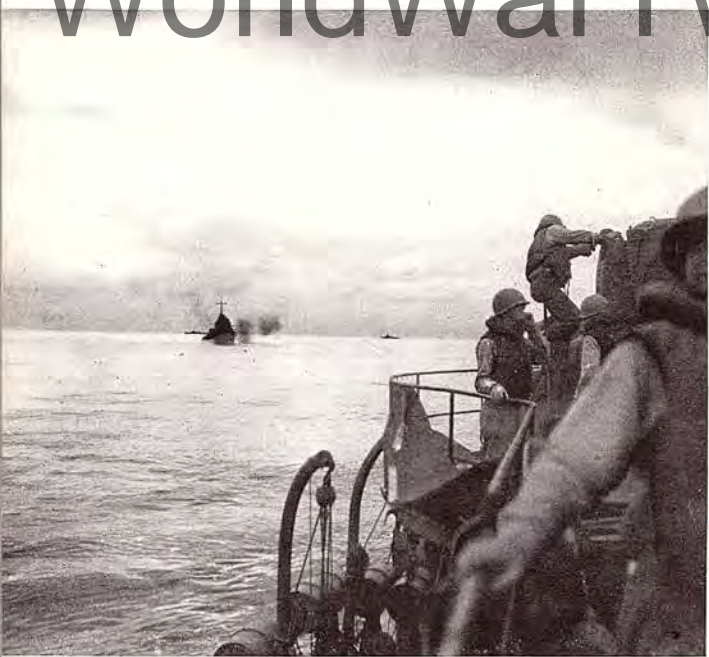


*We watched the sea . . . .*



*. . . . and rested.*

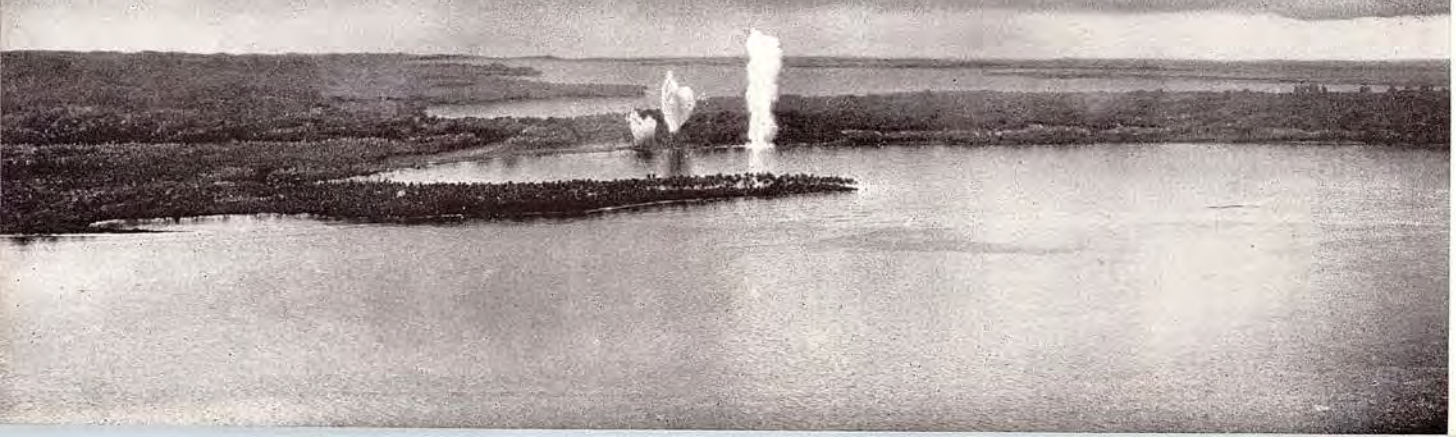
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*By the dawn's early light on 29 February, the Navy opened up with a barrage. General MacArthur observed from his flagship.*

*The target was Hyane Harbor, Los Negros Island . . . . .*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

..... and Momote Airdrome.



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

Fifth Air Force B-25's helped with the pre-invasion softening.





*Men of the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, left the APD's (personnel-carrying destroyers) which had brought them from New Guinea*

*and loaded into LCM's . . .*



*. . . and LCPR's*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







*to start the run for shore.*



*The first three waves were not hit by enemy fire,*





*But the fourth wave suffered  
a few casualties from Japanese  
shells.*

*Undaunted, we stormed ashore*



*on schedule.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*It was raining as we streamed across the beach to move in on the enemy.*

*While patrols fanned out across the Momote Airstrip, temporary command posts were set up.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Troop "G," 5th Cavalry, had its headquarters in the ruins of a coconut shed. Radio communication with the Brewer Task Force Headquarters was established within 15 minutes after the landing.*



*Digging foxholes in the coral soil was a difficult task.*







*In the early afternoon, General MacArthur came ashore . . . .*



*to look at the damage done by the naval and air bombardment.*

*He awarded a Distinguished Service Cross to Lieut. Marvin Henshaw for bravery in action . . . .*

*and was guided around the air-strip by General Chase, commander of the assault force.*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Danger lurked in these Japanese pillboxes, constructed of palm-logs, coral, and artful camouflage.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



While our troops were fighting to gain possession of Momote Airstrip and put it in usable condition, food, ammunition, and other supplies were dropped to them from B-17's of the Fifth Air Force. Unarmed C-47 transports could not be used in the combat area because of Jap fighter planes.



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*As seen from a high altitude bomber, Momote Airstrip with its surrounding taxiways and revetted hardstands present a fancy scroll pattern. In the upper left portion of the picture is reef-protected Hyane Harbor where the initial assault landing was made.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*A few Japanese were taken prisoner*

*... and interrogated.*

*For the most part, they were happy to be out of the war.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Captured enemy documents and materiel were studied and tested.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The Japs made suicidal attempts to break through our defensive perimeter.*

*On 8 March, we liberated 69 Sikhs who had been captured at Singapore and who had been used at forced labor by the Japanese army.*





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*General Kreuger, commander of the Alamo Force (Sixth Army) visited the fighting troops and was conducted by General Chase and General Swift.*

*General Kreuger's interest in the front-line troops was a happy inspiration to them.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







*The medics worked tirelessly. Here is a member of the 1st Squadron, 5th Cavalry, being treated at a forward dressing station about 100 yards from the fighting in the Papitalai area.*



*Evacuation of the wounded to naval vessels solved some of the medical problems. Here is Captain Joseph Q. Tuck who was wounded while winning a DSC.*





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Chow was not a formal affair but it tasted good.*



*Snacks from home and Red Cross refreshments were welcome.*





*We drew water in our helmets from this captured Japanese well.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The ration was supplemented by these wild brahma cows which had been abandoned by the Japs.*



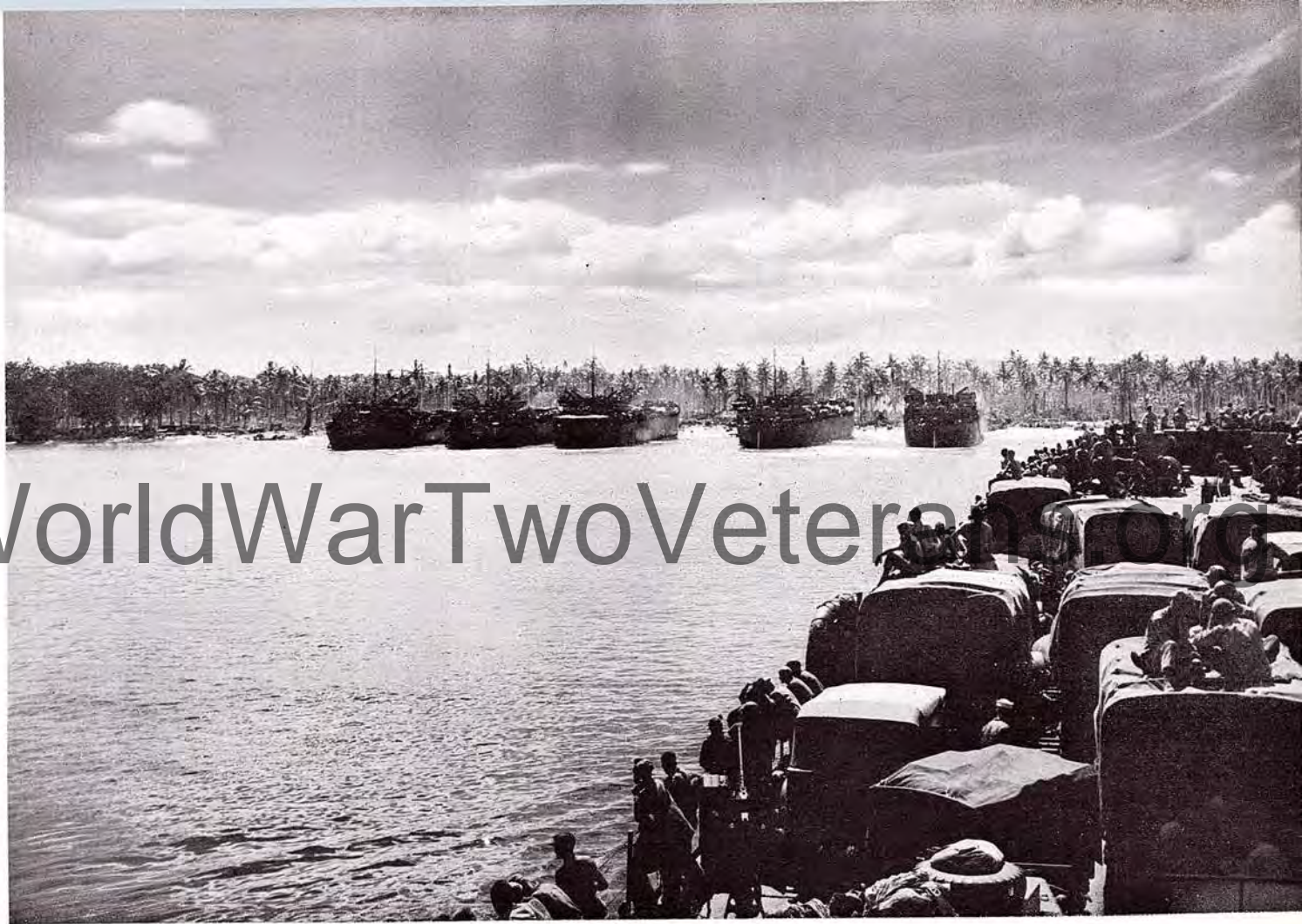
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*This shark proved to be inedible but its capture provided some sport.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*The 2d Cavalry Brigade landed at Salami Plantation on 9 March 1944 with supporting troops which included the 8th Engineer Squadron.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







*In preparation for the 2d Brigade's attack against Lorengau, the artillery set up positions on Hauwei Island.*

[WorldWarTwoVeterans.org](http://WorldWarTwoVeterans.org)

*A captured Jap naval gun was brought to bear on the enemy.*



[WorldWarTwoVeterans.org](http://WorldWarTwoVeterans.org)





*The 2d Brigade landed at Lugos Mission on 15 March without much resistance,*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*But the advance eastward to Lorengau was opposed by numerous bunkers, pillboxes, and snipers.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







*The 8th Cavalry used anti-tank guns to help*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*drive the enemy out of battered Lorengau*

*and capture Lorengau Airstrip and the Jap defenses of Seeadler Harbor.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Corporals Armando V. Valencia and Peter J. Armstrong were awarded Distinguished Service Crosses for their gallant operation of this machine gun near Lorengau.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*After an artillery barrage on 7 March, the 5th Cavalry made a successful attack to seize Papitalai Village while the 12th Cavalry and the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, secured Papi-taali Mission and Lombrum Point.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The fighting in the Papitalai area was bitter and exhausting.  
The medics were always on hand to do their best for those who needed it.*





*Brigadier General Hanford C. MacNider  
was in charge of all construction work in  
the conquered islands.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*The 40th Naval Construction Battalion  
operated heavy equipment to rebuild  
Momote Airstrip soon after its capture.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*1st Cavalry Division troopers moved toward the front lines past the tail of a B-25, the first plane to land on the reconditioned airstrip. The strip was put to use on 6 March, exactly six days after the initial assault landing.*

*The Momote Airdrome was a welcome haven to the P-40's of the Royal Australian Air Force. Here, General Chase and members of his fighting force watch the Aussie warbird come in for a landing.*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Navy PT boats assisted in the capture of outlying islands.*

WorldWarTwo

*Native canoes were utilized by the 12th Cavalry in the capture of Koruniat Island.*



rons.org





*Patrolling for Japs in the jungle continued all summer.*



*Jap swords and flags were the most prized souvenirs. Here, left to right, are Pfc Victor Cordova, Major Julio Chiamonte, and Pvt William A. Snyder who killed a total of 17 Japs during their first day of fighting.*



*Pride of possession.*



*A naval battle flag captured at Rossum was presented to General Swift.*



*Success of a unit depends upon the support it gets.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The 211th Antiaircraft Battalion protected us from air attacks*

*Signal Corps units took care of communication. Here, a "Duck" is utilized by the 1st Signal Troop to lay wire.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The Ordnance Department kept our vital weapons in repair. Quartermaster units handled supplies expeditiously. Angau natives served faithfully in many ways.*



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwo



*The Engineers performed innumerable duties. They operated boats, ferries, and sawmills. They built roads. One of their many heroes was Pvt Webster J. Ough of "C" Troop, 8th Engineer Squadron, who used his bulldozer to rescue a tank under enemy fire.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

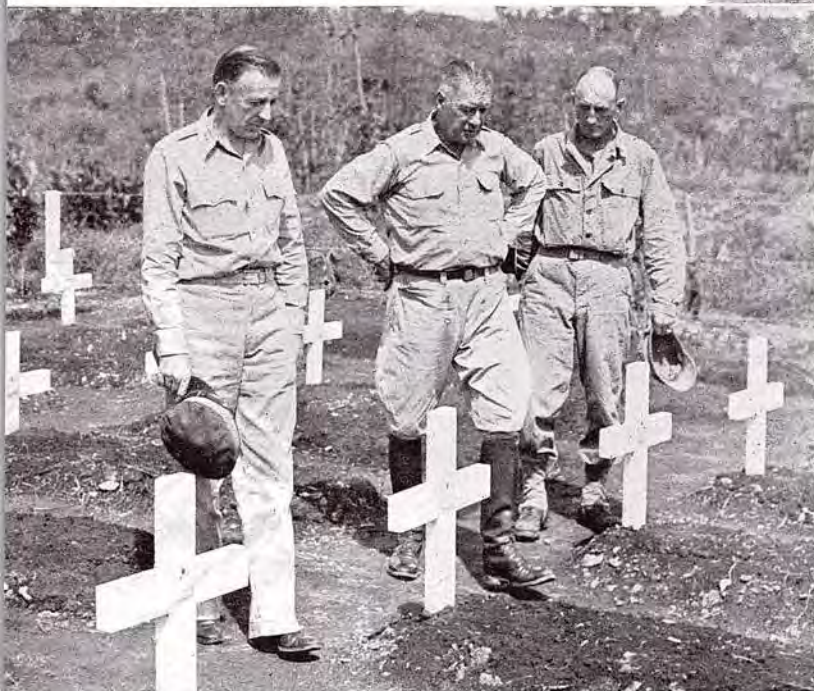




Wherever the 1st Cavalry Division goes, the name of the officers' mess is always "Wainwright Hall" in honor of Lieut. General Jonathan Wainwright, hero of Bataan, who was once commanding general of the 1st Cavalry Brigade. Shown here, supervising the erection of the sign, are Major C. L. Stahler and Captain E. A. Bozarth, both of whom served with General Wainwright at Fort Clarke, Texas in 1940.



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



We shall never forget the brave men who lost their lives in the Admiralty Campaign. Above left, Lieut. General R. K. Sutherland, Major General J. P. Swift, and Brigadier General V. D. Mudge pay tribute to fallen troopers. At right, a volley is fired by the honor guard during the dedicatory services at the military cemetery on Manus Island.

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# THE LEYTE-SAMAR CAMPAIGN

When General MacArthur left the Philippines in 1942, his parting words were, "I shall return." Two and one-half years later he returned and the 1st Cavalry Division returned with him. The assault elements of the 1st Cavalry Division landed in an area near Tacloban, Leyte on 20 October 1944.

With the completion of the reconquest of New Guinea, Biak, and Morotai by the Allied Forces in the Southwest Pacific Area in the summer and early fall of 1944, attention was focussed on the problem of wresting the Philippines from the Japanese. The original plans contemplated landings to be made on Talaud Island in November, followed by assaults on Mindanao and Leyte during December. As a result of the air attacks conducted by the carrier forces of the Third United States Fleet under Admiral Halsey, however, Japanese air and shipping strength had been so devastated that GHQ decided that the program for the liberation of the Philippines could be greatly accelerated. Mindanao, where the Japanese were concentrating their strength in anticipation of the inevitable attack, could be by-passed and attended to later, thus conserving the meager supply of troops available for operations.

The task force for the Leyte invasion consisted of the Sixth Army commanded by Lieut. General Walter Krueger, which was composed of the XXIV Corps, Major General John R. Hodge commanding, and the X corps, Major General Franklin C. Sibert commanding. Divisions designated for the A-Day assault were the 7th and the 96th Infantry Divisions

Hq, 1st Cavalry Division Forward Echelon

1st Cavalry Brigade Combat Team, Brigadier  
General William C. Chase, Commanding

2nd Cavalry Brigade Combat Team,  
Brigadier General Hugh F. T. Hoffman,  
Commanding

in the XXIV Corps, and the 1st Cavalry and 24th Infantry Divisions in the X Corps.

On 18 September 1944, the 1st Cavalry Division Commander, Major General Verne D. Mudge; the G-3, Lieut. Colonel James B. Corbett; and the G-4, Lieut. Colonel Francis Daugherty, attended a conference at the headquarters of X Corps at Finschhafen, New Guinea where they were given orders immediately to prepare the division for participation in the King II Operation, the official designation of the Leyte campaign.

Returning to the Admiralty Islands, General Mudge gave orders for the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Brigades to assemble at Los Negros Island in order to facilitate combat loading. The movement by the brigades from their base camps on Koruniat and Hauwei Islands was expeditiously accomplished under the close supervision of Colonel Charles A. Sheldon, Division Chief of Staff. The Division Artillery staged for combat directly from its base on Ndrilo Island.

The shipping assigned to the division consisted of 7 APA's, 2 AP's, 2 AKA's, 1 AK, 2 LSD's, 9 LSM's, and 2 Liberty ships. These vessels were a part of Task Force 78 of the Seventh United States Fleet. Embarkation was completed by 2400 on 8 October and after a naval rehearsal on the 9th, the 1st Cavalry Division, Reinforced, departed from the Admiralty Islands on the afternoon of 12 October.

The composition of the combat elements of the Division was as follows:

Detachments, Hq & Hq Troop  
MP Platoon (less 1 section)  
Detachments, 1st Signal Troop

Hq & Hq Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade  
5th Cavalry  
12th Cavalry

Troop "A", 8th Engineer Squadron  
Company "A", 44th Tank Battalion  
Company "A", 85th Chemical Battalion  
302d Reconnaissance Troop (less 2 platoons)  
1st Collecting Company, 1st Medical Squadron  
19th Portable Surgical Hospital  
1 Section, 39th QM War Dog Platoon

Hq & Hq Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade  
7th Cavalry  
Troop "C", 8th Engineer Squadron  
Companies "B" and "D", 44th Tank Battalion  
Company "B", 85th Chemical Battalion  
Company "A", 826th Amphibious Tractor Battalion  
2d Collecting Company, 1st Medical Squadron  
27th Portable Surgical Hospital



Division Reserve, Colonel William J. Bradley, Commanding

Division Artillery, Brigadier General, Rex E. Chandler, Commanding

Antiaircraft Artillery Lieut. Colonel John B. A. Johnson, Commanding

Shore Party, Colonel Allen L. Keyes, Commanding

1st Cavalry Division Rear Echelon

8th Cavalry  
85th Chemical Battalion (less 4 companies)  
Attached: Unit 2, 240th Chemical Composite Company  
Company "B", 632d Tank Destroyer Battalion  
44th Tank Battalion (less 4 companies)  
3d and 4th Platoons, 302d Reconnaissance Troop

Hq & Hq Battery, Division Artillery  
61st Field Artillery (in general support)  
82d Field Artillery Battalion (In direct support of 5th Cavalry)  
99th Field Artillery Battalion (in direct support of 7th Cavalry)  
271st Field Artillery Battalion (in direct support of 12th Cavalry)  
211th Antiaircraft Artillery Automatic Weapons Battalion

592d Engineer Boat & Shore Regiment  
1 Section, MP Platoon  
Provisional Replacement Squadron  
1460th Engineer Boat Maintenance Company  
Company "C", 262d Medical Battalion, 2d Engineer Special Brigade  
595th Ordnance Ammunition Company  
969th Quartermaster Service Company  
992d Quartermaster Service Company  
695th Quartermaster Service Company  
1st Platoon, 3818th Gasoline Supply Company  
Hq and Hq Detachment, 496th Port Battalion  
276th Port Company  
277th Port Company  
820th Amphibious Truck Company

Hq & Hq Troop, 1st Cavalry Division (less detachments)  
1st Signal Troop (less detachments)  
27th Ordnance Company, Attached: 109th Bomb Disposal Squad; Detachment, 558th Ordnance Heavy Maintenance Company; 292d Ordnance Medium Maintenance Company

16th Cavalry Quartermaster Squadron, Attached: Hq & Hq Detachment, 67th Quartermaster Battalion (Mobile); 1 Platoon, 48th Quartermaster Graves Registration Company  
8th Engineer Squadron

1st Medical Squadron (less 2 Collecting Companies), Attached: 412th Medical Collecting Company; 603d Medical Clearing Company; 28th Malaria Survey Unit; 35th Malaria Control Unit; 52d Malaria Control Unit; 1 Section, 21st Medical Supply Platoon (Aviation)

58th Evacuation Hospital with detachment 588th Quartermaster Laundry Company attached

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





LEYTE AND SAMAR ISLANDS, scene of fighting of the 1st Cavalry Division during the Leyte Campaign.



On 15 October, Naval Task Force 78, carrying X Corps troops, rendezvoused at sea with Naval Task Force 79, carrying XXIV Corps and the complete armada proceeded toward Leyte.

Leyte is an irregularly shaped island about 115 miles long and about 50 miles wide at its widest point. The somewhat larger island of Samar is situated to the northeast of Leyte across the half-mile wide San Juanico Strait. The two of them with their many satellite islands are in the central portion of the Philippines with Luzon 11 miles to the north of Samar, and Mindanao about 25 miles to the south of Leyte. From a military and geographical standpoint, Leyte is more important than Samar. Politically, Leyte is a single province with no clustered cities. Tacloban, its capital and principal city, is situated on the northeast side of Leyte at the southern entrance to San Juanico Strait 295 airline miles from Manila. Adequate fresh water, large timber forests and enough level terrain for air bases, all enhanced the value of Leyte as a military objective. The road-net seemed to be adequate but the typhoons and torrential rains to which Leyte is subject made the highways inadequate for the military load they had to bear during the invasion. Prior to the landing, the level Leyte Valley was considered maneuverable for tracked vehicles and foot troops, except during the rainy season. Unfortunately, the rainy season, which began about the same time as the King II operation, set new records for precipitation and the Leyte Valley was inundated during three-fourths of the campaign.

Prior to the operation much consideration was given to the subject of landing beaches. Of particular interest to the 1st Cavalry Division were the beaches between the mouth of the Palo River and Tacloban to the north. X Corps had been assigned this area for its landing on A-Day. The northern half of it, designated as "White Beach", was the disembarking area for the 1st Cavalry, the right-flank division of the Corps. Field Order No. 1, X Corps, 30 September 1944, gave the 1st Cavalry Division the missions of landing at "White Beach", seizing the beachhead in its zone of action, capturing Tacloban and Tacloban Airdrome on the nearby Cataisan Point Peninsula, destroying hostile forces in the Tacloban Valley, and establishing control over San Juanico Strait to permit the access of light naval vessels to the Samar Sea. The division was also directed to be prepared to make, on Corps order, a shore-to-shore movement for the purpose of seizing Wright, a town on the western shore of Samar. It was also to maintain contact with the 24th Division, protect the right flank of the Sixth Army, and defend all occupied areas.

As of 1 October 1944, the G-2 estimate of the

enemy situation was a total ground strength of 21,300 troops in the Leyte-Samar area. The main combat formation was the Japanese 16th Division, veterans of the Bataan Campaign. Elements of the Japanese 102d Division had been identified at Ormoc, and there were indications that the rest of that division, totaling 12,000 troops, was in the process of moving to Western Leyte. The main enemy base on Samar was at Catbalogan, the island capital. The Japanese 9th Infantry Regiment had recently moved down to Samar from Luzon.

Within the zone of attack assigned to the 1st Cavalry Division, the estimated enemy strength was 5,000 of which 3,000 were rated as combat troops. Among the enemy defenses known to be in the Division's sector were a series of lateral anti-tank ditches 20 to 34 feet wide by as much as six feet deep, many weapons pits, 12 pillboxes, and a road block situated along the shore between the tank traps and the south end of Tacloban Airdrome. Antiaircraft weapons were sited along the airstrip to serve as antiboat guns. This was the situation that lay ahead of the landing force as its ships made their way into the Leyte Gulf on the morning of 20 October 1944.

The success of the invasion depended largely upon the naval pre-landing bombardment and subsequent support. When the dawn of 20 October broke in a cloudless sky, the Navy opened up with its big guns and pounded the landing beaches with a devastating bombardment. The powerful might of elements from the entire Pacific Fleet was felt by the enemy. In the X Corps sector alone, 3 battleships, 4 cruisers, 19 destroyers, 11 LCI's with rockets, and 4 LCI gunboats supported the landing. For three hours, the bombardment covered the landing beaches, flanks, airfields, roads, and high ground overlooking the beaches. Air support came mainly from the carrier-borne aircraft as the great distances from army air bases precluded the use of the Army Air Force except for a pre-A-Day bombing which softened some of the defenses.

At 0800, the ground forces, mounted in the largest convoy ever assembled up to that time in any Pacific invasion, moved majestically into the Leyte Gulf. Dividing into attack groups, under the command of Admiral Thomas C. Kincaid, the Northern Attack Force proceeded to the transport area in San Pedro Bay. As the ships took up their positions for unloading, the troopers aboard could hear the thunderous roar of the bombardment and observe the battle craft shrouded by the smoke of their guns. Ahead lay the beaches of Leyte, erupting dust and smoke through the palm trees as the shells plunged into Japanese defenses. The final phase of the return to



the Philippines had begun.

Debarcation of the assault waves began immediately. Carrier-based naval aircraft roared overhead as the assault boats maneuvered for position on the Line of Departure. At 0936, flanked by LCI's Rocket, and LCI's Gunboat, the first wave swept over the Line of Departure and started the run for White Beach. The terrific barrage laid down by the escorting rocket ships completely covered the beach defenses, and for a distance of 800 yards inland, the enemy was left dazed and stunned, entirely incapable of organized resistance. Only small arms and machine gun fire opposed the LCVP's carrying the assault elements of the 5th, 12th, and 7th Cavalry Regiments. The first wave stormed ashore promptly at 1000, H-Hour.

At H+15, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, mounted in LVT's (Buffaloes) landed on the right flank of White Beach and turned north up the Cataisan Peninsula with the mission of securing the Tacloban Airdrome. Meanwhile, the 1st Brigade and the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, charged straight inland on line, overcoming the relatively light opposition, as the 8th Cavalry assembled in Corps Reserve. Of a total of approximately 300 to 500 enemy troops holding White Beach prior to A-Day, only about 50 were manning the outposts in the White Beach sector and about 35 were deployed around the airdrome when General Mudge's cavalrymen landed. The others had retreated when the bombardment commenced, and those remaining were promptly sent to their ancestors.

The troops were successfully ashore and a beachhead had been established. Then began a battle with an enemy that all through the Leyte Campaign caused more trouble and difficulty than the Japanese ever did. It was mud, and rain, and mud, and typhoons, and mud, mud, mud. Directly beyond the landing beaches the troops ran into a man-enveloping swamp. All along the line, men cursed as they wallowed toward their objective in mud of arm-pit depth. This unexpectedly tough obstacle, however, failed to deter their dogged advance.

The 5th and 12th Cavalry Regiments and the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry advanced straight inland, crossing Highway No. 1 at 1545. In the meantime, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, commanded by Major Leonard Smith, had secured the Cataisan Peninsula and the Tacloban Airdrome with the aid of medium tanks from the 44th Tank Battalion. All A-Day objectives were seized before nightfall.

Major General Verne D. Mudge assumed command of his 1st Cavalry Division ashore at 1400 and established the Division Command Post at San Ricardo. As night fell on the division's first day

in Leyte, there was no contact on the division front, except on Hill 215, where approximately 75 Japs held well entrenched positions.

During the night there was slight enemy infiltration in the 5th Cavalry Sector, which resulted in a keen blow to that regiment. While Colonel Royce A. Drake, the regimental commander, was inspecting the defensive outposts and instructing their occupants to insure that his unit was adequately prepared to repel an expected counterattack, rifle shots rang out in the enemy-infested darkness and he was killed. He had led his regiment with skill and aggressive determination during the landing, and his zealous devotion to his troops and to the service had caused him to disregard the dangers of moving about during the night.

His gallantry in action won him a posthumous Silver Star, the first awarded to an officer in the Leyte-Samar Campaign.

On the morning of 21 October, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry moved overwater by LVT's to join the 2d Squadron in the drive on Tacloban. This increase of pressure broke the resistance of the enemy and shortly before noon Colonel Walter Finnegan's 7th Cavalry swept into flag-bedecked Tacloban to receive a wildly joyous welcome from the Filipino citizens. Gifts of flowers, eggs, and fruit were made by the appreciative populace and some of the troopers were treated to drinks of "tuba juice," the native pain-killer. The occasion was not one of entirely carefree abandon, however. The army had been forced to fight its way into the Leyte capital, and the Japanese had dug in on the 1500-foot hills which overlook the town. From there, they sent down sporadic machine gun and mortar fire. Other Japs were hiding in houses or were sniping from foxholes under the dwellings. The advance of the 1st Squadron on the right flank was a slow door-to-door process for awhile. The Japs held on tenaciously, employing rifles and machine guns liberally, until they were wiped out by the dismounted cavalryman strongly supported by tanks, mortars, and artillery. By late afternoon most of the city had been taken and General Mudge toured the streets in a medium tank. The general personally received 40 surrendering Formosan laborers after his tank battered through an upset truck which the enemy had left as a road block. He found a guerilla presiding over the Formosans, who held their hands aloft and appeared to be happy over being captured. In the meantime, the 2d Squadron had commenced an enveloping movement to the west of the city. The main enemy opposition was met on Hill 215 southwest of the city where a strong enemy force occupied deeply dug positions along a ridge withstanding heavy artillery fire and several attacks.



Information on the capture of one of these positions is contained in the citation of Pfc Kenneth W. Grove of Racine, Wis. Grove's platoon from the Squadron Weapons Troop was pinned down by intense enemy fire from a bunker to the immediate front. Grove volunteered to clear the enemy from the position. He cautiously worked his way through the low underbrush to the bank of the bunker, and then charged across the open area in front of the bunker and succeeded in killing the enemy gun crew consisting of four Japs. By his prompt and courageous action, he prevented casualties among his fellow troopers and made a decisive contribution to the successful accomplishment of the mission.

Hill 215 was captured the following day, 22 October, when the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, killed, or found dead, 335 Japanese in that area.

The troops of the 1st Cavalry Brigade, under Brigadier General William C. Chase, were battling it out with both swamps and Japs to the south. In the 5th Cavalry, Pfc Henry L. Catron of Hughes Springs, Texas, a member of the Service Troop, accompanied an officer who was reconnoitering for a better route of advance through the difficult terrain. As they moved through the swamp grass and underbrush, the officer was suddenly confronted by three Japs moving stealthily toward him with fixed bayonets. He attempted to fire on them but his weapon, wet and clogged with mud, failed to function. Quickly sizing up the situation, Catron moved between the officer and the enemy and killed them with his sub-machine gun. His courageous action and fast thinking not only saved the life of his commanding officer, but the sound of his shots warned the leading elements of his squadron that there was an enemy ambush lying across their route of advance.

As the 5th Cavalry wrestled its way through the swamp, the leading platoon of "A" Troop was pinned down by a sudden burst of fire from a well concealed enemy position on a hillside up ahead. Seeing the predicament of his troop, the commanding officer Captain Charles J. Barrie of Teaneck, N.J., unhesitatingly moved forward to their position, and while under constant fire, organized and directed the fire of his troop's weapons on the enemy position until he was killed. Captain Barrie's courageous leadership inspired his men enabling them to destroy the enemy and advance to their objective.

The 12th Cavalry ran into an isolated group of 15 Japs and dispersed it. This relatively light opposition supported all previous indications that the Japanese believed the Allied attack would come mainly in the vicinity of Du'ag (where the XXIV Corps landed), and possibly near Palo (in the 24th Division Sector), but not in the Tacloban area.

The 22d of October was occupied with mopping up around Tacloban by the 2d Brigade as the 8th Cavalry was released from Corps Reserve to Division control, while the 1st Brigade drove the enemy from the high ground to the west and southwest of the city. The Division Command Post was set up on the race track in Tacloban.

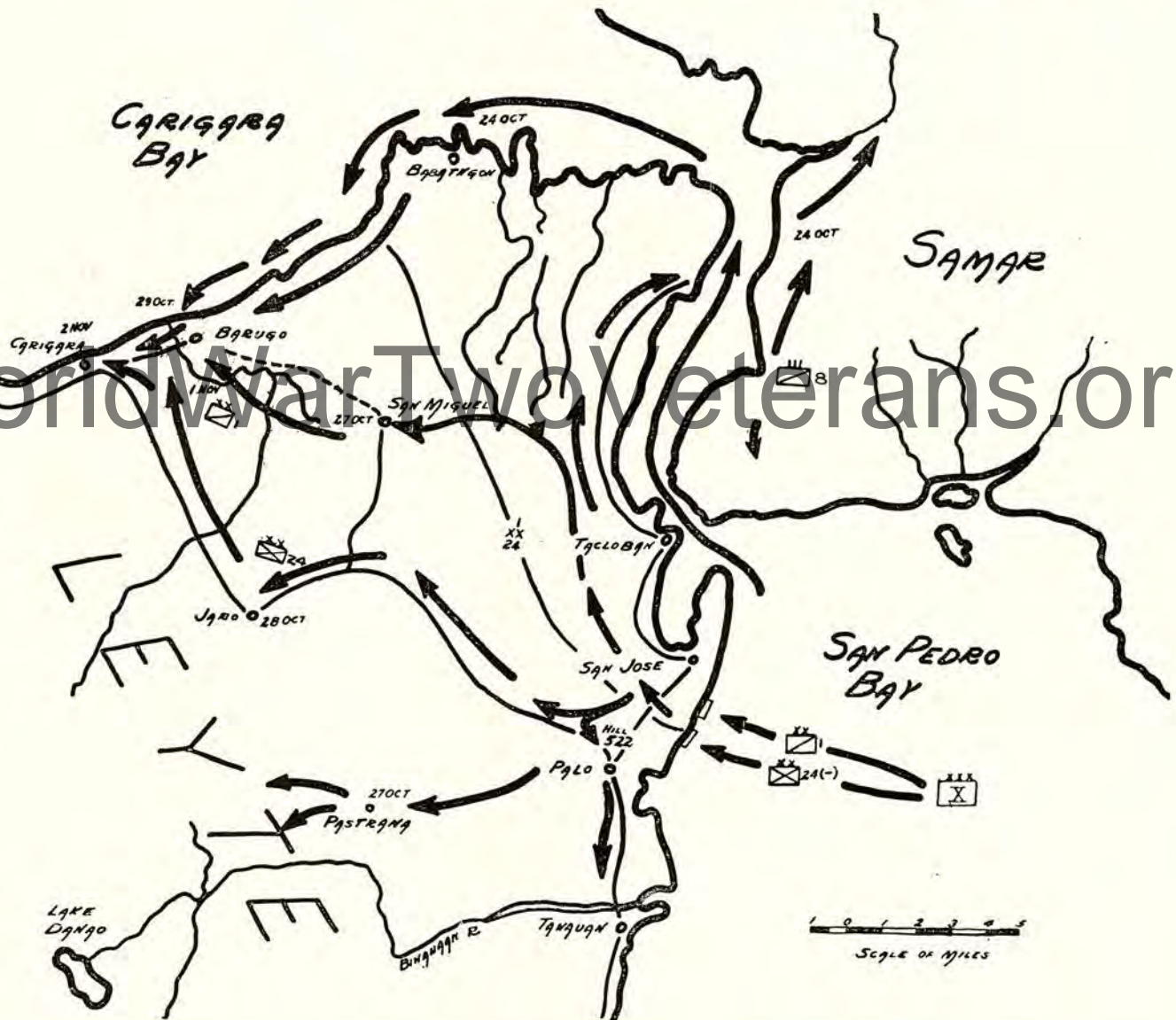
As the 12th Cavalry pushed its way through the difficult terrain three of its enlisted men performed feats of heroism on this day which resulted in the subsequent award of Silver Star decorations. Pvt Dale R. Simmons, a member of "G" Troop from Rolla, Kans., won an oak-leaf cluster to add to the Silver Star previously awarded him for his courageous work as automatic rifleman in the Admiralty Campaign. When the squad in which Simmons was a BAR-man was held up southwest of Tacloban by heavy rifle and machine gun fire from a well concealed enemy position, he showed outstanding coolness and bravery. The overconfident enemy began a fierce counterattack, but Simmons moved forward, and by his heavy volume of accurate automatic fire, annihilated the attackers and enabled his squad to regain contact with its platoon. Later in the Leyte Campaign, Simmons was mortally wounded, but he will long be remembered by his comrades as a courageous and gallant soldier.

Sergeant R. B. Adams of Georgetown, Texas was a squad leader in "E" Troop. When his squad received a hail of machine gun fire during an assault on strongly defended Japanese pillboxes, he advanced to the front of his squad where he could deliver heavy and devastating fire on the enemy. He remained in this position until his ammunition was expended and he had hurled his last grenade into the enemy strongpoint, but in so doing he was fatally wounded. His determined and gallant action enabled two platoons to advance and seized their objective.

Sergeant John Parker, Jr. of San Francisco, Calif. led a rifle squad from "F" Troop which had the arduous task of acting as a covering detachment for his troop as it made its way through the swamps and dense undergrowth. As his squad reached the center of an open swamp, Parker saw his scout cut down by the withering fire of an enemy machine gun. Unhesitatingly he crawled forward with Jap bullets grazing just above him and rescued his fallen comrade by carrying him back to the safety of a covered position. As he was completing this mission he was mortally wounded by a burst from an enemy machine gun. His heroic and unselfish action, however, saved the life of the wounded scout.

Less than 24 hours after the assault troops had swarmed ashore on Leyte, a vast and new problem





LANDING AT WHITE BEACH, Leyte, on 20 October 1944, the 1st Cavalry Division quickly captured Tacloban and then commenced a two-pronged drive to the north and northwest. On 2 November, the 1st Cavalry and 24th Infantry Divisions attacked Carigara from two directions and captured it easily.

presented itself to the military authorities. In the 1st Cavalry Division zone alone, nearly 50,000 starving, ragged, and for the most part, homeless Filipinos looked to the advancing troops for sanctuary and relief. The undermanned and inexperienced Philippines Civil Affairs Units could not begin to cope directly with the problem. No vague plans of administration were of value at the moment. The women, children, and the aged, milling through the streets and flooding the bivouac areas had to be fed, clothed, and sheltered immediately. No commander could ignore the question, for the success of the tactical situation depended upon the solution. In add-

ition to any altruistic motives, practical necessity demanded that the Filipinos be given primary consideration. To add to the problem, straggling Japs immediately took advantage of their slight resemblance to the Filipinos, and changed to civilian rags to mingle with the crowds. The first steps taken were purely disciplinary. Soldiers and Filipinos were not allowed to intermingle and the troops were barred from the Filipino houses. Guards were placed on all warehouses, and every effort was made to contact reliable established authorities. The burden of this duty within the Division was borne by the Division Judge Advocate and Civil Affairs Officer, Lieut. Colo-



nel Charles C. Young. The contents of the Japanese ration and clothing dumps were made available for issue to the most needy Filipinos. This partially alleviated the problem. A higher priority than had been previously granted was assigned to the unloading of tons of rice from the ships in the harbor. Temporary jails in Tacloban were established, but only the Army M.P.'s proved to be dependable guards. Those Filipinos assigned as guards on the rations and clothing could not resist the temptation to allow their relatives and friends to loot the supplies.

The highly trained and organized guerrillas who had done valuable ground work before the invasion both harassing the enemy and furnishing information, failed to materialize for several days. The Division G-2, Major Robert E. Goheen, was soon confronted by hundreds of self-appointed guerrillas, whose only claim to participation in the guerrilla organization was a recently realized ambition to be of service to their country and their allies. It was impossible to distinguish between the authentic guerrillas and the great majority who knew nothing of the enemy. Only after the recognized Filipino guerrilla leaders reported to higher headquarters was there any semblance of value derived from these forces. Although the situation as confused initially, much valuable and brave work was done later by many of the same individuals. The sincere and well trained guerrillas soon were in great demand as scouts and as keepers of the peace in the town and villages successively liberated by the soldiers.

In the dark early morning hours of 23 October, "A" Troop, 12th Cavalry, was subjected to a heavy mortar barrage followed by a fierce counterattacks from the enemy. Two men who were largely responsible for breaking up this attack and defeating the enemy were Pvt Charles W. Walker of Palisade, Colo. and Sergeant Dimmitt White of Georgetown, Texas. As the enemy approached the positions which had been seized by the cavalrymen only a few hours before, these two soldiers held their ground and fired their weapons with such effectiveness that the assault was broken and turned into a disastrous defeat. Their courage and devotion to duty were recognized by the award of Silver Stars.

On 23 October, the 1st Brigade Combat Team was placed in Corps Reserve, and on the same date, the 8th Cavalry launched into its initial action of the campaign with a drive of 3600 yards up Highway No. 1 to the northwest of Tacloban, the 2d Squadron skirting along the south shore of the San Juanico Strait which separates Leyte from Samar. This action to secure the strait culminated on the 24th when the 8th Cavalry invaded Samar, the third largest island in the Philippines. The landing was made

at La Paz and, thus, the threat of enemy reinforcements coming from Samar to Leyte was dispelled.

Simultaneously with the Samar landing, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, moved up the strait in LCI's and landed at the barrio (village) of Babatngon on the northern coast of Leyte, while the remainder of the regiment marched by motor and foot to the mouth of the Diit River about three miles northwest of Tacloban. The following day, the Japs launched an air raid against the 1st Squadron's LCI's subjecting them to bombing and strafing. All of the casualties, 8 killed and 17 wounded, were Navy personnel.

For his gallantry in action on 24 October, Lieut. Colonel Rowland H. Renwanz, commanding officer of the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, was awarded a Silver Star. During the initial drive, his squadron had the mission of securing some foothills beyond the Leyte Valley. As the advancing soldiers crossed the rice paddies, they were subjected to machine gun fire which became intense as they neared their objective. Despite this danger, Colonel Renwanz made a personal reconnaissance to the front and discovered a flaw in the enemy's defenses. He quickly formulated a new plan of attack and then successfully led the troops to capture the foothills.

On 25 October, the initial phase of the 1st Cavalry Division's action in Leyte and Samar was drawing to a close. The primary missions assigned to the division by X Corps had been accomplished and all objectives in the division's zone of action had been seized. When it had been necessary to make minor changes in the basic plan of operation, the transition had been accomplished rapidly and efficiently. The 1st Brigade was being used to assist the advance of the 24th Division which had encountered unexpectedly difficult resistance.

On 25 October, a party under the command of the Division G-1, Lieut. Colonel William L. Kerr of El Paso, Texas, started up the San Juanico Strait by boat to select a new location for the division command post. When halfway through their mission, the party was attacked and strafed by a Japanese plane which also dropped a bomb on the boat demolishing it and killing several members of the expedition.

As of 25 October, the 1st Cavalry Division had killed 647 Japs during the Leyte Campaign. Taken prisoner were 6 Japs, 1 Chinese, and 89 Formosans. Division casualties to that date were: 27 killed in action, 137 wounded, and 6 missing.

On Samar, "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry repulsed a determined counterrattack of about 100 Japanese. The enemy withdrew to the north. Elements of the 302d Reconnaissance Troop patrolled extensively along the south and southwest coast of Samar, but failed to



find evidence of any appreciable enemy strength.

26 and 27 October were spent in consolidating positions already seized within the Division zone. Brigadier General Hugh F. T. Hoffman's 2d Brigade Combat Team made additional gains on Samar, as the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, crossed the San Juanico Strait to La Paz, and moved north to the Silaga River to establish a bridgehead.

The 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, moved west, through difficult mountain terrain, into the Leyte Valley in the Lukay-San Miguel area. Patrols from this squadron killed 41 Japs on the mountain trail. To the south, the 12th Cavalry conducted mopping up operations in the vicinity of Palo. On 28 October, the 1st Brigade less the 12th Cavalry assembled in the Palo area and the next day the 5th Cavalry moved to the vicinity of Cavite, a barrio in the middle of the Leyte Valley. "E" Troop, 7th Cavalry, was diverted to Binatac Point on southwestern Samar in order to insure the security of proposed naval installations.

The next objective of X Corps was Carigara, a fishing community on the northern coast of Leyte which the Japanese were using as a port for the supplying and evacuation of their troops in that part of the island. Control of Carigara by the Allies would leave only the western and southwestern coast of Leyte open for Japanese resupply operations.

From Babatngon, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, conducted a series of overwater movements through Carigara Bay, exploiting the lack of strong enemy opposition along the northern coast of Leyte. It entered Barugo, a barrio four miles east of Carigara, on 26 October. Observations and reports from guerrillas indicated that the enemy was preparing to make a strong stand in Carigara, so X Corps had the 1st Cavalry Division withhold an attack on the town until it could be coordinated with the force of the 24th Infantry Division which was pushing up through the Leyte Valley from the south.

On 30 October, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, remaining in position east of Carigara, received guerrilla reports of an increase in enemy strength bringing the Jap force to an estimated strength of from 800 to 1000 troops. One battery of enemy 75mm guns was emplaced along the road west of Carigara. The 12th Cavalry, still in Corps Reserve, continued to mop up pockets of enemy resistance which the 24th Division had been forced to by-pass in the vicinity of Palo, while the 5th Cavalry established bridge guards along the Cavite-San Miguel road.

Operating on Samar along the east shore of San Pedro Bay, the 302 Reconnaissance Troop patrols found no Japs in their area.

Further indications of enemy strength became

evident on 31 October when a guerrilla outpost operating with the 7th Cavalry, repulsed the attack of from 150 to 200 Japs who had made so bold as to move northeast from Carigara toward Barugo. The Japs withdrew leaving behind 50 of their number killed in action. The 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, moved to Barugo, joining the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, there, and building Allied strength for the attack on Carigara.

On the morning of 1 November, all intelligence estimates based on guerrilla reports still indicated the existence of strongly defended enemy positions in Carigara. A coordinated attack by the 1st Cavalry Division and the 24th Division was launched on the morning of 2 November. After heavy preparatory artillery fire had been laid on the east side of the town by the massed fires of the 99th and 61st Field Artillery Battalions and the 155mm howitzers of the attached 947th Field Artillery Battalion, the troops attacked in a column of squadrons, jumping off at 1020. The 1st Squadron 7th led off, followed by the 2d Squadron 8th, with the 2d Squadron 5th Cavalry in reserve. Four rivers had to be crossed by swimming and by native canoes. There was no opposition and no signs of Japs. Carigara was occupied by noon.

On 3 November there was no major activity. No organized enemy were left in the northeast Leyte Valley area. The 12th Cavalry reverted to Division control.

While Sixth Army forces were fanning into Leyte from the east coast, the Japanese had succeeded in landing more than 20,000 combat troops on the west coast at the port of Ormoc. More than 10,000 of their Leyte garrison had been destroyed but the reinforcements had increased the enemy's offensive and defensive capabilities. The landings at Ormoc had pointed to the possibility of other landings in the vicinity of Carigara, and as a result, elements of the 1st Cavalry Division were retained temporarily in the northern part of the Leyte Valley to defend against such an eventuality.

On 4 November, the 1st Brigade Combat Team regrouped its troops to patrol the X Corps south flank by setting up a screen from the mouth of the Carigara River to Daro and thence across the southern X Corps boundary to San Pedro Bay on the east coast of Leyte. In this way pressure was applied by the cavalry to keep the enemy out of the Leyte Valley and protect the left flank of the 24th Division. An additional mission of guarding all bridges in the area was assigned.

The 2d Brigade, meanwhile, established an advance command post at Barugo. The 603d Tank Company, which had staged at Hollandia and had



been attached to the 24th Division, reverted to 1st Cavalry Division control. Company "A", 77th Tank Battalion, was released from attachment to the 1st Cavalry Division and was attached to the 24th Division.

On 5 November, the 5th Cavalry, operating from the Tunga area, found evidence of many small groups of Japs in their zone of action.

To provide for the defense against possible amphibious landings on the shores of Carigara Bay, the 2d Brigade Combat Team was disposed with the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, and the 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, in the Carigara-Barugo area. Preparation to defend the beaches included the registration of field artillery. The 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, continued to patrol north of Wright on Samar.

On the night of 6-7 November, "C" Troop, 5th Cavalry made contact with an estimated 30 Japs not far to the northwest of Kamansi. The enemy attacked "C" Troop with knee mortars, machine guns, and small arms. In a bitter fight that lasted all night, 20 of the enemy were killed while "C" Troop's losses amounted to 5 killed and 4 wounded. It was during this action that Pfc Artemio G. Cantu, Jr. of San Antonio, Texas made a display of unselfish gallantry and courage that won him a Silver Star. In an attempt to eliminate a machine gun on the left flank, one man was wounded and fell in an exposed area. A comrade attempting to rescue him was killed in the act. Knowing full well the risks he was taking, Cantu nevertheless then crawled to the wounded man and carried him to a point of safety on the trail below.

On the same day, Sergeant Curtis L. Spoon of Grandbury, Texas, won recognition while leading his squad from "B" Troop, 12th Cavalry. When intense rifle fire was received from a hutment, Sergeant Spoon deployed his squad and then led it in vigorous assault, directing withering fire which completely demoralized the enemy. Realizing the value of prisoners at this early stage of the campaign, he advanced fearlessly into the Japanese position where he personally killed two of the enemy and captured three others.

Other patrols north and east of San Miguel accounted for 29 Japs. One patrol from the 8th Engineers killed 8, including a 2d Lieutenant at Malaidao; another 8th Engineer reconnaissance party killed four on the Diit-San Miguel track during the afternoon, and at 1430 on 7 November, a patrol from Division Headquarters killed 10 of the enemy south of Lukay. As of 7 November, the Division had killed a total of 1,114 Japs and had captured 116 prisoners of war during the Leyte Campaign.

As the Japanese continued to pour reinforcements north through the Ormoc Valley, the menace of an

infiltration through the mountains separating the Leyte and Ormoc Valleys became increasingly apparent. Evidence of this plan was strongly supported by captured Japanese documents.

To counteract this maneuver of the enemy, the 12th Cavalry was ordered to push into the high ground west of the Leyte Valley and attack the prepared Japanese defenses there. In preparation for the attack, "E" Troop moved to the saddle between Mt. Badian and Mt. Minoro, "F" Troop moved to the high ground between Mt. Pina and Mt. Badian, while the 1st Squadron made a night-long forced march through a typhoon to join the 2d Squadron. It was bad enough marching across that Jap-infested terrain during daylight in fair weather, but the grueling march through the mud and rain with winds of from 40 to 70 miles an hour velocity screaming through the darkness will long be remembered by those who made it. The march was completed at 0715 on 9 November. The regiment launched its attack at 0800 with the guns of the 271st Field Artillery in direct support. Very little opposition was met at the start, although "F" Troop encountered scattered fire and killed five of the enemy. A short time later the squad protecting the right flank of "F" Troop was counterattacked. During this action a machine gunner in this squad was killed and the assistant gunner was seriously wounded. Then, Pfc Ben Quintana, an ammunition carrier from Cochita Pueblo, New Mexico, rushed forward to the silenced gun and put it back into action delivering withering fire on the enemy and inflicting heavy casualties. While so engaged he was mortally wounded, but by his extraordinary courage the counterattack was repulsed and his troop was protected so that it could attack and seize the enemy strongpoint.

Stronger enemy resistance was met later in the morning but the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, attacked after calling for an artillery barrage and forced the Japs to withdraw and break contact. This action began a long and bitter fight to secure the mountain passes between the Ormoc and Leyte Valleys. The struggle continued for nearly two months under the most depressing and difficult conditions. To add to the difficulty, the 1/80,000 map in use proved to be extremely inaccurate. For example, on the map the features and central portion of the road running south from Pinamapoan were from 2000 to 3000 yards west of their true locations. Troops operating in the Mt. Badian—Mt. Pina area found it most difficult to locate their positions with any accuracy. The only consolation was that the area proved to be equally confusing for the enemy. Another tremendous problem was that of supply. Everything had to be hand-carried. The farther the troops marched into the mountains, the more difficult it became to provide



them with food and ammunition. There were times when units existed for days at a stretch with only one meal a day.

To obtain first-hand information on the problems which beset the front line troops, General Mudge made another of his frequent visits to the fighting zone, on 9 November. He went to "B" Troop, 5th Cavalry which was situated deep in the remote mountain passes between Mt. Pina and Mt. Badian. The General's reconnaissance required the passage of numerous rivers and streams brought to flood level and velocity by the typhoon of the previous day. Sheer cliffs and narrow precipitous paths with the imminence of enemy attack made the trip hazardous and difficult at all times.

Two days later, General Mudge made a similar trip to the 12th Cavalry's CP.

Thus, the Division Commander was able to determine accurately the disposition of his troops and the difficulties involved in keeping them supplied. His presence among the fighting forces and the supply personnel heartened them greatly. Wherever he went, his frequent conversations with the men, his words of encouragement, and his deep interest in their activities and welfare, endeared him to his troops and gave them the inspiration which resulted in final victory for the 1st Cavalry Division.

While the 12th Cavalry was attacking in the Mt. Pina—Mt. Badian area, its sister regiment, the 5th Cavalry, was probing for the enemy on the left flank to the south. Maintenance of coastal defenses in the vicinity of Carigara was being carried out by the 2d Brigade.

The 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, continued to seek out Japs on Samar.

On 10 November, the 1st Squadron, 5th Cavalry, occupied the Hill 2926—Mt. Pina Area without enemy contact. To the northwest, the 12th Cavalry encountered strong resistance between Mt. Pina and Mt. Badian. Approximately 50 Japs had holed up on a knife-like ridge and subjected the advancing 12th Cavalry to heavy fire from automatic weapons. This position proved to be one of the main strong-points in the enemy line of resistance. The artillery fired on this position throughout the night and forced the enemy to withdraw.

11 November was a fairly quiet day. Although some sporadic rifle fire was encountered by the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, most of the resistance stemmed from the difficult terrain over which the troops had to fight their way. On this date, the 7th Cavalry took over the defense of the entrance to the Leyte Valley, which permitted the remainder of the 2d Brigade Combat Team to join the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, on Samar for the mop-up of that island.

When a platoon from "D" Troop, 7th Cavalry, went into action near Mt. Minoro to relieve elements of a heavily besieged rifle troop, Sergeant Dick D. Carpenter of Mt. Sterling, Illinois, volunteered to act as scout. During his advance he suddenly came under fire from a well concealed enemy bunker not more than 25 yards to the front. Sergeant Carpenter dropped to the ground and then crawled to within ten yards of the enemy position from which point he threw two grenades into the midst of the enemy and then charged forward to kill the crew of three with his submachine gun. His quick, aggressive and courageous action cleared the platoon's path of advance, and prevented casualties from being inflicted.

12 November found the division continuing in its mission of securing the high terrain to the west and southwest of the Leyte Valley. The 1st Brigade made scattered contacts as it gained ground. The 7th Cavalry initiated action to drive enemy elements farther from the roads in its area of responsibility. A reconnaissance platoon from the regimental headquarters entered the well camouflaged perimeter of an area containing 50 or 60 Japanese. When the enemy let loose with rifles and machine guns, the two leading men were instantly killed and Lieut. Robert B. Wise of Scarsdale, N.Y., the platoon leader, was mortally wounded. He called to his men to deploy and instructed them as to the situation. After a short fire fight, he realized the hopelessness of the platoon's position and directed it to withdraw, well knowing that he was dying and would be left in the hostile positions. A rifleman in the patrol, Pfc Lemuel W. Quinn of Davenport, Iowa, who had been wounded, took it upon himself to return the enemy fire and thus enable the remainder of the platoon to withdraw. He killed two of the advancing enemy machine gunners and laid down such effective fire that his comrades were able to retire without further casualties. Not until the last man had reached safety did he leave his forward position to seek safety for himself. The courageous and self-sacrificing efforts of Lieut. Wise and Pfc Quinn were recognized by the awarding of Silver Star Medals.

Over in the 12th Cavalry area, Staff Sergeant Finis Morgan, a Headquarters Troop man from Cullman, Ala., was cited for the manner in which he led an assault on an enemy gun position which was dug in on Mt. Badian. His fearless action brought him to within a few yards of the enemy mortar where he killed three members of the crew and effectively silenced the gun.

On 13 November, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry ran into some strong enemy resistance while pushing to the southwest from Balud. Two definite Japanese



strongpoints were located on the high ground west of the Naguisan River. The enemy offered determined resistance from entrenched camouflaged positions throughout the day despite the mortar and artillery fire which was brought to bear on them. Rugged terrain intensified the difficulty of appraising the enemy strength and conducting an attack. When the commander of "C" Troop, Lieut. Francis W. Gallagher of Las Cruces, New Mexico, went forward ahead of his troops to reconnoiter and test different avenues of approach, he encountered a strongly fortified enemy bunker. Without hesitation he crawled toward it in an effort to reduce it with hand grenades. During this action, he was wounded by machine gun fire and died shortly thereafter. His extreme self-sacrifice not only established the location of the flank of the hostile position, thereby enabling a successful assault by his squadron, but it also inspired all who witnessed it.

Over in the "B" Troop sector, Pfc Damacio C. Romero of Truchas, New Mexico, also crawled in among Japanese bunkers and got to a position within ten feet of the enemy. From there he was able to observe all of their dispositions. Upon detecting the key bunker in their scheme of defenses, he attempted to eliminate it with grenades and rifle fire. During the assault, he was critically wounded in the stomach and suffered a broken leg. Disregarding the excruciating pain from his wounds, he dragged himself back to his battery commander and give him complete information on the enemy defenses. The following day, the troop rapidly and successfully carried out an attack based on Romero's findings. Romero died shortly after the engagement, but his gallantry and self-sacrifice saved his comrades' lives and contributed signally to the victory.

On 14 and 15 November, the Division continued to secure the high ground between Leyte Valley and the Ormoc-Pinamapoan Highway. Strong combat patrol thrusts were driven into the enemy positions, some getting to within 1,000 yards of the road. Patrol activity continued in the division sector on Samar with minor contacts being made.

On 15 November, enemy resistance in front of the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, faded after the squadron had laid down a mortar barrage and the 82d and 271st Field Artillery Battalions had showered artillery fire on Japanese positions. The 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry reached a point on Mt. Catabaran from which they could look down into the barrio of Cananga on Highway No. 2, and could also see two Jap ships burning in Ormoc Harbor about seventeen miles away. On the slopes of Hill 2348, the 2d Squadron met determined opposition. The enemy continued to fall back but the troopers'

process of gaining ground was slow. The Japanese, always masters at the art of camouflage, had prepared a series of positions from which they sent out mortar, machine gun, and small arms fire as the American soldiers approached. It was necessary for patrols to edge forward until they drew fire and then call for the artillery to do what it could to smash the strongpoints. Sometimes the enemy redoubts were so well defiled that the artillery shells could not touch them, and then, as on Manus, it became necessary for the individual soldier to go in and finish them with rifles and grenades.

After several minor fire-fights on the morning of 15 November, the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, encountered heavy machine gun and rifle fire at noon from at least 40 enemy holding dug-in positions. After a brief artillery barrage the position was reduced by a flanking movement and seven of the enemy were killed. The other Japs abandoned the strongpoint which was found to contain positions capable of accommodating from 60 to 100 troops. The Japs used two American .30 caliber water-cooled machine guns along with one of their own machine guns, and rifles in this position.

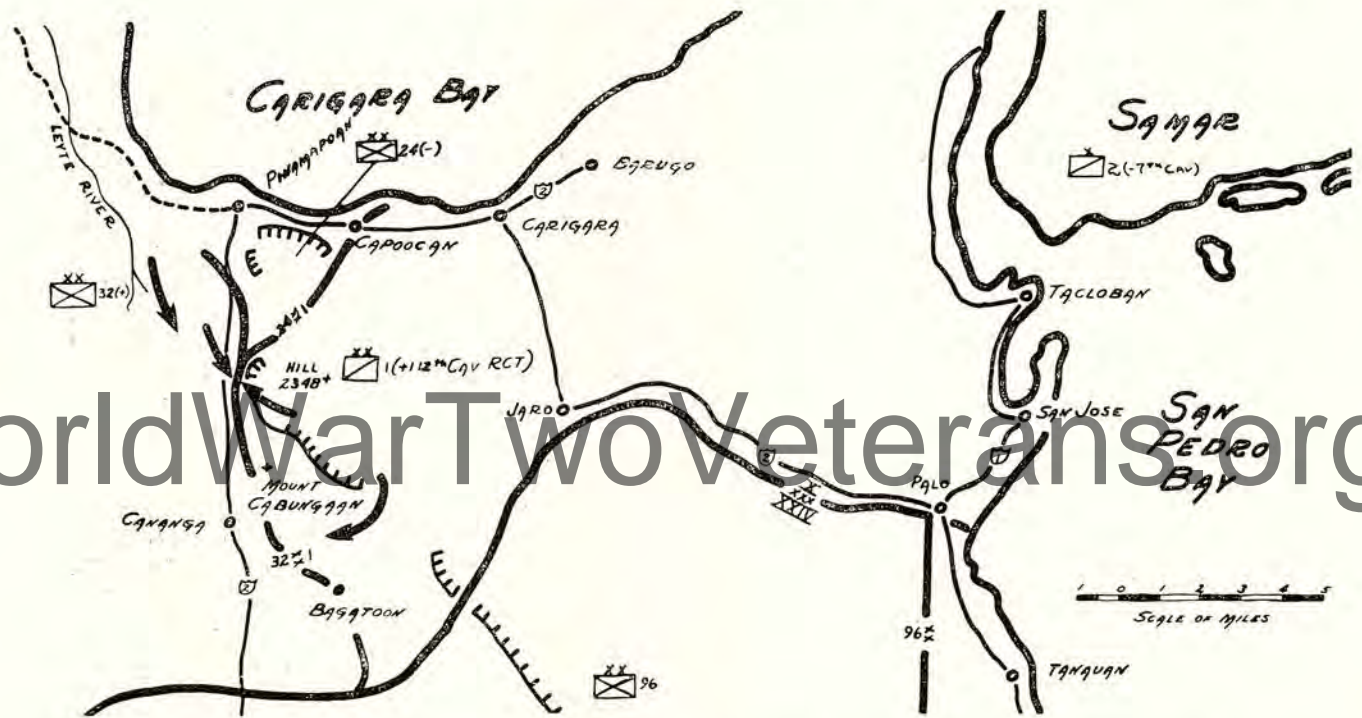
The next day, 16 November, the battle for Hill 2348 continued with "G" Troop of the 12th Cavalry bearing the brunt of the action. One position, when captured, was found to be honeycombed with pill-boxes and foxholes and was estimated to be of sufficient size to accommodate 200 Japs. The enemy opposed the advance with sporadic fire until 1100, then temporarily broke contact. A few minutes later, 30 or 40 of the enemy, flushed by artillery fire, attacked "G" Troop. Thirteen were killed and the remainder fell back to fortified positions from which they fired with machine guns, mortars, and small arms. The problem of neutralizing the new position was a difficult one. The troopers attacked twice but were driven off each time. For awhile the enemy fire kept the cavalrymen pinned to the ground and it appeared that the battle had become stalemated but the initiative of individual soldiers finally turned the tide in favor of the Americans.

Elsewhere in the 1st Brigade sector, mopping up and patrolling continued during the day. A patrol from the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, found a good trail leading from Mt. Cabungaan toward Cananga. Farther to the north, the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry continued to advance with little resistance.

On this date, 16 November, the 112th Regimental Combat Team was attached to the 1st Cavalry Division and moved into the Carigara area.

In Samar, after having been counterattacked on the morning of the 15th, the 8th Cavalry headed north from Wright and killed five more Japs north-





*THE BATTLE THROUGH THE MOUNTAINS separating the Leyte and Ormoc valleys has been described as the outstanding achievement of the Leyte Campaign. Troopers of the 1st Cavalry Division fought tirelessly over the rugged, jungle-covered, rain-swept terrain.*

east of Calbiga.

On 17 November, the 12th Cavalry's 1st Squadron sent a patrol down the trail leading toward Cananga. The patrol got to within a mile of the barrio and saw none of the enemy, although signs of their recent activity were observed and several prepared positions capable of accommodating a company were discovered empty.

On 18 November, the 1st Brigade sent out patrols to locate the enemy and to reconnoiter routes of advance. The 5th Cavalry had no enemy contact. A platoon from "B" Troop 12th Cavalry was led by Technical Sergeant Hilario M. Gutierrez of Bell, Calif. in an assault up Mt. Cabungaan. When the platoon was pinned down by mortar and small arms fire, Sergeant Gutierrez worked his way through dense undergrowth to within five yards of the enemy position and then hurled four grenades into it, effectively silencing two hostile machine guns and enabling his platoon to build up a firing line and prepare for the assault. At this time sniper fire was received from the flank. With boldness and extreme courage, Gutierrez stood up and fired at the snipers. In doing so he was mortally wounded but the valor and gallantry he displayed inspired his men to overrun and seize the enemy position.

The 1st Squadron, 112th Cavalry, relieved the

1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, in the Mt. Minoro sector, and the 7th Cavalry less its 2d Squadron assembled in the Tunga area near Division Headquarters.

On Samar there were indications of increased enemy patrol activities as the Japanese sought to probe elements of the 8th Cavalry in the vicinity of Calbiga.

Aggressive patrolling was carried out again on 19 November along a north-south line which ran roughly from mountain top to mountain top. Re-supply of the troops along this screening line still remained a major problem. Extensive reconnaissance was conducted to find new routes of supply and establish camps for the carriers so that the flow of rations and ammunition to the forward elements would be uninterrupted.

On 20 November, both squadrons of the 12th Cavalry met stiffened opposition from the Japs. Very heavy rains and limited visibility protected these enemy positions from artillery treatment and limited the action of ground troops against them. When a platoon from "B" Troop undertook to ferret out concealed enemy positions on Mt. Cabungaan, a squad leader, Sergeant Charles P. Osborne of Gloversville, N.Y., volunteered, with two other troopers, to protect the right flank knowing full well that other platoons



had previously received heavy fire from that direction. No sooner had his platoon begun its advance than Sergeant Osborne was wounded by an intense burst of machine gun fire. Nevertheless, he engaged the machine gun in a fire fight and momentarily silenced it thereby permitting the rest of his platoon to continue on its mission. He succumbed from his wounds, but his gallant devotion to duty will long be remembered by those who witnessed it.

Continued bad weather on 21 November spared the enemy from concentrated pounding by American artillery. Although 300 rounds were fired by the 105mm howitzers, the Japanese positions on knife-like ridges were extremely difficult to hit. Rain spoiled the visibility and the nearly perpendicular landscape presented fire adjustment problems which nearly drove the forward observers crazy. It was that way throughout most of the mountain fighting campaign. Artillery shells which did not land squarely on the target either landed downhill from it where the dense vegetation helped to smother the explosion or else they went skimming over the crest to fall far beyond. Time and again the enemy would withdraw from their mountain ridge positions when harassed by a barrage, take cover on the protected reverse slope, and, when the artillery fire lifted, rush back into their prepared strongholds before the advancing troopers could scramble up the steep incline to capture them.

The 271st Field Artillery Battalion kept Japs on the northwest side of Mt. Catabaran awake all through the night of 21-22 November. After a heavy artillery concentration at dawn, the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, attacked. The narrow ridge permitted the advance of only one platoon at a time. The initial penetration killed 18 Japs and revealed mutually supporting pillboxes and caves so well camouflaged as to indicate studied occupation of that critical feature of the terrain. The attack was led by a "C" Troop platoon commanded by Lieut. Raymond L. Snider of Woden, Texas. He and three of his men were cited for gallantry in action during this particular engagement. Lieut. Snider's daring bravery inspired his men to fight their way forward in the face of murderous fire, and although he was wounded three times during the assault, he refused to abandon his command and withdraw. Sergeant Joseph R. Simonton of Lawrenceville, Ga. and three comrades undertook a flanking maneuver to knock out two pillboxes. As they worked their way to the enemy positions, two of the soldiers were mortally wounded, but Sergeant Simonton aggressively pushed forward, throwing hand grenades and delivering a heavy barrage with his BAR. He silenced one pillbox and then kept the other under fire as he worked his way to

the two fallen soldiers whom he dragged to a covered position. Pfc Lewis J. Labue of Rochester, N.Y., acted as scout for the platoon as it made its way through the dense underbrush. Advancing alone, he was wounded, but he stuck to his mission and attacked the emplacement with hand grenades refusing to return until the position was destroyed. Three weeks later he lost his life while ferreting out an enemy ambush. Pvt David J. Pellerin of Beaux Bridge, La. was an aid man with the patrol. Disregarding his own safety, he made four trips forward under intense enemy machine gun and rifle fire and personally carried four wounded men to a position where medical aid could be administered to them. His gallantry and courageous action saved their lives and prevented their capture by the enemy.

Before the day was over, other patrols from the 12th Cavalry had established observation posts within 150 yards of the barrio of Cananga on Highway No. 2 in the Ormoc Valley. Previous observations had indicated heavy enemy concentrations moving north up the highway toward Limon, but these patrols saw no such activity thereby giving rise to the conjecture that the enemy had completed his reinforcement to the north.

In the 5th Cavalry sector, a patrol from Weapons Troop contacted scattered groups of Japs near Hill 1908. A fire fight ensued and as the action developed, the patrol commander ordered Sergeant Harold L. Finney of Howe, Texas to move his squad to the right in order to bring flanking fire on the enemy. This movement required the squad to cross a section of open terrain, and in doing so, the group of men were pinned to the ground by Jap fire. Realizing the extreme danger of having his squad remain in this exposed position, Finney ordered his men to deploy while he covered them with his own fire. His firing drew the concentrated attention of the enemy and resulted in his death. He was posthumously awarded a Distinguished Service Cross for his prompt decision and extreme gallantry in sending his men to safety while he gave his life to protect them, thus insuring the success of the task he had been given.

On Samar the 302d Reconnaissance Troop patrols penetrated the enemy's outpost lines in the Capines Peninsula area and located approximately 200 Japs in one group and 100 in another. Native food was plentiful in the area, the Japs were well dressed, and their arms were in good condition.

On the next day, 23 November, the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, renewed its attack on the Japanese ridge positions. So well concealed were the enemy pillboxes and so rugged was the terrain, that it was possible for this enemy group, estimated to consist of only 50 or 75 men, to slow the progress of the



entire squadron.

Enemy artillery threw a few shells into the Mt. Minoro area on this day but no damage was done.

On the 24th, the 112th RCT ran into opposition in the Mt. Minoro-Sinayawan area. The first contact was made by "A" Troop which killed three Japs and drove about nine others to the southwest. Later, "B" Troop, 112th Cavalry, and "E" Company, 34th Infantry, working in conjunction along the Division boundaries, contacted an undetermined number of the enemy well dug in along a hogback which they defended with light machine guns, knee mortars, captured U.S. BAR's, and sub-machine guns as well as rifles. The commander of "B" Troop, Captain Leonard L. Johnson of Sturgis, South Dakota, was cited for the manner in which he led a furious charge on the enemy. Although he was wounded by shrapnel from an enemy grenade, he continued to press the attack vigorously, shouting encouragement to those about him.

Lieut. Burns Tilton of Tyler, Texas, led a patrol from "D" Troop, 12th Cavalry into hostile territory around Cananga where it discovered a Japanese heavy artillery battery. From a position not more than two hundred yards away, he adjusted Corps Artillery fire on the camouflaged enemy guns with such accuracy that the entire battery was completely destroyed. Although the enemy soon had patrols out looking for him and his men, Lieut. Tilton remained in Jap country for two more days gathering valuable information of the enemy strength and dispositions and wreaking further damage with his artillery adjustments. His heroic actions won him a Silver Star.

A patrol from the regimental reconnaissance platoon attacked an enemy group which was protecting a road-block that had been set up across the supply route to isolate the 1st Squadron from the rest of the regiment. A dense forest and semi-darkness threatened the success of the assault. It was difficult for the gunners in the light machine gun squad to see their target and observe the effect of their fire. So the squad leader, Sergeant Edward Oliver of Jersey City, N.J., crawled forward to within twenty yards of the enemy position and called back the exact location of the strongpoints. His squad's machine gun did such effective work that a withering enemy counterfire was concentrated on it, seriously wounding the two gunners. Oliver then worked his way back to the two helpless men, and alone and unaided, dragged them to safety where medical aid could be administered. Still undaunted by the fierceness of the enemy fire, he crawled to the machine gun and with no one to assist him, delivered devastating fire into the enemy dug-outs until the position was overrun

and occupied by his platoon.

Meanwhile, the 8th Cavalry assumed the defense of Babatngon with a reinforced troop. This barriero on the northeastern tip of Leyte had the only suitable landing beach in that vicinity and was considered vulnerable to a Japanese attack.

After a preliminary reconnaissance and artillery preparation on the morning of the 25th, the 112th Cavalry again attacked the enemy positions to its front. Fighting continued at close range throughout the day, but despite vigorous assaults the enemy managed to hang onto his stronghold. Approach to the Japanese position was limited to a 100-yard front up a very steep and slippery ascent down which the enemy literally rolled his hand grenades. The Japs had trenches along the top of the ridge and deep holes immediately behind on the reverse slope to which they retreated during an artillery barrage. The actions of two men from "B" Troop were especially outstanding during the 112th's attack. Corporal Harold M. Roffman of Dallas, Texas and Sergeant Harvey B. Bungard of Henryetta, Okla. worked their way under machine gun and rifle fire to the base of a tree near the Jap machine gun nests, taking with them a supply of hand grenades. Upon reaching the tree they took turns rising and throwing the grenades into the enemy trenches. This action exposed them to enemy fire which chipped chunks from their tree. When their supply of grenades was exhausted, they called for more to be relayed to them. They continued to hurl the grenades wiping out at least six enemy emplacements. In order to get at some of the other foxholes, Roffman crawled forward while Bungard, who had been wounded, attempted to cover his advance with carbine fire. Roffman had proceeded only a short distance on his brave mission when an enemy grenade exploded near him killing him instantly. Bungard, bleeding profusely, stuck courageously to his advanced position until he was ordered to withdraw. The intrepid conduct of these two men contributed greatly to the eventual success of the attack.

The 1st Brigade sent out strong combat patrols to prevent infiltration and to pinpoint enemy positions so that they could be brought under artillery fire.

On 26 November, both the 12th and the 112th Cavalry Regiments launched attacks against their immediate opposition.

The enemy positions which had given the 112th Cavalry so much trouble on the two previous days were seized in mid-afternoon after a pulverizing barrage from the 82d and 99th Field Artillery Battalions.

Patrols from the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, encountered and killed two small groups of Japs in the



San Miguel area of Leyte, while the 8th Cavalry continued to push patrols to the north on Samar.

Division missions were continued on the 27th. Troops in the northwestern sector advancing to the west found that supply and evacuation, always serious problems, became more complex with each bit of ground gained. Terrain was still a greater enemy than the Japs. The troopers had the weapons, the know-how, and the fortitude to handle the enemy when they got to him, but getting to him was an exasperating procedure. In one sector it required nearly two days to maneuver the troops of one squadron into position to make a local attack. Nearly perpendicular heights had to be surmounted to gain the necessary control of high ground. Positions only half way up a mountainside were precarious.

When a platoon from "A" Troop, 12th Cavalry, spearheaded an attack on a key Japanese stronghold on Mt. Cabungaan, several men were wounded by the fierce enemy crossfire which raked the area. Unmindful of the personal dangers involved, the leading scout, Pfc Raymond G. Holland of Christoval, Texas, elected to remain in his exposed position and cover the evacuation of his disabled comrades. The advance was resumed after the successful removal of the wounded. Then it was discovered that Holland had given his life through his devotion to duty.

The 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, spent all day getting ready for an assault on Japanese positions on Hill 2348. The attack was launched on the morning of 28 November, and took the form of a double envelopment. It was successful and resulted in forcing the enemy to withdraw, leaving behind much of their equipment. Dense fog and rough terrain hampered the pursuit. The 1st Squadron, meanwhile, sought out enemy positions in the Ormoc Valley, near Cananga on Highway No. 2, but a series of enemy outposts prevented penetration to the bivouac area. Other troops from the 1st Squadron renewed their attack on the Jap positions on Mt. Cabungaan but precipitous ridges held up their advance. The 112th RCT continued to move toward its objective, the only contact being the elimination of a Jap straggler hiding in a native hut. Patrols from the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, found no Japs in their sector of the northern Leyte Valley. 8th Cavalry troops at Babatngon near the San Juanico Strait reported a visit from enemy bombers, but the two bombs both landed off-shore and caused no casualties. Other patrols searched on Samar without results. The 7th Cavalry, less the 1st Squadron, was prepared in the Leyte Valley to handle both airborne and waterborne hostile attacks.

On 29 November additional difficulties beset the

1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, when an enemy force estimated to be the equivalent in strength of two companies cut the supply trail. The troopers were already on short rations because of supply hardships. With the supply line severed, it appeared that disastrous consequences might result. "C" Troop, of the 12th, reinforced by two platoons from "D" Troop, and "A" Troop, 5th Cavalry, attacked the Japanese position simultaneously, but heavy fire pinned them to the ground. Night found the Japs still in possession of the trail-block.

Over on Hill 2348, the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, repulsed a light counterattack and continued to consolidate its positions in that area. During the night, six other counterattacks occurred but none were successful in causing the cavalymen to give up any ground. On the morning of the 30th, the squadron moved out to eliminate the opposition and before the day was over, more than 100 of the enemy had been killed, most of them by "F" Troop, but when evening came there were still some Japs baring complete control of the hill.

The attention of the remainder of the 12th Cavalry was focussed on the stubborn enemy sitting athwart the supply route. To the hungry soldiers of the 1st Squadron this threat to their very existence took precedence above all else. Supply was a serious problem. Under the supervision of Lieut. Colonel Francis Daugherty, the Division G-4, many army facilities had been mustered to get the necessary articles to the men on the firing line. Water transport, motor transport, LVT (Buffaloes), tractors and trailers, native carriers, and finally supply by air drops were all utilized. The 12th Cavalry supply chain was an outstanding example of the complex difficulties involved. Hauling from the warehouses in Tacloban, motor transport carried the cargo to Carigara, a distance of 30 miles over muddy rutted roads. There, LVT's of the 826th Amphibious Tractor Battalion picked up the supplies and hauled them westward three miles to Sugud through rice paddies churned to a waist-deep morass. At Sugud, the supplies were manhandled from the LVT's into one-ton two-wheel cargo and ammunition trailers towed by TD-9 tractors of the artillery battalions which were supporting the front-line troops. These tractors laboriously wound their way into the foothills, inching and winching through boulder-strewn rivers which rushed at flood level, and up steep inclines that required the utilization of tractors in tandem. Mud was always present. The LVT's worked best in the slick, soft mud that seemed to have no bottom. The tractors were used in the thick, heavy mud that would not float the LVT's. High in the foothills, at the entrance to the passes through the mountains, the 12th Cavalry established a supply base, native camp,



hospital, and rest camp all in one. About 300 native carriers, segregated from their families, were kept here under the protection of the guerrillas. These carriers were hired for six days at a time, and not allowed to leave without a pass from their Filipino leader. This was absolutely necessary, for the ration-carrying assignment was the most arduous and back-breaking task undertaken by Filipino labor during the campaign. From this supply camp, long trains of carriers struggled forward, protected by armed escort. Heavy rations, ammunition, and all other types of supply were made up into 50-pound loads with two carriers allotted to each load. The narrow slippery trail led up steep hillsides, through rushing mountain streams and heavy undergrowth up into the clouds. It took five hours to travel three miles on the ground. There, at the base of a vertical ascent of more than 500 feet, was another supply base, the relay station. The forward troops were another day's forced march beyond. An additional 300 Filipinos bivouacked at the relay station in the mountain wilderness, surrounded by elements of the enemy. These carriers made the last half of the tortuous journey, while the others returned to the base camp for re-supply. Over this route it took a minimum of four days for an item of supply to be moved from the warehouse to the front line troops. This elaborate system broke down when the Japs established their trail-block, and the ensuing fight was a battle for survival.

On the morning of 30 November, "D" Troop of the 12th Cavalry repulsed two Japanese attacks as it was girding itself for an assault on the trail-block from the south. Meanwhile "C" Troop had taken up position on the north side and was poised waiting to coordinate its efforts with the remainder of the 1st Squadron. "B" Troop, under the command of Captain James R. Spurrier of El Paso, Texas, moved around the enemy's east flank to attack the hostile perimeter from that direction, but the going was slow because a trail had to be cut through the densely wooded jungle undergrowth and over rugged mountain terrain. The movement began late in the afternoon and as darkness fell there was the added danger of troops becoming separated and lost, but through Captain Spurrier's initiative and courage, his men were successfully maneuvered to a point from which the attack could be made. During the early morning hours of 1 December, Captain Spurrier assumed command of all units in his sector, organizing an additional fighting platoon with men returning from the hospital and some others carrying rations. When the coordinated attack jumped off at 0745, Captain Spurrier led his men in the hand-to-hand combat which lasted for the next twelve hours.

During the day's fighting, Staff Sergeant Mervin

D. Baker of Stockton, Calif., a member of "H" Troop, 12th Cavalry, volunteered to cross an exposed lane to locate enemy machine guns which were delivering murderous fire and could not be out-flanked. He was wounded in both legs and the hip as he crawled forward, but he continued on until he reached a covered position on the far side where he was able to ascertain the position of the enemy guns and signal their location to his platoon leader. Despite the shock and pain of his wounds, he remained alert and on two occasions when other volunteers started to cross the fire lane to effect a rescue, Sergeant Baker, realizing the futility of such a move, waved them back. When his position was finally taken by his comrades, they found that he had sacrificed his life.

By evening the trail-block was virtually eliminated when contact was made between "B" and "C" Troops, 12th Cavalry, which had been attacking the obstruction from opposite sides. A total of 218 Japs were definitely known to have been killed during the afternoon, and many more who had been forced over a cliff could not be counted. Further mopping up remained, however, before the trail could be used again for the passage of supply trains.

"A" Troop, 5th Cavalry, received a presidential citation for its outstanding performance of duty during the period from 29 November to 2 December. War Department General Order No. 47, dated 18 June 1945, tells the story: "With the mission of assisting in the neutralization of the Jap trail block, this troop made a grueling eight-hour march over the steep and slippery mountain terrain reaching its objective at approximately 1820 hours whereupon it immediately launched an attack which lasted until complete darkness forced a halt so that a perimeter could be established for the night. Foxholes were dug while the enemy sniped from positions only 20 yards away in some places.

"The attack was resumed the following morning and by nightfall the enemy in front of "A" Troop had been fairly well cleared away, but during the engagement a small body of Japanese had moved in behind the troopers and attempted to attack them from the rear. Although the men had reached a state of near exhaustion from their long hours of marching and fighting, they pushed their attack on this new enemy force with vigor and determination and were successful in driving them off. During the entire action, the troops fought at ranges often as close as five yards and literally gouged the enemy from their positions, foxhole by foxhole. The gallantry, grim determination, and esprit de corps displayed by the men of "A" Troop were responsible for the overcoming of the carefully prepared and strongly defended enemy positions."

The commanding officer of "A" Troop, Captain



Jack R. Metzdorf of Oak Park, Ill. was awarded a Silver Star for the exemplary courage and aggressive leadership he displayed in this action. Time and again he worked his way under heavy enemy fire to the various sections of the perimeter in order to give encouragement and instructions to his men.

For its part in the battle of "Starvation Ridge", the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, reinforced by the regimental Weapons Troop, the regimental Reconnaissance and Train Defense Platoon, and the 2d Platoon, 1st Collecting Troop of the 1st Medical Squadron, were also awarded a presidential citation. It is contained in War Department General Order No. 110, dated 26 September 1946.

While the 12th Cavalry was getting its supply system unthrottled, the 112th Cavalry was continuing its advance to the southwest of Sinayawan. After progressing about 1000 yards to secure high ground overlooking the Ormoc Valley, it was stopped by a strong enemy position on a high ridge to the front. The 99th Field Artillery blasted the strongpoint during the late afternoon and night of 30 November—1 December. During the night the troopers received the heaviest enemy artillery fire of the campaign. Several strong enemy patrols hit the perimeter in the darkness but failed to dislodge the cavalrymen.

On the morning of 1 December, the 112th launched an attack but it fell short of its objective. It was noticed that the Japanese artillery fired whenever the 99th fired, probably in an effort to confuse the forward observers who were attempting to pinpoint the enemy positions.

During the night of 1-2 December, two members of "A" Troop were outstanding in the actions to prevent the Japs from reinforcing the beleaguered trail-block position. They were Sergeant Edward P. Crook of Waco, Texas who, when the enemy launched a night attack, crawled through the darkness in grave risk of being mistaken and shot as one of the enemy, procured some sorely needed reinforcements, and then led the men back to the perimeter where a successful stand was made; and Lieut. Patrick T. Hanna of Dallas, Texas, who, when the leader of a platoon next to his was wounded by a night infiltration of the enemy, took command of both platoons and despite the dangers of moving around in the enemy-infested darkness went about disposing his men and instructing them so that the attack was repulsed. The next morning he led his men in an aggressive and enthusiastic attack which quickly ended in defeat of the enemy. Sergeant Crook and Lieut. Hanna were both awarded Silver Stars for gallantry in action.

The 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, had contact with the enemy in its sector on this day. Patrols from "F" Troop going southwest and northwest ran into

enemy outposts. When a platoon from "G" Troop went to assist in overcoming the resistance to the northwest, Technical Sergeant Clyde W. Dees of Barstow, Texas personally led the first squad in the advance in the hope of finding a more practical route of attack for his platoon to follow. Rifle fire halted the squad but Sergeant Dees continued forward alone, completed his reconnaissance, and then returned to point out the best possible plan to the squad leader. He was moving back to rejoin the platoon when a newly placed enemy machine gun opened fire on the squad's rear. Caught between two fires, the squad was in a dangerous position, and if it had not been for Sergeant Dees' exceptional leadership, heavy casualties probably would have resulted. With a genuinely heroic disregard for his own safety, Dees rose from cover so that he could see and direct the squad's withdrawal, which was completed without the loss of a single man other than Dees himself who was killed by enemy machine gun fire.

Over in the 112th Cavalry sector, a member of "B" Troop, Corporal William A. McCain of Monroe, Louisiana rushed through fierce enemy fire to the aid of a sergeant who had been wounded in the head. When his comrades were forced to abandon nearby positions, McCain elected to remain with the wounded man. As the enemy fire grew hotter he was hit in the arm by a rifle bullet but he still declined to withdraw. For three hours, until the wounded man died, he remained guard over him, repeatedly exposing himself to the enemy and killing all who tried to infiltrate his position.

In the same action, Pfc Santiago Giron of El Paso, Texas took the initiative and moved out in the lead of his platoon when it launched a frontal attack against an enemy position situated on a hill. During the hazardous advance through heavy Jap fire, he was ever an example of bravery, shouting encouragement to his companions while firing savagely at the enemy from exposed positions. When a machine gun held up the platoon's advance, Giron spotted several enemy soldiers and killed three of them before they could inflict casualties in his platoon. As the advance continued, he went forward and threw hand grenades at an enemy gun position. Working his way closer, he prepared to throw another grenade from a distance of twenty feet but the enemy had spotted him and he was killed. He had inspired his comrades, however, so that they went on to rout the enemy.

On Hill 2348, the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, was still having trouble with the Japs. There, as elsewhere along the mountain battle line, the enemy resistance was stiffening noticeably. The counter-reconnaissance screen which the Japanese had thrust onto the high ground to prevent interference with



their movements up and down the Ormoc Valley was being compressed by the advancing Americans and would soon be useless if it were pushed back any farther. During the night of 2-3 December, the enemy made two strong counter-attacks against the 2d Squadron's perimeter, but both of them were staved off with the assistance of fire from the 271st Field Artillery Battalion. The squadron executive officer, Major Charles F. Towns of El Paso, Texas was cited for the gallant leadership he displayed during this action. For three days his squadron had fought bitterly to seize Hill 2348 but had been repulsed by a strong, heavily armed enemy force which was deeply entrenched in well fortified, commanding positions. Major Towns courageously volunteered to lead a reinforced troop in a wide flanking movement through the difficult mountain terrain in an attack on this stubborn hostile position. Moving to a suitable site from which he could launch an attack the following morning he established his troop in a defensive perimeter for the night. Shortly after dark the Japs let loose with a heavy barrage of machine gun and mortar fire followed by a fanatical "Banzai" attack. Despite severe casualties, Major Towns' men halted them and forced them to retreat. During two subsequent attacks, Major Towns distinguished himself by his cool courage and unswerving devotion to duty when, disregarding his own danger, he moved to the outer perimeter and personally took command of its defenses. At constant risk to his own life, he continued to expose himself to the intense enemy fire and inflicted heavy casualties on the enemy by cleverly shifting his supporting weapons to the most effective firing positions. In the midst of the last and strongest attack he operated a radio within ten yards of the enemy in order to call for artillery fire. Thereafter, his troop launched a counter-attack which sent the enemy reeling in disorganized retreat forcing them to abandon a large number of their dead and wounded. This action paved the way for the successful attack by the squadron the next morning.

As of 2 December, the 1st Cavalry Division had killed 2015 Japs. It had captured 32 Japs, 91 Formosans, 1 Korean, and 1 Chinese. Cavalry losses for the campaign had amounted to 133 killed in action, 490 wounded, and 7 missing up to that date.

A month had passed since the 1st Brigade Combat Team went into the mountains between the Leyte and Ormoc Valleys to annihilate the enemy or drive him out. It had been a month of existing on short rations in the cold fog-hidden ridges, with wet muddy foxholes for a home and a fanatical blood-thirsty enemy for a neighbor. Even so, morale was still high and troops of the 1st Brigade continued to fight their way forward. When the supply line was cut by the enemy or by swollen streams the troops would go

for several days at a time on one-third of a "K" ration per day. Supply levels in the forward units were generally at zero since nearly everything brought forward was issued and consumed as soon as it arrived.

Only the most seriously wounded were considered litter cases. It required from two and one-half to three days to carry them to the nearest portable surgical hospital situated at the head of the carriers' trail. All other casualties had to come out under their own power. The constant rain and fog which never permitted the men to get dry caused a considerable amount of sickness. The combat units operated at about 50 per cent of their authorized strength. Despite all this, the troopers went on engaging and destroying successive groups of enemy who tenaciously defended key terrain features.

On 3 December, both Squadrons of the 12th Cavalry continued to mop up, the 2d Squadron concentrating on the elimination of Japs on Hill 2348 who had escaped previous detection in the fog and dense undergrowth. The 5th Cavalry was still encountering occasional resistance in the vicinity of Mt. Pina.

During a lull in the Samar Campaign, Sergeant "Joker" Jennings of "H" Troop, 8th Cavalry, following the current rage, gathered a large and generally victorious stable of fighting cocks. Returning from a nearby barrio one night, he was invited to partake of a considerable quantity of fried chicken being prepared by several troopmates. He accepted their hospitality, pronouncing the birds excellently prepared. Morning dawned without the customary clamor of his feathery fighters, and Sergeant Jennings' worst fears and suspicions were quickly confirmed. Mayhem was prevented only by the intervention of 1st Sergeant "Hook" Brookes.

On 4 December, the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, attacked and overcame a position to its front. The enemy fled in confusion, leaving much of his equipment behind. "A" Troop of the 112th, in a drive to the northwest, made contact with the left flank elements of the 32d Division who were advancing south on Highway No. 2 from Limon. Thus, the drive against the Japanese became more unremitting. Instead of isolated prongs being thrust at the enemy, a nearly continuous line was thrown against him, and elements of his force caught behind this line were trapped.

On Samar, the impatient 8th Cavalry was finally given the go-ahead signal. On 3 December, General Kreuger, commander of the Sixth Army, ordered an attack to be launched on 5 December to seize Wright and establish control over the western portion of southern Samar including the Wright-Taft Highway. One gun section of Battery "C", 99th Field Artillery Battalion, was displaced by native boat to San Sebas-





*CONTROL OF SAMAR ISLAND was assured when the 8th Cavalry captured Wright, Catbalogan, and Taft after overcoming some bitter enemy opposition.*

tian, Samar where they could bring Wright under fire.

The 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, reached the vicinity of Hinabangan on 5 December in preparation for the final drive on Wright. Opposition during the day was speedily overcome by the advance guard, and the forward movement of the main body was not delayed. Twelve P-40's bombed and strafed Wright with excellent results. At 0930 the 99th

Field Artillery shelled Wright causing several large explosions in the center of the town. All pro-Allied civilians had been evacuated previously.

There was no change in the division sector on 6 December.

The 12th and 5th Cavalry continued to mop up and patrol on 7 and 8 December. The 1st Squadron, 112th Cavalry, attempted to locate and cut the supply line of the enemy who were still holding up the



advance of the 2d Squadron. In rear areas, the 302d Reconnaissance Troop was actively engaged in the San Miguel sector of eastern Leyte Valley ferreting out numerous groups of the enemy who were harassing the natives. These enemy groups were composed, for the most part, of stragglers from the smashed 16th Japanese Division.

On 7 December, "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry, occupied Hinabangan on Samar and pushed right on to the north and east to hunt down the retreating enemy. When a combat patrol from "B" Troop ran into a hail of automatic fire during the advance, Pfc Dante A. Cosentino of Methuen, Mass. crawled within close range of the enemy position to effect the rescue of his squad leader who lay wounded in an exposed area. Despite his own personal danger, Cosentino dragged his wounded comrade to safety amid the admiring plaudits of the other members of the patrol.

Mortar fire was laid on the enemy position and the machine gun was knocked out. The Japs fled to the east with the patrols in pursuit.

On 9 December, heavy rain brought tactical operations to a virtual standstill and confined all activity to no more than patrolling.

10 December: the 2nd Squadron, 7th Cavalry relieved the 2d Squadron, 112th Cavalry southwest of Sinayawan. The enemy opposing this position remained quiet during the day.

In the vicinity of Hinabangan, Samar, aggressive action on the part of the enemy took the form of a night infiltration into the "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry, perimeter in an attempt to knock out 37mm guns which had been used effectively against the Japs. In the ensuing melee, none of the cavalymen were killed, but eleven of them received bayonet wounds. One Jap was killed for sure and three others were believed to have been killed.

During the night of 10-11 December, an estimated party of four Japs attempted to infiltrate the "E" Troop, 5th Cavalry, perimeter approximately three miles northwest of Daro. They were bent on the demolition of an artillery position. One Jap, who was killed, had 20 pounds of dynamite with knee mortar shells which could be used as detonating fuses attached to both end of the bundle.

On 11 December, the enemy was driven from his strongpoint on the northwest ridge of Mt. Cabungan. Following an intense mortar and artillery barrage, the 12th Cavalry made the coordinated attack, "A" Troop from the south, and "E" Troop from the north-east. By mid-morning the Japs had been driven from the first ridge of their strong position. By mid-afternoon the 1st Squadron had pushed forward another 300 yards, gaining contact with "E" Troop. The enemy broke and scattered, abandoning a ridge

position sufficiently large to accommodate a battalion.

To the north near Sinayawan, a heavy artillery concentration was placed on the strongly defended enemy position. This was closely followed by an attack by the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, but the assault did not succeed because of heavy fire from machine guns, rifles, and grenades which the enemy sent forth from well concealed positions.

Reconnaissance continued as patrols from the 12th and 5th Cavalry sought the best route of approach to Highway No. 2. The 12th Cavalry Reconnaissance Platoon patrol returned from the vicinity of Lonoy and reported extensive defensive and artillery positions.

On 12 December, the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, fought its way to within 50 yards of the enemy's perimeter and dug in for the night on the ridge within hand grenade range. From that spot the troopers were able to pinpoint and adjust artillery fire on 15 Japanese bunkers. Patrolling on the right (north) flank of the Division, the 1st Squadron, 112th Cavalry, assisted by artillery fire of the 99th Field Artillery, dispersed a large number of Japs who had been blocking the paths of the patrols.

A Jap truck on Samar was blown up by a land mine laid by the 8th Cavalry near Wright. Southeast of the town, "C" Troop jumped off at 0800 after an artillery preparation. Heavy resistance was encountered at the road junction of Highway No. 1 and No. 2. The troops secured the crossroads and pushed on toward Wright against successive delaying actions until late afternoon, when they hit a strong position southeast of Wright and dug in for the night. When "B" Troop, 8th Cavalry, was halted by heavy enemy fire, a platoon leader, Technical Sergeant Joe N Whisenhunt of El Paso, Texas, volunteered to go beyond the lines and locate the enemy positions so that mortar fire could be brought on them. He crawled forward under enemy fire and observation and courageously established himself at a point which, although it offered little or no cover, permitted him to report the effect of the mortar bursts. Enemy bullets struck all around him while he was thus engaged and before long he was seriously wounded. One of the men from his platoon, Pfc Clarence H. Grant of St. Louis, Mo., crawled through the hail of lead to give him first aid. Although Grant was also wounded on the way, he reached Whisenhunt and dragged him back to the "B" Troop perimeter. The gallant bravery of both of these men and their conspicuous devotion to duty were an inspiration to their fellow soldiers who shortly thereafter stormed forward to rout the enemy.

On 13 December, the 8th Cavalry occupied Wright. Jumping off at 0800 with the supporting fire from a platoon of 4.2 mortars and one battery of 75mm howitzers, the troopers closed in on the fortified hill



mass southeast of the barrio. By noon the enemy had been driven from his foxholes. Many Japs had been killed, while others had fled to the northwest toward Catbalogan. The controlling hilltops were in the possession of the Americans. At 1415 the occupation of Wright was completed.

During the night of 12-13 December, a patrol from the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, in the mountains on Leyte, taught the Japs a lesson in infiltration. The troopers wormed their way through a strong enemy perimeter, knocked out two machine guns, killed four of the enemy, and returned to their own lines without having received a scratch. Pressure was maintained against the Jap position all day on the 13th. The following day, the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, destroyed the most stubborn single enemy strongpoint the division had encountered thus far in the Leyte campaign. For more than two weeks the troops had been hammering at the Jap position with every weapon available, but as was so often the case, it remained for the individual soldier to close with the enemy in hand-to-hand combat to achieve victory. After an intense mortar barrage had been laid down by 4.2's, 81mm's, and 60mm's, "G" Troop attacked frontally while "F" Troop moved in from the rear. As the troops closed in, flame-throwers were employed with devastating effect. Especially noteworthy during this attack were the actions of a "G" Trooper, Pfc Henry Steinbach of Staten Island, N.Y., who preceded the flame-throwers firing his BAR from the hip thereby enabling the flame-thrower operators to get near enough to the Jap bunkers to do their deadly work.

For its brave conduct in this bitter engagement, "G" Troop, 7th Cavalry, was honored by a presidential citation. When, after three days of hand-to-hand combat, "G" Troop completely overran the enemy stronghold, it was found to consist of 30 well constructed bunkers, defended by 15 machine guns, 2 BAR's, 9 mortars, and 152 rifles. After the final assault had been complete, 82 enemy dead were counted in the positions and an unknown number had been sealed inside their own bunkers by demolition squads. "G" Troop's aggressive attack against a numerically superior enemy force marked a turning point in the fighting in the northern Ormoc Valley.

Having fought its way to the commanding heights of the mountain range after weeks of laborious action, it now remained for the 1st Cavalry Division to fight its way down into the Ormoc Valley and seize control of Highway No. 2. The 77th Infantry Division was working up the road from the south, and the 32d Infantry Division was driving down from the north.

14 December found the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, continuing its progress to the northwest from Mt.

Cabungaan, meeting resistance from small groups who persistently fought well conceived delaying actions. The 112th RCT continued to push south from Bonbongon along the Leyte River.

On 15 December, while the 5th Cavalry maintained the screen from Mt. Laao on the south to Mt. Cabungaan on the northwest with trail blocks, OP's, and patrols, troops of the 7th, 12th, and 112th Cavalry Regiments mopped up the enemy positions overrun during the previous few days. At the same time, these units exploited their victories by pushing forces into the foothills of the Ormoc Valley, threatening the enemy's entire right flank to the north from Lonoy, and protecting the left flank of the 32d Division.

The forces on Samar consolidated their positions at Wright and prepared to extend their gains. Among the soldiers cited for gallantry in action on this day were: Pvt Grady A. Kinser of Oklahoma City, Okla. who, while performing his duty as telephone operator for a forward observer from the 271st Field Artillery, saw a fellow soldier lying wounded in an area exposed to heavy enemy fire, ran to his aid, and dragged him to a position of safety; and Sergeant Lawrence W. Skaggs of Londonderry, Ohio, who, as a squad leader from "G" Troop, 12th Cavalry, took the initiative in leading a charge against an enemy strongpoint with the result that it was eliminated and his troop was able to proceed.

At 1100 on 16 December, on a high bluff west of the Leyte River, a pack train composed of about 100 Japs was observed by leading elements of the 1st Squadron, 112th Cavalry. The enemy was out of effective carbine range, but M-1's and light machine guns poured a hail of lead into the column, forcing the Japs to take cover. Immediately, artillery was called down on the position and several direct hits were scored on the target. A patrol which investigated the action reported 75 dead.

On 17 December, the 12th Cavalry moved down from Mt. Cabungaan to assemble in a banana plantation on high ground in the vicinity of Lonoy, where the regiment could launch a drive to capture that barrio which is on Highway No. 2. In the afternoon the regiment received supplies by air-drop. Three new OP's were established which went right to work bringing down concentrations from the 271st Field Artillery on Japs along the road and in huts, gun positions, a motor park, and camp fires. During the move down from Mt. Cabungaan, Sergeant Henry M. Lowery of Campbell, Texas, distinguished himself when his light machine gun squad from "C" Troop was pinned down by heavy crossfire from two enemy machine guns. Disregarding his personal danger, he worked his way to the front and personally killed five of the enemy and destroyed a machine



gun thereby enabling his platoon to advance and overrun the position.

As the 12th moved out, the 5th Cavalry moved into the vacated area to clean up any remaining Japs and to keep the highly critical supply lines open.

On Samar, the 8th Cavalry found their progress toward Catbalogan barred by enemy defensive positions on the high ground west of the Magbag River. An estimated company of Japs resisted all attempts to rout them out.

18 December saw little combat activity as the 1st Brigade prepared itself for the attack scheduled for the following day. The only formed resistance was on the extreme western boundary, where the 1st Squadron, 112th Cavalry, and the 126th Infantry pushed through 80 Japs.

On 19 December, the 12th Cavalry Regiment, with squadrons abreast, moved southwest from the high ground to attack Lonoy on Highway No. 2. The 1st Squadron met no opposition initially and pushed straight through to the highway. Turning south down the road, they began to receive fire from the defenders of Lonoy, but without slackening pace the troopers surged forward into and through the town mopping up as they went.

The 2d Squadron had a more difficult time of it. The approach march into the valley was made through tall kunai grass over a series of small ridges which afforded little cover or concealment to the attacking troops. The advance guard had proceeded only about 400 yards from their starting point when concealed enemy artillery and machine guns opened up on them firing at point blank range, inflicting a number of casualties. The leader of the advance platoon, from regimental Headquarter Troop, Technical Sergeant Floyd A. Weaver of Gatesville, Texas, rallied his men and skillfully maneuvered them in an attack which overran the enemy security positions protecting one of the artillery pieces. During a second reorganization, the platoon suddenly received point blank fire at 15 yards range from another camouflaged gun which had not previously been observed. The entire platoon was thrown to the ground by the terrific concussion of the explosion which killed four men. Enemy machine guns chattered adding more casualties. Sergeant Weaver again rallied his decimated platoon, and, showing cool courage and a grim determination, he personally led the assault on the strongly held position inspiring his men, by his fearless disregard for his own safety, to attack and annihilate the enemy. Thus, two heavy artillery pieces were eliminated from the regiment's path of advance. Weaver's conspicuous gallantry and unflinching devotion to duty won him a commission in the field.

When the advance guard of the 2nd Squadron was blasted by the enemy artillery, the squadron commander, Lieut. Colonel (then Major) Mathew M. Dikeman of Temple, Texas, moved quickly forward where he made a reconnaissance of the situation and immediately formulated a plan for overcoming the obstacle. He led a frontal attack which resulted in the elimination of the enemy and the capture of two enemy machine guns. The outstanding personal courage and sound judgement displayed by Colonel Dikeman in this engagement and throughout the Leyte campaign, inspired every member of his command with an indomitable fighting spirit.

Typical of the unfailing and self-sacrificing spirit displayed by the medics throughout the war was the behavior of Captain Henry W. Hodde of Weatherford, Texas during the action on 19 December. Captain Hodde was in command of the 1st Collecting Troop, 1st Medical Squadron, which moved its regimental aid station forward with the 19th Portable Surgical Hospital on Mt. Cabungaan so that medical aid could be given quickly to casualties among the advancing troops. While the Medical Collecting Platoon was setting up its facilities in an area recently vacated by the 1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry, a Japanese artillery barrage landed on them killing one man and wounding several others. The Japs had the position spotted and their tree bursts filled the air with flying shrapnel. The safest thing to do was to dive into a foxhole and stay there; but Captain Hodde, with utter disregard for his personal safety, went to the aid of his wounded men, calmly moving about the dangerous area and bravely administering to those in need of assistance.

It was evening before the two squadrons of the 12th Cavalry effected a junction. The regiment then dug in for the night astride the road 150 yards south of Lonoy.

On Samar, the enemy decided not to wait around Catbalogan and be annihilated by the 8th Cavalry. When "F" Troop attacked Jap positions that had been well prepared and strongly held, it was found that the enemy had abandoned them. A raiding patrol to Catbalogan entered the barrio under cover of darkness and found that it, too, had been evacuated. After daybreak, General Hoffman led the troops of his 2d Cavalry Brigade into the town and once more the American flag was raised in the provincial capital.

On 20 December, the 12th Cavalry renewed their drive down Highway No. 2 toward Cananga. Small groups of the enemy barricaded in huts and dug in at strategic points along the road resisted the advance. For the first time since going into the mountains more than a month and half before, the 12th Cavalry found ample room to maneuver around the



enemy. When the 2d Squadron was subjected to close range artillery fire, counterbattery from the 271st Field Artillery Battalion quickly silenced it. The result was a smoothly coordinated envelopment which carried the regiment to within 300 yards of Cananga where enemy machine guns slowed their progress. During the day's action, Pfc Eugenio Castro, of Roscoe, Texas was cited for the courageous manner in which he led his squad (Headquarters Troop, 12th Cavalry) in a charge on some native huts containing Japs. Master Sergeant Wayne Locke of Brownsville, Texas gave his life while directing his platoon from "F" Troop in repulsing a fierce enemy counterattack. Sergeant Theodore J. Denman of Morristown, N.J., also was cited for his outstanding courage in crawling across open terrain to within ten yards of an enemy position and eliminating it with hand grenades, whereupon he shouted instructions and encouragement to his men from "B" Troop who annihilated the remnants of the defending forces.

The remainder of the day was spent in whittling down the opposition in the town of Cananga.

To the north some 2500 yards, the 7th and 112th Cavalry continued to move slowly south abreast of the 32d Division. Not yet out of the densely wooded, hogbacked country, their progress was relatively slow, as the enemy, now cut off from his supplies by the 12th Cavalry, disputed every inch of ground. When an outpost guard from "B" Troop, 112th Cavalry, fell wounded on an exposed area covered by the fire of several enemy machine guns, his platoon commander, Lieut. Warnock D. Harwell of Oklahoma City, Okla., unhesitatingly crawled to his assistance in plain view of the enemy and despite the constant fire, Lt. Harwell succeeded in bringing him to safety.

In the 7th Cavalry sector, Staff Sergeant Ray E. Glover of Phoenix, Ariz., was performing his duties as section leader of the squadron medical detachment in supervising the setting up of the aid station when suddenly at dusk a strong concentration of enemy mortar, machine gun, and rifle fire fell on the squadron position causing numerous casualties and instantly killing the troop aid man. Out of the momentary disorganization and confusion among the troops came calls for another aid man. Despite the heavy enemy fire, Sergeant Glover circulated among the wounded men administering aid and saving lives.

When a large enemy force attempted to take a ridge line on which one section of 81mm mortars from "D" Troop of the 7th was emplaced, the section sergeant in command was wounded and left lying in an exposed position. The imperative need for immediate rifle support became apparent to Pfc Louis Testa of St. Paul, Minn., who voluntarily made his way through the barrage to an adjoining rifle troop and then led two squads back to the location of the

besieged mortar section. The effective rifle fire broke the attack long enough for the mortar section to withdraw. Testa utilized the lull to crawl forward and evacuate the wounded section sergeant to safety. He then made a second trip to the forward position and dragged the two 81mm mortars from their exposed emplacements, thus preventing possible capture of them by the enemy.

Back in the Leyte River Valley where the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, was protecting communication lines and searching out by-passed enemy positions, a member of "E" Troop, Pfc Margarito G. Lopez of San Antonio, Texas, performed heroic acts that gained him a reputation of being a one-man army and won him a Distinguished Service Cross. When a twelve-man patrol approached a well concealed enemy emplacement, the BAR-man was struck in the chest by a burst of machine gun fire, and seriously wounded. Lopez, unhesitatingly and with disregard for the danger involved, crawled to the side of the wounded man and succeeded in dragging him to a place of safety. He then took the wounded man's BAR and ammunition belt and launched an individual assault on the machine gun position, pouring a steady stream of fire into it as he moved in. In this quick, aggressive, and courageous action, Lopez killed thirteen of the enemy and captured the machine gun. His extraordinary fighting skill and bravery so inspired the patrol that it went forward to annihilate the remainder of the hostile position. A total of forty dead Japanese were counted on the position at the cost of one wounded American.

The 2d Brigade Combat Team reported on this date that all organized resistance on Samar had withdrawn to the north from Catbalogan.

On 21 December, supported by the 271st Field Artillery and artillery of the 77th Division, the 12th Cavalry launched a coordinated attack against Cananga. At noon, Colonel John H. Stadler, Jr., led his gallant regiment into the town. All through the miserable fighting in the nearly impassable mountainous terrain where the elements were as hostile as the Japs, Colonel Stadler had been an inspiration to his men, directing their efforts, heartening the weary, and sharing their hardships. His regiment's mission had been to fight its way through the mountains and cut the enemy supply line—Highway No. 2. With the capture of Cananga, the major part of the mission was accomplished. In the final assault on the town, Colonel Stadler stimulated his men to secure the regimental objective.

Once in the town, the troops proceeded to clean out every hut, ferreting out the Japs, and destroying every enemy installation. While the mopping up was going on, patrols were pushed out to the high ground west of the Tagbong River. Other patrols



went south to contact the 77th Division, the forward elements of which were met 400 yards south of Cananga in the late afternoon. To the north in Lonoy, patrols mopping up knocked out an enemy tank 200 yards west of the barrio and killed the crew.

An unscheduled and unorthodox reconnaissance was accomplished by a 12th Cavalry ration detail. As no motor transportation had been brought through the mountains, a captured Jap truck was commissioned to carry the air-dropped food to the troops fighting near Lonoy. In proceeding up Highway No. 2, the detail missed the turn at Lonoy and went a mile and a half uphill into Jap territory before finding a place suitable to turn around. On the way they passed Jap positions with Japs in them. The men in the truck looked at the Japs and the Sons of Heaven looked right back. No shots were fired and the truck proceeded to its turn-around point unmolested. The enemy's surprise at this bold, if not planned venture was complete. On the way back down the hill, the driver put on a burst of speed, and the detail in the truck, apparently overcome by their good luck at being so close to the enemy without being shot at, or perhaps conditioned by too many wild west movies in their youth, opened fire with their carbines at the open-mouthed Japs. By the time the enemy had recovered enough composure to return fire, the "patrol" had rattled down the road out of range. The ration detail returned to Lonoy without a scratch and delivered their cargo. Their jitters were not alleviated by the fact that as the Jap truck entered the motor park, a rear wheel fell off. More than 100 dead Japs and many damaged vehicles had been observed strewn along the road—victims of artillery and mortar fire. In addition, 180 of the enemy had been killed on this single day by the 12th Cavalry in the Lonoy-Cananga area alone. As night fell, the perimeter of the regiment encompassed Cananga and an area 300 yards to the south.

The 5th Cavalry, following the path of the 12th, came down out of the mountains and assembled on the high ground overlooking Highway No. 2. Advance patrols assisted in mopping up around Lonoy. The 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, swept the passes around Mt. Mambam.

The 1st Squadrons of the 7th and 112th Cavalry continued to move south abreast of the 32d Division on which they regulated their rate of progress. Short of men and fatigued after their long continuous fight, they stubbornly ground ahead, eliminating the Jap stragglers in their path.

The 8th Cavalry moved its regimental command post from Wright to Catbalogan and, for all practical purposes, wound up the Samar campaign.

On 22 December, the 7th Cavalry, 112th Cavalry,

and 32d Division swept aside the remains of the once formidable "Yamashita Line" and moved south to join the 1st Cavalry Brigade. During the preceding three days the 12th Cavalry, plunging into the enemy's right flank, had put his artillery and command organization out of commission. The enemy had scattered and broken contact at all points except in the Bagatoon area, where approximately 500 of them were grouping, trapped by the 77th and 1st Cavalry Divisions. About 1500 yards north of Lonoy, a Jap convoy astride Highway No. 2 was eliminated in the afternoon when it was attacked simultaneously by the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry from the south and elements of the 32d Division from the north. During the ensuing fire fight, 97 Japs were killed and two enemy tanks were knocked out by 5th Cavalry bazookas. The 5th Cavalry and the 32d Division joined just north of Lonoy, and the road to Ormoc was open. Already patrols from the 12th Cavalry were pushing in relentless pursuit to the west, and by mid-afternoon the high ground 1100 yards west of Highway No. 2 had been secured.

As the 2d Squadron moved from the Leyte Valley to join with the 1st Squadron near Lonoy, a combat patrol from "E" Troop was suddenly subjected to machine gun, rifle, and grenade fire as it was moving forward through tall grass in enemy territory. The platoon leader, Technical Sergeant Benton W. Cogswell of El Paso, Texas, instantly realizing that his men had very little cover from the fire of the enemy which was coming from well camouflaged entrenchments under a small shack, seized a light machine gun and, firing from the hip, advanced fearlessly. This gallant and aggressive action under intense enemy fire inspired his men to join him in an attack which put the Japs out of business for all time. Within the next few days, Sergeant Cogswell was commissioned in the field.

The 12th, 5th, and 7th Cavalry Regiments commenced a determined drive toward the west coast of Leyte on 23 December. The 61st Field Artillery Battalion fired in support of all three regiments. To their south the 77th Division was pushing toward Palompon, the only remaining Jap-held port. The enemy offered no offensive action; only stragglers hindered the advance. Isolated groups of the enemy wandered at large on both sides of Highway No. 2 hoping to find their way to the west coast and possible safety. Thus, it was impossible to define a front line, for fighting continued to break out in all areas. The advance to the west was slowed by swampy terrain and steep hills. Until a supply route could be established over the newly captured highway, native bearers continued to carry the precious rations and ammunition through the mountains. One of these supply trains, guarded by a platoon from Head-



quarters Troop, 5th Cavalry, ran into a Jap defensive position in a banana grove while coming down the mountain into the Ormoc Valley. Before the enemy could deliver effective fire, the practiced eyes of one of the scouts, Pfc Fred C. Hoff of Wichita Falls, Texas had detected one of the Jap machine guns. Hoff unhesitatingly moved toward the Japs opening fire as he went. He killed three machine gunners before they could get into action. During the intense fire fight that followed, another scout was so seriously wounded that he could not comply with orders to withdraw. Hoff lifted him in his arms, disregarding the continuous fire, carried him across an open space of 25 yards, in full view of the enemy, and brought him safely to a protected spot where medical aid was administered.

On Samar, the Jap-hunting 8th Cavalry continued to search out and destroy the enemy wherever they could find him. A wide and secure perimeter was established around the Wright-Catbalogan area. With the aid of guerrillas the Wright-Taft highway across the island was opened.

The following day, 24 December, the 5th Cavalry on Leyte pushed to the west through shoulder deep streams and treacherous swamps, meeting persistent resistance from small groups of determined Japs armed with machine guns and mortars. The largest group to oppose them consisted of about 30 of the enemy. Fire from the 61st Field Artillery Battalion was placed on these strongpoints killing 115 Japs during the day.

Under the cover of pre-dawn darkness 200 to 300 Japanese launched a suicidal "Banzai" attack against "B" Troop, 12th Cavalry, on outpost duty deep in enemy territory. Sergeant Louis C. Herbert, N. J., a squad leader in a heavy machine gun platoon attached from "D" Troop, discovered that by standing up in his foxhole he could observe the area from which the enemy was sending forth its attackers. Although exposed and unprotected on the front line and only a few feet from the leading wave of charging enemy, Herbert courageously remained standing and continued to direct mortar and machine gun fire on the main body of the enemy until the attacking force was completely routed. This was not the first time that Sergeant Herbert had heroically distinguished himself in battle. He had won a Silver Star for gallantry in action during the Admiralty campaign. In the morning 70 Jap dead were counted outside "B" Troop's perimeter.

On Christmas Day further scattered groups of enemy were overrun by the advance of the 1st Squadrons of the 7th, 5th, and 12th Cavalry to the west. Early in the morning a 5th Cavalry patrol spotted a group of approximately 100 Japs cooking breakfast by a creek. They were dispersed by artillery fire from the 61st F. A. Battalion. Along Highway No.

2, small scattered parties of the enemy were encountered by patrols and eliminated. As the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry was advancing northeast of Bagatoon, the platoon from "E" Troop forming the advance guard was suddenly pinned down by heavy enemy rifle and knee mortar fire in a coconut grove. When the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and two squad leaders were wounded, Pvt Coit C. Grisham of Waco, Texas took command. When the platoon was ordered to withdraw, Grisham conducted the difficult operation in a highly efficient manner. Having completed it, Grisham twice returned to the scene of the heaviest firing and dragged wounded men to safety. On the second trip he received a serious wound himself, but his coolness and courage assured the success of the operation and saved the lives of two wounded comrades.

While the advance guard was under attack, the enemy attempted to cut off the rear guard, which was also a platoon from "E" Troop, at a point where a deep jungle-grown stream bed separated it from the main body. A member of the platoon, Pvt Robert L. Gragg of Connelly Springs, North Carolina, observed three of the enemy hurriedly setting up a machine gun in an effort to establish a trail block. Shouting a warning to his platoon leader, Gragg voluntarily ran toward the threatening position and, although the enemy riflemen concentrated their fire on him, he succeeded in advancing to a point ten feet from the gun whereupon he wiped out the entire crew. For some ten minutes, until assistance could reach him, Gragg held his position alone killing a second group of three Japs who attempted to man the gun. He prevented all efforts of the enemy to put the gun into action. His quick thinking and brave initiative saved his platoon from being isolated and eliminated a serious threat to his squadron's rear.

When, in the early morning hours, the enemy attempted to sever the supply line which was being guarded by "E" Troop, 12th Cavalry, west of Cananga, Pfc Isreal Saucedo, a machine gunner from Sejita, Texas, gallantly held his position against the repeated attempts of the enemy to overrun it. After one of these attacks had been repulsed, Saucedo seized his light machine gun and singlehandedly attacked the Japs. His deadly fire killed eight and completely routed the remainder.

Officially, the campaign ended on this day, but to the 1st Cavalry troops fighting deep in the hills of western Leyte, it was just another day of combat. As of the close of business on 25 December, the casualty box-score was as follows: since the beginning of the Leyte campaign the 1st Cavalry Division had suffered 219 killed in action, 757 wounded, and 1 missing in action. During the same period General Mudge's



men had killed 4,346 Japs and had captured 42. Other prisoners-of-war taken were 91 Formosans, 1 Korean, and 1 Chinese.

There were still many of the enemy at large. Disorganized and beaten, they clung to a vain hope of finding some escape from the relentless onslaught of the cavalymen. At several places individual groups of Japs attempted to delay the advance but they were wiped out. Patrols fanned out to eliminate these groups before they could consolidate and offer organized resistance. When, on 26 December, a patrol from "E" Troop, 12th Cavalry, approached to within 25 yards of a native house, it was suddenly attacked by five enemy riflemen from concealed positions. The patrol quickly sought cover since the enemy was preparing to hurl hand grenades at it, but one of the squad leaders, Sergeant Ralph E. Welty of Minnith, Mo., remained standing and fired at the Japs with deadly accuracy. His quick and skillful marksmanship killed three of the enemy and prevented the grenade attack on the patrol. The fearless actions of Sergeant Welty so inspired the other members of the patrol that they quickly annihilated the enemy position.

On 27 December, the 5th, 12th, and 7th Cavalry continued to mop up remnants of the "Yamashita Line" as they pushed toward the western shores of Leyte Island. The 112th Cavalry went ahead with its mission of cleaning out stragglers and isolated pockets of Japs in the rear areas.

On Samar, the 8th Cavalry patrolled aggressively in the Catbalogan area.

On 28 December, the 1st Brigade had pushed through the mountains far enough to establish observation posts which commanded a view of the Visayan Sea. From those points, coastal barrios, two Japanese bivouac areas, and an enemy OP could be seen. The Japs were dispersed by artillery fire. During the afternoon there was a flurry of excitement when ten barges were sighted off-shore. Artillery liaison planes investigated and found them to be friendly craft.

The 8th Cavalry had difficulty finding Japs to fight. Samar being a large and mountainous island, there were many places where the enemy could hide. Cavalry operations consisted to a large degree of rushing patrols hither and thither to points where Japs were reported to have been seen. Frequently the Japs had melted away into the jungle by the time the patrols reached the spot, but often enough Japs were contacted so that it was considered worthwhile to investigate any and all of the reports which the natives, guerrillas, and OP's sent in.

By 29 December, the 7th Cavalry had reached the Visayan Sea and initiated action to take the coastal

barrio of Villaba, which was the final objective of the long drive across Leyte. Lieut. Ralph E. Conrad of Charlottesville, Va. led the regimental headquarters troop into the town. Shortly before dark, advance elements of his troop encountered determined enemy resistance and progress was halted. Realizing the urgency of taking the town before night fell, Lieut. Conrad moved up to his most advanced elements on a personal reconnaissance. Quickly sizing up the situation, he issued orders for the continuance of the assault. Shortly after completing his orders, Lieut. Conrad was instantly killed but his unflinching regard for duty in the face of grave danger was responsible for the successful occupation of the town.

The 1st Brigade continued to kill Japs either by small arms fire or by calling down artillery shells on groups which patrols had discovered.

The 8th Cavalry daily added to their holdings of territory cleared of the enemy.

The problems of supply were still large for the troops fighting in western Leyte. Civilian pack trains protected by cavalymen were required to get the rations and the ammunition up to front line troops. A 7th Cavalry trooper was cited for gallantry in action while performing this escort duty on 29 December. Lieut. Joseph Brauner of Bridgeport, Conn. was in command of a platoon of riflemen from Headquarters Troop and sixteen armed guerrillas conveying a large pack train through the enemy infested jungle when the leading elements observed three Japanese emplacing a machine gun along the trail to ambush the column. Lieut. Brauner halted the column and, accompanied by four guerrillas, flanked the position whereupon he rushed forward and dispatched the enemy with his carbine. Then, without regard for his own safety, he sprinted across an open area to a native house where he encountered four more Japanese whom he killed. His prompt and courageous action prevented the enemy from causing any casualties within his command and averted the loss of urgently needed rations.

On 30 December, "C" Troop, 5th Cavalry, and "C" Troop, 12th Cavalry, joined the 7th Cavalry in a clean-up program along the coast, north and south of Villaba. Meanwhile, the 112th RCT and the remainder of the 12th were moved by motor convoy to the Leyte Valley to close in their respective staging areas.

The last day of 1944 was spent by the 5th and 7th Cavalry in eliminating stragglers from the decimated Japanese army. Some of the enemy, however, made a last futile attempt to take the offensive. At 0230 the morning of 31 December, the 7th Cavalry perimeter at Villaba received the first of four "Ban-zai" attacks each of which was preceded by a bugle





THE 1ST CAVALRY TROOPERS came down from the mountains into the Ormoc Valley in the vicinity of Cananga. After contacting the 32d Infantry Division to the north and the 77th Infantry Division to the south, the dismounted cavalymen continued their westward drive. Organized Japanese resistance was ended with the capture of Villaba.



call. The main thrust of the attack came along the road adjacent to the bay in the sector held by "F" Troop. Artillery fire at long range had been adjusted but not closely enough to prevent casualties from widely dispersed rounds. "F" Troop's 1st Sergeant John T. Guinn of Englewood, Fla., in the absence of field artillery observers in that sector, adjusted the artillery fire. Because of the long range and angle of fire, the task was extremely difficult and dangerous. When a check was made by regimental headquarters as to the accuracy of the adjustment, Sergeant Guinn stated firmly that the fire was not too dispersed and was "right in there." When the regimental commander inspected the lines in the morning, he observed a shell tear in Sergeant Guinn's fatigue blouse and again asked the sergeant why he estimated the accuracy of the fire was "right in there." Sergeant Guinn replied, "When it blew my hat off, I knew it was just right." All of the attacks were repulsed and the Japs scattered. At first light, 51 enemy dead were counted in front of the perimeter and the area showed signs of many more bodies having been dragged away. Eighteen members of the 7th Cavalry had been wounded in action. They were evacuated by Catalinas flown to Villaba later in the day.

As the fighting came to a close on Samar, the 2d Brigade had strict orders regarding the promiscuous firing of weapons unless "there was a Jap in the site." Out of the silence of the rainy New Years Eve sounded a fusillade of machine gun and rifle shots. The Commanding General, a bit irritated to find out that the orders were being too flagrantly violated (there had been no Japs around for days) telephoned the unit from which it appeared the disturbance was coming. A sergeant in charge of quarters, considerably the worse for having indulged too freely in some first run Nipa wine, answered. The Commanding General demanded an explanation of this violation of orders, whereupon the voice on the other end in a wailing and plaintive sort of tone replied, "Jeeze, General, it's New Years Eve, ain't it?" This overwhelming and undeniable piece of logic was too much for the General. He allowed as how it was and the incident was closed.

More troops were withdrawn from the Ormoc Valley on New Years Day. The 5th Cavalry moved to its assembly area south of Tunga, leaving "C" Troop to help the 7th Cavalry in completing the mop-up at Villaba. Here and on Samar the cavalrymen continued to annihilate the enemy. The campaign had been officially ended a week earlier, but units of the Division killed 25 Japs on this day and discovered 357 dead who had not been previously counted.

On 2 January 1945, the remaining cavalry troops were withdrawn from the Villaba area and assembled

at the division staging area near Tunga. Only the 8th Cavalry, busy with its patrolling on Samar, remained apart from the division which was now engaged in replenishing its strength and equipment in preparation for another campaign.

4 January was the first day since the campaign had begun that no Jap casualties were added to the 1st Cavalry Division's great toll enemy dead. As of 11 January, the 1st Cavalry Division's score for the Leyte campaign was: 5,937 Japs killed and 52 captured. 241 members of the division had been killed in action, 856 wounded, and 2 were missing.

The Leyte-Samar campaign provided a thorough test of the 1st Cavalry Division and all of its component units. Every bit of the division's great fighting prowess had been needed to down the Sons of Heaven who had decided that this campaign was the pay-off. Including the Samar operation, the division fought continually on a 70-mile front. Time and again it was called upon to undertake secondary missions, and it never failed to meet these calls with efficiency and dispatch. None who personally observed the Mt. Cabungaan area challenged General Kreuger's highly commendatory statement that the outstanding achievement of the campaign was the passage of the 1st Cavalry Division through the mountains separating the Leyte and Ormoc Valleys.

The actual account of the Battle of Leyte can only infer the disagreeable quality of the hardships endured, especially in the central mountain ranges. Incessant rain, fog, mud kept the troops wet and uncomfortable for weeks on end. Patrols were frequently isolated for extended periods of time, completely cut off from their units and surrounded by the enemy. Platoons and squads were rotated so as to provide constant observation of enemy activities in Ormoc Valley. These patrols, both combat and reconnaissance, traveled great distances, cutting their own trails as they went, and consistently operated behind enemy lines. They were always faced with the possibility of discovery and annihilation by a superior force. More often than not, these patrols had to fight both to reach and to return from their objective. Many times patrols which had made a particularly valuable discovery, remained away on their missions longer than was originally intended, depriving themselves of food and shelter in order to render the greatest service to their units. These achievements lacked the thrill and inspiration of battle in which numbers of enemy troops are killed, but are more to be praised as exemplifying the tenacity and courage of troops under hardships not encountered in the skirmishes which are quickly over and done with.

The campaign was marked by the skillful utilization of all elements of the division and attached units to accomplish the primary mission. The combat and



service elements each performed wonders in its own field.

Highlighted throughout the campaign was the invariable dependability of the artillery. This arm inspired and fulfilled every confidence. Each of the cavalry regiments boasted of the proficiency of the particular artillery battalion assigned to its direct support. Repeatedly the artillery opened the path for advance by cracking positions that offered the toughest opposition to the cavalry troops. Fire brought down within fifty yards of front line troops was commonplace. Frequently high-ranking artillery officers went to the front to obtain first-hand information of the problems which daily confronted the forward observers. The fine spirit of brotherly cooperation which existed between the cavalry and the artillery

commanders assured the success which resulted from the artillery's incomparable support. Every available item of artillery equipment, the most notable of which were the tractors and trailers, was made available to assist in solving the pressing problem of supply. The 1st Cavalry Division Artillery, commanded by Brigadier General Rex Chandler, made an outstanding contribution to the success of the campaign.

The 8th Engineer Squadron, under the command of Major Leon Gibbs, was commended many times by higher authorities for its excellent performance. Leyte roads during the rainy season were something that hell would not have, but the leadership and organization embodied in the engineer squadron enabled it to cope with seemingly insurmountable problems.

In addition to the troopers mentioned by name in the text of this chapter, the following won Silver Stars for gallantry in action during the Leyte Campaign:

Name	Home	Organization	Date
Lieut. Robert P. Gracie*	Glen Ridge, N. J.	Co. "A", 85th Cml. Mor. Bn.	21 Oct. 1944
Colonel Samuel K. Yarbrough	Palo Alto, Calif.	61st F A Bn.	"
Captain Marcello W. Bordley	Baltimore, Md.	"H" Troop, 7th Cavalry	22 Oct.
Tech Sgt. Daniel Larion	Floresville, Tex.	"F" Troop, 12th Cavalry.	30 Oct.
Lieut. James S. Gordon, Jr.*	South Hill, Va.	Co. "C", 85th Cml. Mort. Bn.	12 Nov.
Sgt. Rex P. Newkirk	Wheeler, Tex.	Med. Det., 7th Cavalry	14 Nov.
Pvt. Francis L. Lynch	Dodgeville, Wisc.	"G" Troop, 12th Cavalry	16 Nov.
Lieut. Charles Acocella, Jr.	Purchase, N. Y.	"	"
Pfc. Lyle W. Delcamp	Salina, Kans.	"	"
Pvt. Andrew W. Jordan Jr.*	Georgetown, S. Car.	"	"
Pfc. Willie Garza	Charlotte, Tex.	"	"
Staff Sgt. Bernard T. Owin, Jr.**	Houston, Tex.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cavalry	17 Nov.
Sgt. Donald C. Drass	Holidaysburg, Pa.	Med. Det., 85th Cml. Mort Bn.	19 Nov.
Pfc. Obie L. Kelley	Crockett, Tex.	"D" Troop, 12th Cavalry	"
Lieut. Myron D. Taylor	New Franklin, Mo.	"C" Troop, 12th Cavalry	29 Nov.
Pfc. Victor J. Ringsby	Ojai, Calif.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cavalry	39 Nov.
Staff Sgt. Murry E. Eddings	Harlington, Tex.	"G" Troop, 12th Cavalry	"
Staff Sgt. Wilbur D. Kinsler	Dallas, Tex.	"A" Troop, 5th Cavalry	3 Dec.
Pfc. Amado N. Guerra	Roma, Tex.	"E" Troop, 12th Cavalry	"
Pfc. Aaron R. S. Oliger	Formosa, Ark.	"	6 Dec.
Lieut. William F. Stefurak	Gloucester, Mass.	"A" Troop, 12th Cavalry	9 Dec.
Lieut. William W. Bitney	Seattle, Wash.	271st F A Bn.	"
Pfc. Rodney G. Smith	Laguna Beach, Calif.	"A" Troop, 12th Cavalry	11 Dec.
Corp. Henry W. Bridges	New Orleans, La.	Hq. Troop, 12th Cavalry	19 Dec.
Pfc. Lawrence T. O'Rourke	Adina, Mo.	"	"
Lieut. James B. Fritter	Forest Grove, Ore.	"G" Troop, 12th Cavalry	21 Dec.
Staff Sgt. Alexander A. Jaros	Queens, N. Y.	"E" Troop, 5th Cavalry	25 Dec.
Staff Sgt. Thomas D. Francis	Tarzan, Tex.	Wpns. Troop, 7th Cavalry	29 Dec.
Sgt. William A. Gragg	Black Mountain, N. Car.	"H" Troop, 7th Cavalry	"
Sgt. Albert DeVries*	Wayland, Mich.	"B" Troop, 12th Cavalry	1 Jan.
Sgt. Charles E. Ennis	Wellsburg, W. Va.	"B" Troop, 8th Cavalry	"

In addition to those already mentioned, Distinguished Service Crosses were awarded to the following named members of the 1st Cavalry Division:

Name	Home	Organization	Date
Pfc. Malcolm E. Dott*	Corpus Christi, Texas	"F" Troop, 5th Cavalry	20 Oct.
Staff. Sgt. Wilfred E. McAdoo	Austin, Texas	"A" Troop, 12th Cavalry	11 Dec.

\* Posthumously awarded. \*\* Bronze oak-leaf cluster.



# LEYTE PICTORIAL

*We loaded aboard Navy ships at Los Negros on 8 October 1944.*



*8th Engineers line up for pre-embarkation inspection.*

*We were briefed on our mission as we sailed west. Here, Capt. K. L. Holderman, C.O. of Co "D," 44th Tank Battalion explains the task to members of his outfit.*



*Vital equipment was stowed in record time.*

*A view of the Leyte-bound convoy.*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*After the preliminary bombardment of the Leyte shore, we went down the landing nets into the Navy and Coast Guard-manned assault boats.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Overhead, an aerial battle was taking place.*

*Navy rocket-firing craft (lower right) preceded the waves of assault boats as they moved in to White Beach.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The first wave hit White Beach, south of Tacloban Airdrome, promptly at H-Hour, 10 o'clock, on D-Day, 20 October 1944, and advanced into the sniper laden jungle.*





World



*Tank-traps and swamps failed to stop us.*

World







*As we fought our way past the ruins of abandoned native shacks, skinny and ragged Filipinos came forward to greet their liberators.*







*Radio communication was maintained as the troopers battled their way inland.*



*The Boy Scout Monument near Tacloban became a familiar landmark.*



*A Jap gas dump was burning as our troopers moved in.*

*The 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, utilized tanks of the 44th Tank Battalion to assist in the capture of Tacloban Airdrome.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*As we entered Tacloban, General Mudge conferred with General Chase from a tank.*



*Natives helped to clear the streets of obstacles left by the retreating Japs.*

*Except for the mop-up, Tacloban was ours by the afternoon of 21 October, D+1*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The Filipinos were happy to welcome the invading troopers.*



*The soldiers were quick to share their rations*



*and buy souvenirs such as Japanese invasion currency.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The occasion called for a victory parade*

*Rice was distributed to the hungry population*







*Both young and old looked to us for help.*



*Wherever they went the troopers quickly made friends.*





# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*After securing Tacloban, we moved up the San Juanico Strait to Babatngon by LCI's and LCM's. From there we advanced to Carigara, capturing it on 2 November.*



*"F" Troop, 5th Cavalry, moving in to Carigara.*

*12th Cavalry C.P. near Carigara.*





*One of the worst obstacles we encountered was mud. Unusually heavy rains made the ground soft and slimy.*







*Leyte "roads" sometimes led across rough stretches of coral. Here is General Mudge's command car "in the field" in Leyte.*

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Supplies for the troops fighting in the mountains were trucked from Tacloban to this muddy dump near Carigara.*

*From Carigara, "Buffaloes" carried the supplies across the lowland rice paddies to the foothills.*







*The supplies were transferred from the "Buffaloes" to trailers towed by artillery tractors.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

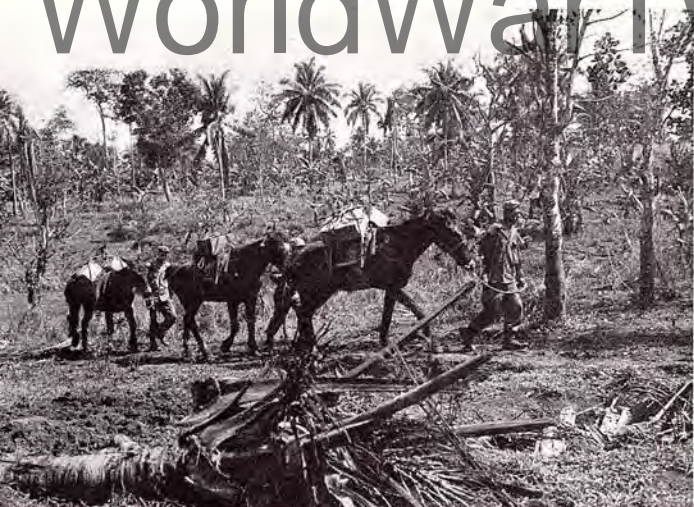


*The tractors inched and winched their way toward higher ground.*

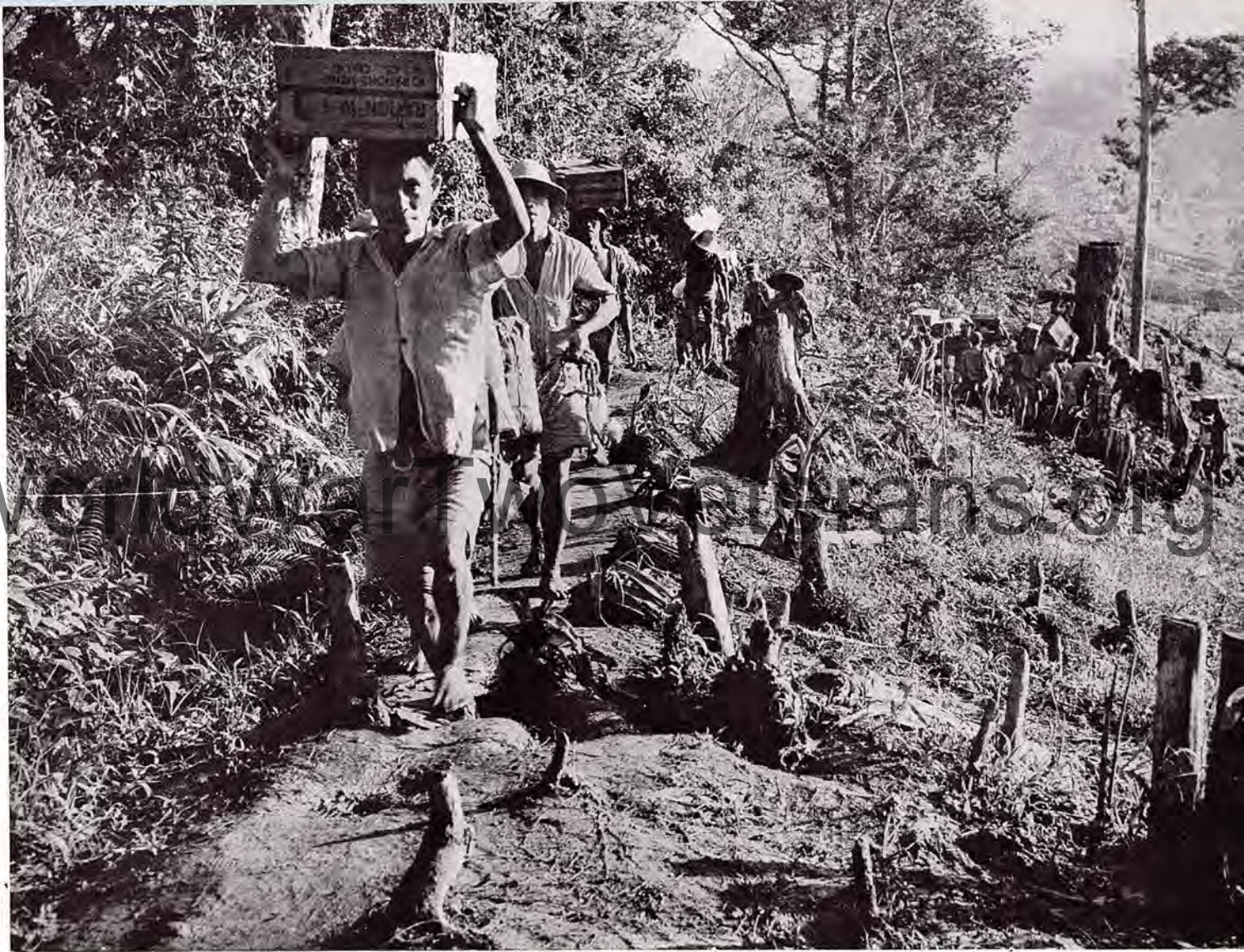


WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Two captured horses and a mule found a home with the 1st Cavalry Division.*







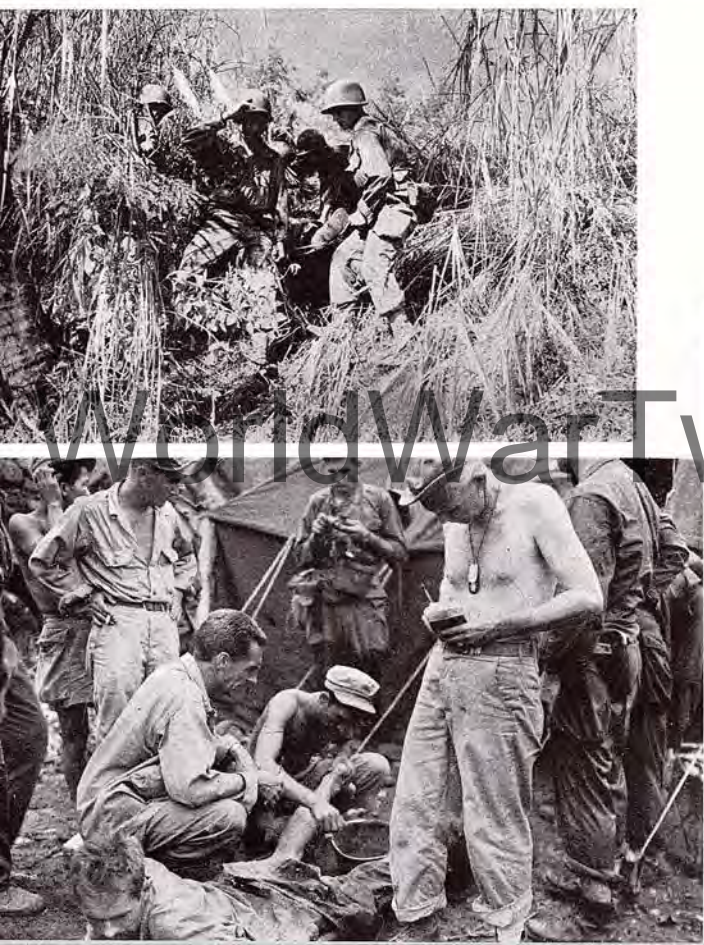
*Filipino pack trains manhandled the supplies through the mud-slippery mountains to the fighting troops.*



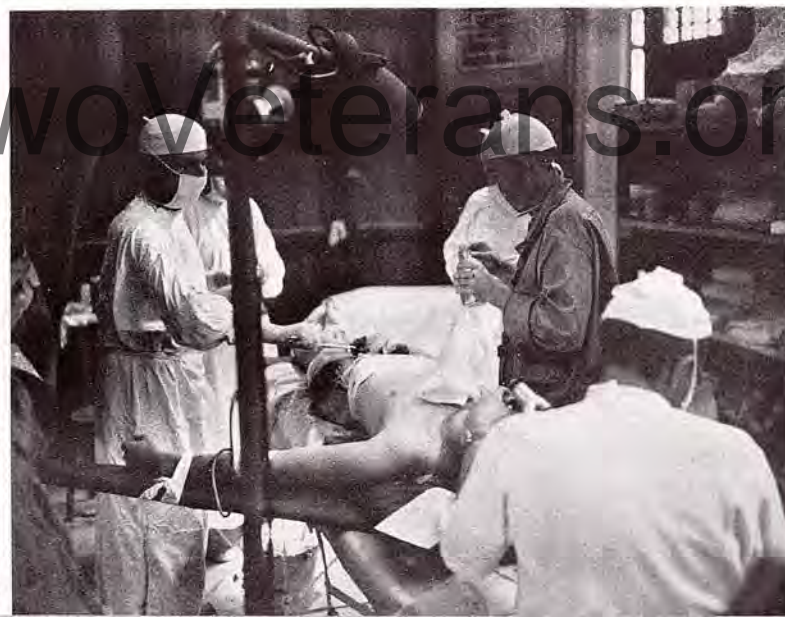




*Evacuation of the wounded required extreme efforts by the medics.*



*First aid and surgery were performed in the field.*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Bridge construction was a major task for the 8th Engineer Squadron.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Vital communications were maintained by the 1st Signal Troop. A "duck" was converted into a radio station.*



*Palm trees made handy telephone poles.*



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The Leyte Campaign could not have been won without the superb support of the field artillery.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Sherman tanks aided the advance.*







*Fighting in Leyte was no cinch. Above, Japanese counterfire caused this native village to burn. Below, a Jap mortar shell exploded wounding three of the men in this picture.*



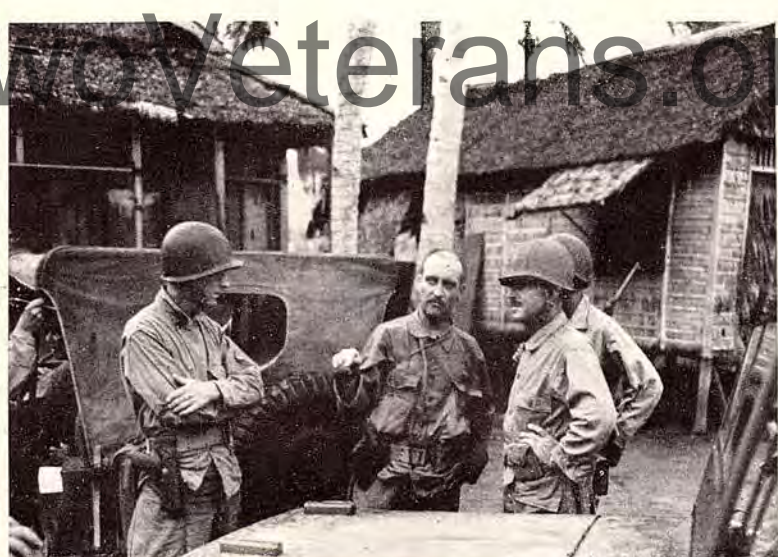




# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*These commanders kept the show rolling. Upper left, General MacArthur and Lieut. General Kreuger at Dulag. Above, Lieut. General Kreuger inspects ruins on Leyte. Left, Major General Mudge, CG of the 1st Cavalry Division. Lower left, Brig. General Chase and Major General Mudge confer with Major General Sibert, CG of X Corps. Below, 1. to r., Colonel Bradley, CO, 8th Cavalry; Lieut. Colonel Brady, CO, 5th Cavalry; and Brig. General Chase, CG, 1st Cavalry Brigade.*

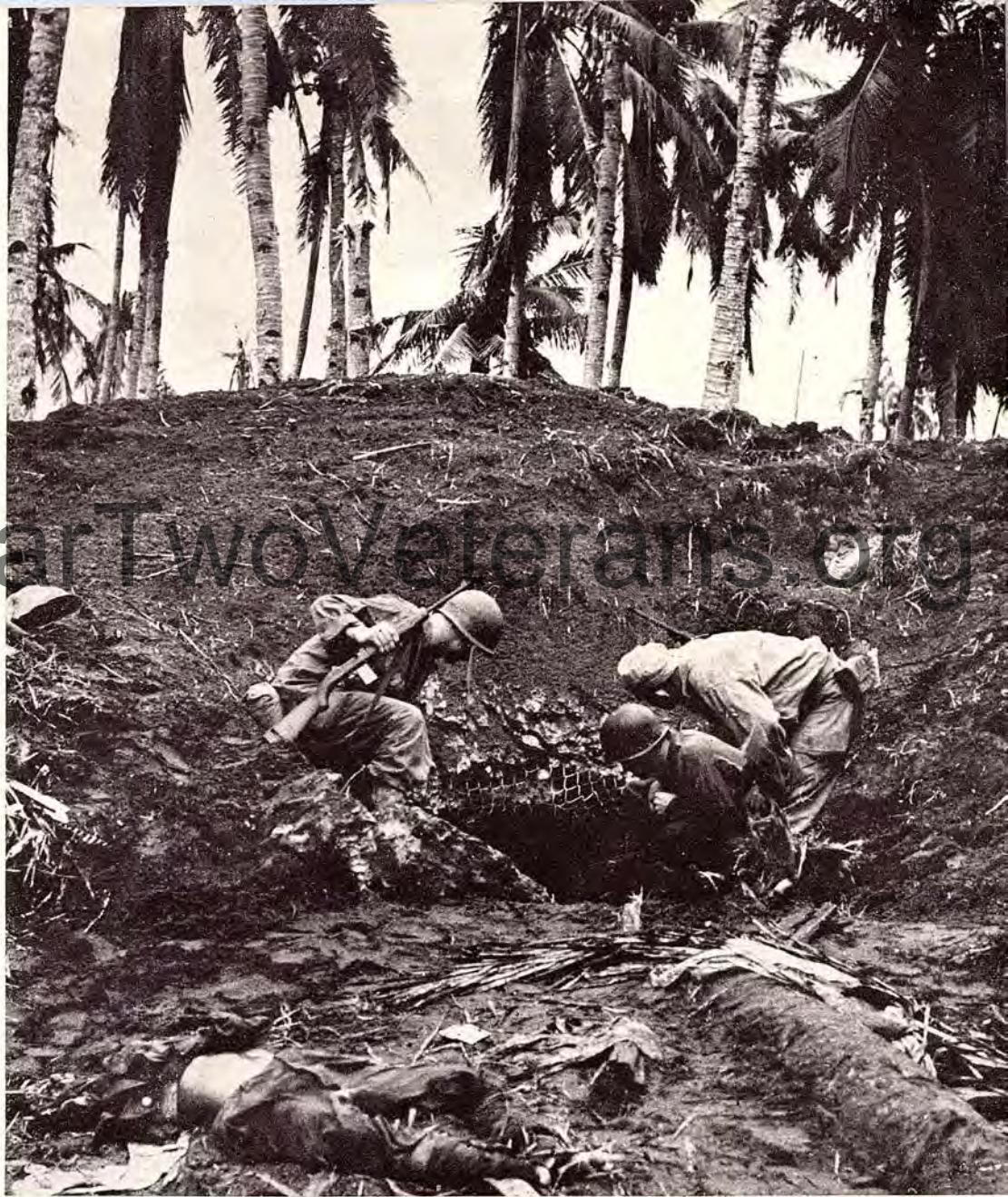


# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# WorldWar

*Leyte Fighting. Here a  
Jap lies dead at the mouth  
of a pillbox while three  
troopers warily watch the  
opening.*



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*A 12th Cavalry recon. patrol as it  
returned after two weeks in the jungle.  
Note the Jap sword.*







*A moment of relaxation at the evacuation hospital and rest camp three miles behind the 12th Cavalry's front line position in the Leyte mountains.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Two members of the dismounted 7th Cavalry became mounted when they captured Japanese horses and some Jap beer.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Men of the 1st Signal Troop display war trophies.*



## THE LUZON CAMPAIGN

It was nearly time for the evening roll-call at the Santo Tomas Internment Camp in Manila on Saturday, 3 February 1945. Among the 3700 emaciated and tattered men, women and children who had been prisoners of the Japanese there during the three long years since the fall of Manila, hopes were high and spirits were gay. American aircraft had been plainly seen and identified by the crowded internees several times during the past few days. Of course the planes were newer models than anybody in Santo Tomas had ever seen before, but there was no mistaking the American markings, and if American planes could come that close, maybe the Japanese were planning to give up Manila as they had been forced to give up Leyte. There had been a noticeable change in the attitude and relaxation of discipline on the part of the Jap prison staff lately. That meant something. Things looked better all the time.

Now, at 1645, as the internees went to their quarters for the roll-call, nine American fighter planes buzzed the prison compound so low that it seemed certain they would take the roof off the guard tower. The Japanese guards saved face by ignoring the planes, but every one of the internees who could do so ran to the windows to get a glimpse of the Yank aircraft. The prisoners saw something their keepers missed. From one of the planes a pilot dropped something that landed in the northeast courtyard of the Main Building. Stealthily and quickly, one of the Main Building residents retrieved the object which was found to be a pair of pilot's goggles—with a note attached. The note read: "Roll out the barrel. Santa Claus is coming Sunday or Monday."

The words of the message spread like wildfire among the internees in the Main Building. Their compatriots who lived in the shanties in the quadrangle and in the other buildings wondered why there was so much excitement. They were still wondering when the shooting began later in the evening outside the compound. The Main Building inhabitants were afraid the guerrillas had gone off half-cocked, creating a disturbance which would delay the arrival of Santa Claus or make it impossible for him to get there at all. Inquisitive heads at the prison windows were shot at by the Jap guards.

As darkness fell, the sound of cheering Filipinos shouting "Mabuhay!" could be heard amid the noise of rifle shots. The roar of internal combustion motors and the clank of metal was audible through the prison windows.

One internee said, "They're our tanks. They're American tanks." Another said, "How do you

know they are American tanks? You never saw American tanks. They are probably Jap tanks retreating." There was no answer to that.

Then the shanty-dwellers began to file into the Main Building. Lieutenant Abiko, the Japanese supervisor of prisoners, had issued the order, "Tell all the shanty-dwellers to get into the Main Building within twenty minutes. The Americans are in town."

The internees listened anxiously as the firing drew nearer. Cautious glances from the windows did not reveal much, but throughout the building starved and wrinkled faces broke into smiles and grins. Internees so recently bowed by their long imprisonment now walked on air, hoping yet not daring to hope that Santa Claus was really arriving.

They watched the Jap guards go to their posts. They saw two Jap trucks carrying seven Jap soldiers roll hastily out of the front gate as the tumult neared the rear of the compound. In the growing darkness the rattling treads of the tanks became the jingling bells of Santa Claus' sleigh; or were they Japanese tanks? Then the tanks turned left and halted in front of the main gate. Indistinct voices floated up to the internees leaning out of the windows bent on missing nothing.

A flare was sent up. Its light showed the time to be 8:50 P.M. Everything was quiet.

A voice cut the darkness: "Where the hell is the front gate?" The Americans had arrived for sure.

A tank named Battling Basic crashed through the gate. Santa Claus in the form of the 1st Cavalry Division had come to liberate the 3,700 internees of Santo Tomas.

The 1st Cavalry Division landed in the Mabilao area of Lingayen Gulf on 27 January 1945. The grueling combat of the Leyte campaign had reduced the division's strength and had depleted its materiel. The movement to Luzon, coming as it did right on the heels of the Leyte fighting, had allowed no time to replenish the division with its full quota of replacements and new equipment. The boat trip had afforded scarcely any rest. These deficiencies worked to the advantage of the troopers in a way. A high percentage of the organization's members were battle-experienced, the component units were perfect in their teamwork, and the spirit and self-confidence of the personnel were at an all-time high.

The 1st Cavalry Division unloaded in record time



and concentrated initially in the vicinity of Urdaneta. On 28 January, the division began moving to its assembly area near Guimba, 35 miles inland.

As Troop A, 7th Cavalry passed through Labit, an enemy patrol opened up on the truck convoy with mortar and small arms fire. Technical Sergeant John B. Duncan of Los Angeles, Calif. was cited for the determined manner in which he organized his platoon and eliminated this obstacle to traffic. He was mortally wounded in the action.

Nineteen days earlier, the Sixth United States Army, effectively supported by Allied Naval and Air Forces, had made a successful major assault landing on the shores of Lingayen Gulf. After securing a beach-head and establishing an army base, General Krueger's troops, in a rapid advance to the south, had gained possession of Clark Air Center, a strategic objective two-thirds of the way down the central plain toward Manila. Enemy resistance to the advance had been negligible, but in the mountainous area along the east flank, where the enemy forces were concentrated, the Japanese conducted a fanatical and suicidal defense.

As the 1st Cavalry Division completed its concentration at Guimba, on 30 January, it was assigned to Major General Oscar W. Griswold's XIV Corps. When General MacArthur visited the division command post on the following day, he gave Major General Mudge the electrifying order to "Go to Manila. Go around the Nips, bounce off the Nips, but go to Manila. Free the internees at Santo Tomas. Take Malacanan Palace and the Legislative Building."

Without a chance for preliminary reconnaissance of routes, with vague information concerning the enemy, but with indestructible optimism and supreme faith in General Mudge, the troopers readied themselves to renew combat with the Japs.

Mobile units to spearhead the 100-mile drive into Jap-held territory were organized with the following troops:

1st Serial: Lieut. Colonel William E. Lobit, commanding—2d Squadron, Reconnaissance Platoon, Anti-Tank Platoon, and Medical Detachment, all from the 5th Cavalry; Battery "A", 82d Field Artillery Battalion; Company "A", 44th Tank Battalion; 3d Platoon, Troop "A", 8th Engineers; and 1st Platoon, Troop "A", 1st Medical Squadron.

2d Serial: Lieut. Colonel Haskett L. Conner, Jr., commanding—2d Squadron, Reconnaissance Platoon, Anti-Tank Platoon, one section of .50 caliber machine guns, and Maintenance Section, all from the 8th Cavalry; Company "B", 44th Tank Battalion; Battery "B", 61st Field Artillery Battalion; 1st Platoon, Troop "C", 8th Engineers; and 1st Platoon, Troop "B", 1st Medical Squadron.

3d Serial: Lieut. Colonel Tom Ross, commanding

—44th Tank Battalion less Companies "A" and "B", and the 302d Reconnaissance Troop.

The task force had to be mobile. The only transportation available was the vehicles organic to the division and its attached units, so all unneeded equipment was laid aside. Barrack bags, kitchens, and other impedimenta not immediately required for the task at hand were left in the bivouac area at Urdaneta. Only the men, their arms and ammunition, water, gasoline, and four days rations were loaded for the trip. Even then there was not enough transportation for all personnel of the division to ride at the same time.

Setting forth in the darkness at one minute after midnight on the first day of February, the lead-off troops rolled in three columns over primitive roads. Moving under a complete blackout, the columns crossed rivers and rice paddies. At dawn they approached Cabanatuan, their first major objective on the road to Manila, from three different directions.

Before daylight, Col. Lobit's 5th Cavalry serial had waded and swam the broad Pampanga River capturing the Valdefuente Bridge from enemy demolition squads in the act of preparing its destruction. In taking this bridge and preserving it intact for future use, General Mudge treated members of the division to another of the many incidents demonstrating his incomparable valor. The Japs had planted more than 3,000 pounds of dynamite on the structure planning to detonate it with mortar fire. Perceiving this threat, General Mudge summoned nearby troopers and led them through the mortar fire onto the bridge. Despite the danger involved, he took the initiative in throwing the explosive over the railing into the river.

Col. Conner's 8th Cavalry serial, swinging to the southeast, crossed the river and seized a stretch of the highway south of Cabanatuan. This maneuver caught a force of Japanese in the barrio between the two cavalry squadrons. A Japanese dynamite truck, exploded by bazooka fire, blew a large hole in the road. Fierce fighting went on all day and night. The 12th and 7th Cavalry Regiments moving by foot and by motor, arrived and took over the completion of the battle freeing the flying column for its dash southward.

Col. Ross' tanks, meanwhile, had crossed the Pampanga River still farther south after a skirmish with some surprised Sons of Nippon and had captured the highway leading into Gapan. In leading his unit through this battle, Colonel Ross won the Silver Star for the vigor of his attack, but he lost his life during the action.

By daylight, 2 February, the route through Cabanatuan was open to traffic. The hole in the road had been filled, the Japs had been subdued or driven



off, and the flying column was rolling again. Cabanatuan, it will be remembered, is the place near which the 6th Rangers had conducted their famous liberating attack on a prisoner-of-war camp only two days previously, assisted in their recovery by ambulances of the 1st Medical Squadron.

The first day of battle in Luzon had seen many acts of heroism, not the least of which were:

Staff Sergeant Leo R. French's rescue by tank of his wounded battalion adjutant in the midst of enemy fire.

Captain John H. Amesse's dash through an area covered with flying flaming debris to give medical aid to the wounded.

Captain Don H. Walton's leadership of his 302d Reconnaissance Troop patrol so that it captured the Gapan Bridge which the enemy was defending.

Sergeant Harry Kreisberg's handling of his heavy machine gun squad when the Japanese gasoline and ammunition trucks blew up in their faces.

1st Lieut. Frank E. Aquino's crawling through the crossfire of enemy machine guns and small arms to drag two wounded soldiers to safety.

Major Richard E. Spark's gallant direction of counterbattery fire on an enemy strongpoint thereby permitting the column to resume its advance.

The way Captain Hughes Seewald and Captain Willis W. Leach both suffering badly from wounds, shepherded their troops from under the gunfire of a Japanese road block.

The brave actions of Sergeant James R. Gentile and Pfc. Ralph Mankey in breaking up a "Banzai" attack by killing 25 of the enemy before the explosion of an artillery round killed Mankey and wounded the sergeant.

The single-handed attack by Sergeant John W. Okey which eliminated a Japanese emplacement containing six of the enemy.

The daring reconnaissance carried out by two platoons under the direction of Captain Stephen Zdravecky.

At Cabanatuan on the evening of 1 February, General Mudge designated the mobile units as a "flying column." He put General Chase in command and relieved him of responsibility for the remainder of the 1st Cavalry Brigade.

At dawn of 2 February, the column was rolling southward again. The main route ran along Highway No. 5, to the east of which was the hilly ground occupied by the Japanese forces lying in wait to attack and harass the left flank of the invaders. Opportunities to engage with and annihilate the enemy were frequent. The mission of the 1st Cavalry Division was not to become embroiled in a large scale battle with the enemy however, but rather to dash

through him using such force as was necessary and get to Manila where the internees were waiting for liberation. Much of the success of the entire movement is credited to the superb air cover, flank protection, and reconnaissance provided by the Marine Air Groups 24 and 32. The 1st Cavalry's audacious drive down through Central Luzon was the longest such operation ever made in the Southwest Pacific Area using only air cover for flank protection.

The trip from Gapan to Baliuag on 2 February was a stop-and-go proposition. Sometimes the column attained a speed of 30 miles per hour, but there were frequent stops and slow-downs where the road was poor or where bridges had been blown up. All along the way, jubilant Filipinos gathered by the roadside to cheer the Americans. Shouts of "Mabuhay, mabuhay, veectory, veectory," greeted the advancing convoy. Gifts of flowers, chickens, eggs, and bananas were showered on the liberators. One thing the troopers learned was that no matter how good were the intentions of the donors, it was hazardous to attempt acceptance of a gift of fresh eggs in a six-by-six truck traveling at more than 10 miles per hour. The presence of Filipino greeters was a welcome sight to the cavalrymen. Wherever none appeared it was a certain indication that there were Japanese troops in the vicinity and the advance was conducted accordingly.

Quite often the column came upon places where it was necessary to bypass demolished bridges by fording the streams. The troopers took these obstacles in their stride and the column continued to roll. When the spearhead of the column reached Baliuag, it found Japanese patrols and other signs of recent Japanese occupancy. The cavalryman quickly placed the town under American control, established out posts there, and pushed on.

South of the town, all bridges across the broad Angat River were out. The water was too deep to run the vehicles through and the current was too swift to permit the building of a bypass. Rapid reconnaissance westward to Plaridel established contact with elements of the 37th Infantry Division, also pressing toward Manila and also confronted with the obstacle of blown bridges. There was no time to wait for a pontoon bridge to be brought up, so the squadrons plunged into river, the 2d Squadron 8th Cavalry, crossing east of Plaridel and the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, fording at Baliuag. By using bulldozers to fill the deeper holes and the physical strength of the troops to assist the trucks, the flying column crossed the river and continued the advance.

After fording the Angat River between Baliuag and Plaridel, the column divided, Colonel Lobit's troops moving eastward toward the barrio of Angat, while Colonel Conner's serial turned southward over the secondary roads to Santa Maria. It was then



that both elements of the flying column met their strongest enemy resistance of the day.

The 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, found an enemy battalion well entrenched on high ground commanding the road and the river valley, in a position capable of withstanding an entire division. Here the dive bombers of MAG 32 made several strafing passes at the Japs without firing a shot, due to the proximity of friendly troops, and enabled the squadron to slug its way into the defensive position and rout the occupants.

The 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, meanwhile, was harassed by roadblocks at several places where sharp turns in the narrow highway were encountered. Dismounted patrols made short shrift of them. Real difficulty was experienced when the column was halted by a weak bridge 1,500 yards north of Angat. It was not strong enough to accommodate the tanks and the 30-foot banks were too steep to permit fording. At this point, the Japs opened up in the darkness on the halted troops with fire from mortars machine guns, and small arms. Battery "A" of the 82d Field Artillery saved the situation by quick, accurate, and decisive action with its 105's. It is reported, incidentally, that this was Battery "A's" first experience in firing its artillery from the prone position. Enemy fire slacked off but sporadic outbursts tormented the column from one emplacement and then another on into the night.

At Baliuag, General Mudge and the two brigade commanders set up their command posts for the night. General Chase's CP was in a house where, the residents told him, General Yamashita, the Japanese commander, had stopped several days earlier during his northward flight.

Midnight, 2 February, the end of the second day of the drive toward Manila found the head of the column within 15 miles of its goal.

At daylight on 3 February, the column was still rolling. Just north of Novaliches it ran into a road junction that was promptly named "The Hot Corner" and not without reason. Here the route of advance ran well within the Japanese zone of resistance, an area not far from the Ipo Dam which the enemy had determined to defend at all costs. The intersection was well outposted and the cavalry had to fight its way through. Colonel Conner's troops were the first there. Leaving "E" Troop to deal with the Nips, the 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry moved on.

Colonel Lobit's men had been slowed down by the night battle at Angat. During their all night fight they had captured the barrio driving the Japs off with such determination that approximately 25 of the small Filipino horses were found abandoned

but still harnessed to Japanese 75mm artillery pieces.

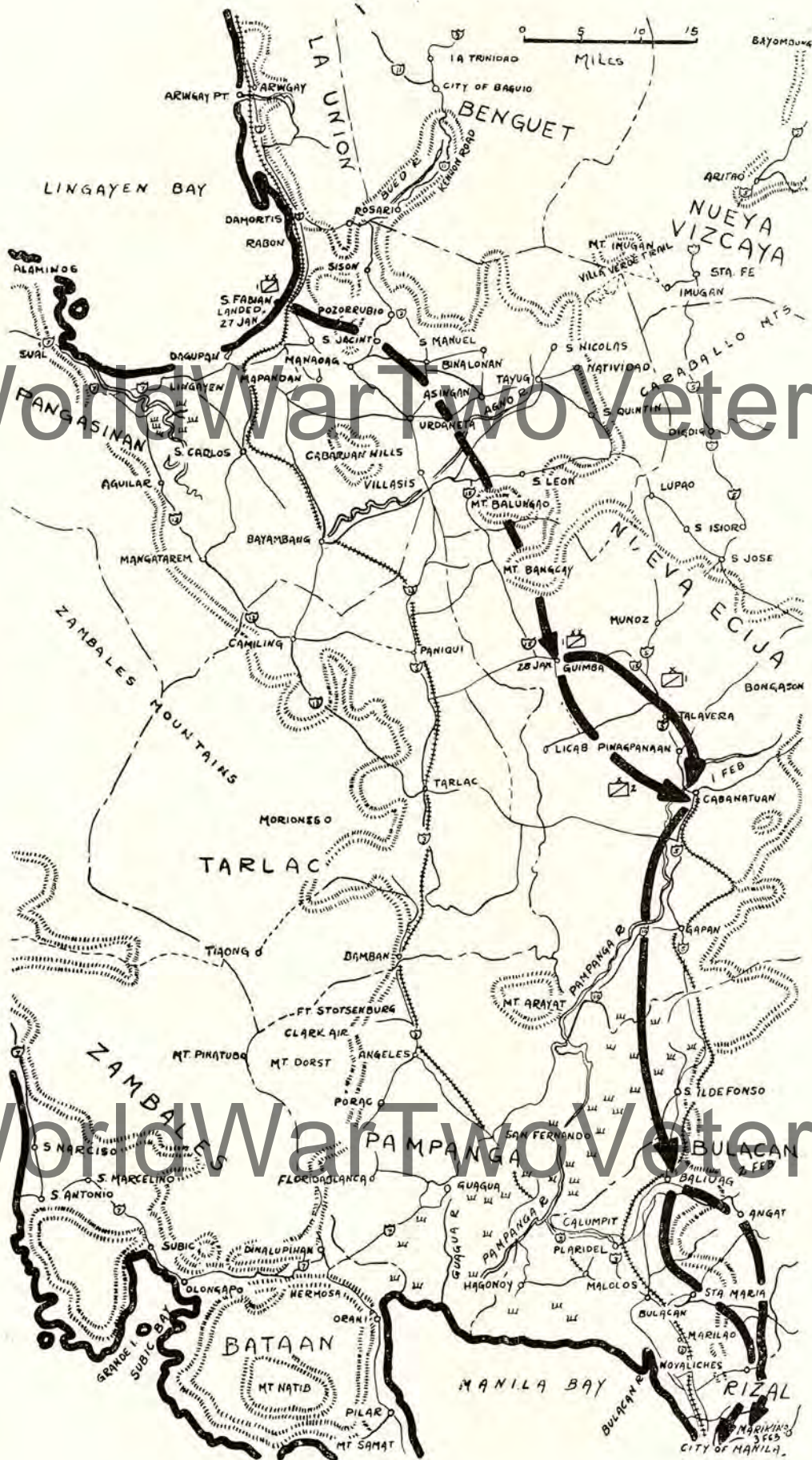
Not far beyond "The Hot Corner" was the Novaliches Bridge, important because it afforded a crossing over a narrow stream that had banks too high and too steep to permit fording. When General Chase sent the Marine flyers ahead to reconnoiter it, the word came back that it was apparently still intact. Colonel Conner's column hurried forward to seize it. As the troopers approached the bridge, it was found that the enemy had planted a large mine on the structure. It did not take long to discover, also, that the Japanese had the bridge covered with small arms and mortar fire and that the fuse of the mine had already been ignited. This important gateway to Manila was doomed to become a mass of ruins at any moment. Then, Lieut. (jg) James P. Sutton, a Navy bomb disposal officer from Lawrenceburg, Tennessee who had come along to provide his specialized type of service, ran onto the span with enemy bullets zinging all around him and cut the burning fuse. This bold heroic action saved the day. The column was enabled to fight its way onward, drive off the Japs, and proceed toward Manila. Lieut. Sutton was awarded a Distinguished Service Cross for this deed and for his work in clearing a mine field at the New Manila Subdivision a few days later.

After the action at Novaliches, the column pushed its way southward over a very rough road. At 1835 hours on 3 February, the leading elements crossed the city boundary line. The United States Army had returned to Manila and the 1st Cavalry was first. But the mission was not complete and the fighting was not finished. Dusk was settling as the troops entered the city. It was nearly dark when the column began to roll past the Chinese Cemetery a couple of miles farther on. Here the march turned into a running battle as a Japanese force opened fire from among the tombstones in the graveyard, and the troopers returned the shots from their moving vehicles. Casualties were inflicted on both sides but the flying column kept moving in.

Good fortune had come to Colonel Conner during his approach to the city in the persons of two Filipinos who formerly had been Filipino Scouts in the American Army. They offered their services as guides to lead the column to Santo Tomas. Skeptical of this unexpected assistance at first, Colonel Conner put many questions to these men and finally had his doubts allayed. His faith was fully rewarded when they led his troops through the darkness to the front gate of Santo Tomas Internment Camp.

Enroute through the city, Troop "F", 8th Cavalry, was detached from the column under the command of Captain Emery M. Hickman of Burbank, Okla. and sent to the Malacanan Palace, one of the three objectives prescribed by General MacArthur. Once





*THE 1ST CAVALRY DIVISION LANDED on Luzon at San Fabian on 27 January 1945. After assembling at Guimba, the troopers commenced a drive toward Manila. The first objective was Cabanatuan which was captured by a two-pronged attack. Dashing southward through enemy-held territory, flying columns led the division into Manila. Although many bridges had been destroyed and the enemy offered bitter resistance at several places, the daring troopers covered 100 miles in 66 hours and were the first Americans to enter the Philippine capital after three years of Japanese occupancy. In Manila, the troopers liberated the grateful internees at the Santo Tomas Internment Camp.*



in the palace grounds, Captain Hickman led his men in a search for isolated snipers and hidden machine guns. He organized the defense of the compound so well that when the Japs tried to re-enter the grounds during the night, 40 were killed, and next morning five staff cars were found piled up outside the walls.

The third objective of the flying column was the Legislative Building on the south side of the Pasig River, a wide and deep tidal river which cuts directly across the center of Manila. The only remaining bridge across this obstacle was the Quezon Bridge, all of the others having been destroyed by the Japanese. A part of Troop "G", 8th Cavalry, set out for the Legislative Building. Their course lay down Quezon Boulevard toward the Quezon Bridge. As they came abreast of Bilibid Prison, the troopers found that the guard towers of that institution had been deserted by the Japs. This was an excellent stroke of luck. But Far Eastern University, on the other side of the street was a different story. The enemy had the building well defended with many machine guns, anti-tank guns, and an impregnable road-block just beyond it. As the motorized column made its way along the rubble-littered street, these guns as well as mortars and small arms let loose a devastating fusillade, forcing the cavalymen to halt, dismount, seek cover, and return the fire.

Twenty minutes behind, General Chase's command post group, now joined by the 5th Cavalry troops which had finally gotten free of their combat with the Japs at Norzagaray and "The Hot Corner", were rapidly bringing up the rear at 40 miles per hour. As this column approached a cross-road just outside the city, four Jap trucks loaded with men and equipment started to turn onto the main highway. They were waved back by leading elements of the convoy and then received the surprise of their lives as each passing truck load of American soldiers placed burst after burst into the trucks and Japs. All trucks were set on fire and several Japs killed. The rest scattered.

As the convoy moved down Quezon Boulevard, the American vehicles were soon assembled in a close column. As the tail end was closing, four Jap trucks moved into the column. They went unnoticed in the darkness for a short time. Suddenly the occupants of the rear vehicle, the squadron wire jeep, discovered the enemy ruse and immediately opened fire with a .50 caliber machine gun. This instantly created a pitched battle between the two moving forces. Two Americans were killed and several wounded, but the Jap trucks and their occupants were quickly demolished.

Attention was then turned to the battle being fought at the Far Eastern University, a short distance

ahead. The column, in its headlong drive, had closed in solidly with the halted troops. The next problem was to determine if the obstacle could be breached or by-passed. Quickly sizing up the situation, General Chase decided that the best course under the circumstances would be to close all his troops in the Santo Tomas University grounds and try for the Legislative Building later. Turning a convoy around on a narrow street in darkness is a difficult job at any time, but when the task is complicated by a steady rain of lead, steel, and high explosive, a graceful exit becomes next to impossible. Nevertheless, the movement was accomplished. The Japanese, meanwhile, set fire to the buildings along the east side of the street.

The column finally closed into the University grounds at 2330. There, it was found, the 8th Cavalry had wiped out all resistance except for 63 of the enemy barricaded in the Education Building holding 267 American internees as hostages. The other 3500 internees were delirious with joy over their liberation. As they swarmed around the U.S. vehicles, they poured out their appreciation in every conceivable manner.

3 February 1945 was a big day for the 1st Cavalry Division. A glance at the citations resulting from this day's combat reveals a part of the gallantry and heroism which was responsible for getting the division into Manila ahead of everybody else.

Distinguished Service Crosses were awarded to General Chase and Colonel Conner for their enlightened leadership. Major James C. Gerhart, executive of the 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, received one for leading the final drive into Santo Tomas. Sergeant Randolph F. Mattison of Corning, N.Y. and the anti-tank platoon of the 8th had his 37mm gun rammed by the leading vehicle of a Japanese convoy when defective ammunition prevented the gun from firing. He was awarded the DSC because he crawled to a nearby jeep which mounted a machine gun and delivered point blank fire from an exposed position. Sergeant John J. Gallagher of Boston, Mass., Troop "G", 8th Cavalry, was largely responsible for saving the day at Far Eastern University. Twice he ran through murderous fire to bring back ammunition for his troop, he rushed an enemy machine gun bunker and polished off the crew with his tommy-gun, and as if that were not enough, when all of the troop officers and the first sergeant became casualties, Sergeant Gallagher took charge of the troop and led it until the end of the fight, repelling three counterattacks.

Silver Stars were awarded to 1st Lieut. Theodore B. Elliot of Lewistown, Penna, Captain Henry M. Freidinger of Springfield, Ill., Lieut. Colonel Richard H. Wright of Kerrville, Texas, Major Lyman



D. Bothwell of Coatesville, Penna., Captain Ernest Goule of Ballinger, Texas, Major Clint W. Herring of Houston, Texas, and Captain Edward W. Schoch of Towers Hill, Ill., all of 1st Cavalry Brigade Headquarters, and to Pfc. Mike E. Martinez of Superior, Ariz. and Troop "E", 5th Cavalry, for their courageous work in dealing with the Japanese trucks which attempted to infiltrate the convoy.

Among the 8th Cavalry troopers who received Silver Stars for gallantry in the day's action were: Pfc Hipolito Flores, Jr. of Dale, Texas, and Headquarters Troop who shared with Sergeant Mattison the glory of breaking up the Jap assault at Novaliches, and Pvt Rayford J. Brock of Pascagoula, Miss. and of Headquarters Troop, who, despite wounds, manned a machine gun until he was killed. In the melee at Far Eastern University, Sergeant Ivan C. Kinslow of Austin, Ky. and of Troop "G" ran down the flame-lit street through machine gun fire to summon assistance and was killed as he led the reinforcements forward. On a similar mission, 1st Lieut. Monroe C. Winn of Orenogo, Miss. and of 2d Squadron Headquarters was knocked unconscious by an explosion while guiding assisting forces. Chief Warrant Officer Raymond A. Dellacroce of Colorado Springs, Colo. and of the Service Troop changed a tire on a vitally-needed ammunition truck while bullets struck all around him; although wounded, he rescued two other disabled men and killed a Jap with his pistol in the process. Sergeant Albert Aiello of Chicago, Ill. and Pfc Jack E. Graham of Wichita, Kans., both from "F" Troop, manned a 37mm gun in the thick of battle until wounds knocked them out. 1st Lieut. Francis A. Jerrett of Carlton, Ore. and of "G" Troop ran through enemy fire to contact a supporting unit. He was wounded but continued to command his troop until loss of blood rendered him unconscious. 1st Lieut. Clark O. Irving of Eagle Pass, Texas, and 2d Lieut. Herman S. Neal of El Paso, Texas, both from "G" Troop, continued to lead their men at Far Eastern University although they were suffering from painful wounds. Pfc Laine J. Sharp of Venice, Calif., a medic from "F" Troop, disdained both his own wounds and the murderous fire around him to rush to the aid of his wounded comrades. Sergeant Vilas H. Ward of Wayne, West Va. and of "F" Troop, rode on top of a tank to give it close-in protection and from that position he put two truck-loads of the enemy out of action with his rifle fire. Captain Clyde H. Smith of Fairfield, Ill., 1st Lieut. Harrison A. Morley of Victoria, Australia, and Staff Sergeant William H. Johnson of Oakdale, La. all members of "H" Troop, were cited for daring and gallantry in entering Santo Tomas University and organizing the defenses of the camp there. The brilliant leadership of Captain Walter J. Landry of Dorchester,

Mass. as commanding officer of "G" Troop which spearheaded the 8th Cavalry's drive was to a large degree responsible for the success of the dash through the enemy lines into Manila. On the way into the city, Pfc Thomas R. Luper of Jerome, Idaho, a truck-driver from the Service Troop, distinguished himself when his truck was caught in crossfire and set ablaze. He stuck with his vehicle and despite his wounds, drove it to safety where he refused medical treatment until he was assured that the wounded occupants of the truck had been cared for first. Corporal Herschel R. Decker of Norwood, Ohio, a medic, administered to a wounded man under enemy fire and when the convoy went on forward leaving him and his patient behind, he remained on the spot until rear elements of the column rescued him.

1st Lieut. Frank W. Elverson of Beaver Falls, Penna. and Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade, lost his life in saving the supply train when it was attacked near Malacanan Palace. When enemy fire opened up on the column, he drove the length of the convoy twice issuing warning and redirecting the vehicles so that they could proceed safely to the rendezvous area. His heroism brought about his death.

1st Lieut. Warren A. Porter of West Hartford, Conn. and 1st Cavalry Brigade Headquarters was cited for organizing and leading a rescue squad at Far Eastern University which went in under the muzzles of enemy guns covering the road block and brought back 16 wounded men who had become casualties in front of the enemy position.

At Santo Tomas, Captain James Davis of Plainview, Texas, and 1st Lieut. Jerry Shea of Louiston, Idaho, both of them members of the 61st Field Artillery Battalion, organized their artillery battery into a combat unit and provided outstanding support in mopping up the area and protecting it from attack.

The dawn of 4 February found the flying column in an interesting situation. Its supporting units were strung out for more than 50 miles through enemy territory, while its sources of supply for food and ammunition were more than 100 miles away. In the Santo Tomas University grounds, General Chase's troops were surrounded by a dying city. Fires burned everywhere, the explosion of demolitions could be heard as the enemy systematically razed buildings and bridges. Thousands of homeless citizens moved through the turmoil seeking food, shelter, and escape from the inevitable battle. Inside the internment camp grounds more than 3400 liberated interness looked to the American forces for food and protection. The predicament was further complicated by 63 Japanese troops who had holed up in the Education Building where they held



276 of the internees as hostages under the threat of death if safe-conduct from the premises was not granted. The 37th Division, approaching the city from the north, was still too far away to give assistance, and the 11th Airborne Division which had landed on Luzon four days earlier was still a long distance to the south.

Supplies of rations and ammunition had run low. The troopers had been quick to share their last remaining "K Rations" with the hungry men, women, and children who had been waiting so long for an American meal. The numerous fire-fights on the way into the city had nearly exhausted the ammunition supply. If the Japs had made a determined counterattack against Santo Tomas, it is doubtful if the cavalrymen could have withstood it. When a truck column bearing supplies arrived on the evening of 5 February, it was a most welcome sight. It had been led through the sniper-infested territory by Major Estel A. Bozarth of San Antonio, Texas, supply officer for the 1st Cavalry Brigade, who received the Silver Star for this brave deed and for his fearless ministrations to some wounded men during the height of the barrage at Santo Tomas two days later.

For the first few hours after the cavalrymen entered the university grounds, there was a continual exchange of rifle fire between the Jap hold-outs in the Education Building and the troopers outside. The Americans ceased fire when they learned of the hostages being held, and the Japanese fire then slackened off. General Chase's mission was to effect the safe liberation of all internees, and he was deeply concerned over the welfare of those still in the hands of the Japs. He appointed Colonel Charles E. Brady, of West Orange, N.J., executive officer of the 1st Cavalry Brigade, to negotiate with Lieut. Colonel Hayashi, commander of the beleaguered Japs, for the release of the prisoners.

At first intermediaries were used, but on the night of 4 February, Colonel Brady himself, accompanied by only an interpreter entered the Education Building. There, after some fifteen minutes delay, Colonel Hayashi appeared with six armed guards and set forth his terms for the release of the hostages. He demanded that his men be freed with all of their automatic weapons, grenades, and individual arms. Lengthy talks followed, after which it was finally agreed that if the internees were left unharmed, Colonel Hayashi and his men, carrying only individual arms, would be escorted through the front lines and released.

Before daylight on 5 February, Colonel Brady and men from "E" Troop, 5th Cavalry, met the Japanese force at the entrance of the Education Building and then escorted this group to a point ap-

proximately one mile from Santo Tomas where the Japs were released. This gallant action saved the lives of the 276 internees, and won Colonel Brady the Silver Star.

While the flying column was making its historic dash to Manila, the remainder of the division was following as quickly as the difficult conditions along the route of march would permit. The presence of the enemy, the disruption of the path of travel, and the lack of sufficient transportation all combined to make the movement slow and hazardous.

Between the passage of the flying column across the bridge at Novaliches and the arrival of the main body there, Japanese demolition troops had gotten in and destroyed this important structure. When the convoy commanded by Colonel Charles A. Sheldon, of El Paso, Texas, Division Chief-of-Staff, arrived at "The Hot Corner" near Novaliches, the column was halted by the confusion of a battle which had just occurred when members of the 302d Reconnaissance Troop and the 8th Cavalry Weapon Troop opposed a Japanese force. The road was blocked by wrecked enemy trucks still smouldering and dead Japanese who had tried unsuccessfully to plow through the American line. Out of the darkness, other Japanese were throwing hand grenades and sniping. Quickly grasping the danger of the situation, not only to the large number of personnel present but to the accomplishment of the military mission as well, Colonel Sheldon ordered the road cleared. He directed the removal of the damaged Japanese trucks to a point along the road where they were pushed down a bank and off to the side. Hardly had this been done when one of the trucks exploded with a terrific blast indicating that it had been carrying Japanese demolition material. Colonel Sheldon's prompt determination of the measures needed to open the road for American use and his dynamic insistence that they be carried out with no delay resulted in the saving of many lives. Had he not taken charge when he did, the Japanese truck would have exploded in the midst of the cavalrymen. Under his intelligent leadership, confusion was soon dissipated and the convoy was enabled to proceed. He was awarded the Silver Star for this action.

Lieut. Colonel Boyd L. Branson, of San Mateo, Calif., regimental operations officer of the 7th Cavalry, was also awarded a Silver Star for gallantry in action on 4 February. Voluntarily assuming command of the regiment's advance guard, he led it across more than forty miles of enemy infested terrain, over unreconnoitered roads, and through difficult fords. Although contact with hostile groups was frequent, Colonel Branson's bold courage and intelligent combat leadership brought the regiment



to its assembly area expeditiously and without casualties.

The destruction of the Novaliches Bridge delayed the advance of the main body for a day. On 4 February, the 8th Engineer Squadron was visited by General MacArthur while they were engaged in building a bypass. The next day, the 1st Cavalry Division, less the 12th Cavalry which had taken up the mission of protecting the left flank and line of communication, drove through the enemy defenses from Novaliches to Manila. Enemy fire harassed General Mudge's troops all the way into Grace Park. There the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, fought a pitched battle securing the airstrip and the adjacent cemetery in which they encountered a mine field. Then they drove their way into the heart of the city and extended the right flank of the line running from Santo Tomas University to Bilibid Prison.

The 1st Squadron, 5th Cavalry, fought on through the burning city and joined the 2d Squadron which had been operating out of Santo Tomas in an effort to find a route across the Pasig River. The 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry now consolidated at the Malacanan Palace, patrolled the surrounding area. Both Malacanan and Santo Tomas were receiving long range artillery fire from south of the Pasig River.

On this same day, 5 February, "G" Troop of the 7th Cavalry, under the command of Captain Eric D. Berquist of Baltimore, Md., advanced to Novaliches Dam where they made a surprise attack capturing this important adjunct to Manila's water supply. The dam had been thoroughly mined, but the decisive action of Captain Berquist and his men resulted in the annihilation of the Japanese demolition unit before they could detonate the high explosive. The following day, the 7th Cavalry Regimental Headquarters and the 2d Squadron less "G" Troop moved in and secured the Novaliches watershed and the Balara Filters just in the nick of time. When the filter plant was taken in the evening at 1900, it was found that the Japs had wired it completely for demolition and were scheduled to set off the explosives at 1930. When the plant was defused on 7 February, more than a ton of explosive was removed.

The 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, provided protection for the line of communication in the vicinity of Santa Maria-Novaliches until 9 February when it joined with the remainder of the regiment in repulsing Japanese attempts to infiltrate and blow up Manila's water facilities. From then until 20 February, the 7th Cavalry was busy clearing the Japs from the surrounding area so that it would be free from small arms fire and from artillery observers. The record of the 7th Cavalry in carrying out this mission is replete with shining examples of gallantry

and self-sacrifice. Among the 7th Cavalry personnel to receive Silver Star decorations for heroism during the Novaliches-Balara action were: Chaplain Thomas E. McKnight of Stockton, Calif., who left his fox-hole during a mortar attack to answer the call of a wounded man and was killed while administering to him; 1st Lieut. Luther H. Adams of North Zulch, Texas and of "A" Troop who also went through a mortar barrage to assist the wounded; Sergeant Altus L. Johnson of Buffalo Gap, Texas and "A" Troop, who crawled through enemy fire and dragged four men to safety after they had fallen victims of a sniping enemy patrol; Major William A. Adams of El Paso, Texas, commander of the 1st Squadron, who, while clearing the enemy from a ridge, led assaults on two machine gun positions and directed a successful attack on a concrete pillbox; Pfc Neal H. Hultman of Milan, Minn., an operator of a heavy machine gun in the Weapons Troop, who went to the aid of his wounded squad leader and then returned to his gun and knocked out two Japanese satchel charge men; and, Pfc Melvin P. Heady of St. Louis, Mo., a flame-thrower operator from "B" Troop who ran head-on through a hail of bullets to the mouth of an occupied enemy cave and drove out six Japs who were then killed.

No account of the early days of the drive on Manila would be complete without mention of the courage and daring of the truck-drivers who got the supplies to the fighting troops. Their routes were long and dangerous. During the first few days it was SOP that each convoy would have to run the gauntlet of roving enemy groups who were still free to menace numerous points along the highway. Within the city of Manila snipers operated in buildings on both sides of the streets. Demolition of a building did not prevent its use by snipers; its suitability for such activities was sometimes improved thereby. Typical of the hazards encountered by the truckdrivers and their reaction to them was an incident which occurred to a 5th Cavalry Service Troop convoy on the night of 5 February. As the convoy approached Manila with its load of rations and ammunition, it was stopped by what at first was thought to be the explosion of land mines. When the drivers dismounted to investigate, they were met by heavy grenade and rifle fire. As Pfc Riley H. Priest of Kalamazoo, Mich., the driver of the second truck in the convoy, was making his way forward to the truck ahead, he saw its driver lying seriously wounded beside the road. At the same instant, the enemy opened up with another burst of fire which pinned Priest to the ground and wounded several other drivers. Then, with utter disregard for his own safety, Priest moved forward and gave first aid to his comrade while other drivers opened fire in the direction of the enemy, driving them off and enab-



ling the convoy to pick up its wounded and proceed. During the first few days of February when the Division was moving on Manila, more than a dozen truck drivers lost their lives from enemy gunfire.

On 7 February, General MacArthur made his triumphal entry into Manila. He was met at the city limits by a group of officers and men which included Lieut. General O. W. Griswold, Major General Mudge, Brigadier General Chase, and personnel from the flying column which had made the dash into the Japanese stronghold. General MacArthur's first words were in congratulation of the historic feat accomplished by the 1st Cavalry Division. General Chase was then informed that he had been recommended for promotion to the rank of major general and had been placed in command of the 38th Infantry Division which was fighting on the Bataan Peninsula. Amidst the plaudits of the grateful Filipinos General MacArthur rode through the city. Despite the sniping and artillery fire which was going on in every quarter, the commander-in-chief visited the Malacanang Palace and the front line troops who were engaged in a fire fight with the enemy along the Pasig River.

The 5th Cavalry was relieved from Santo Tomas University on 7 February by the 37th Infantry Division which had fought its way into Manila on 4 Feb.

By the evening of 7 February, the 1st Cavalry Division had killed 1,587 Japs, and had captured 51 prisoners-of-war. Their own losses during the Luzon Campaign up to that time were: 36 killed in action, 141 wounded in action, and 4 missing in action.

During the first few days after the entry of American troops into Manila, the use of artillery by them was held to a minimum. At the beginning it was hoped that the Japanese might withdraw from the city without destroying it, but as their intentions became more apparent with the burning and blasting of so many of the buildings, some of the restrictions on the use of artillery were lifted. When Jap artillery and mortar shells began to fall on Santo Tomas, Lieut. Charles E. Doesburg of Glencoe, Ill., and of the 82d Field Artillery Battalion, climbed a tower so that he could act as a forward observer and bring counterbattery fire to bear on the nearby enemy guns. The tower received nine hits from the enemy while Lieut. Doesburg was stationed in it. More than thirty persons were killed and nearly one hundred were injured in the vicinity of his post. While others around him were seeking cover from the Jap fire, he remained in the exposed tower position and enabled our artillery to complete its mission. This act of gallantry brought him a Silver Star award.

By 8 February, under the XIV Corps scheme of maneuver, the 37th Infantry Division had assumed

responsibility for completing the capture of that part of the city north of the Pasig River, while the 1st Cavalry Division had been assigned the mission of driving south through the eastern suburbs, crossing the Pasig River, and then driving the Japs from the southern portion of the city. When the 8th Cavalry attacked southeast into the New Manila Subdivision and the Rosario Heights area, they found their way blocked by mines, six-inch naval guns, 20mm anti-aircraft guns, and heavy machine guns. In all, five tanks were blown up as they led the drive into this enemy stronghold. When one of the tanks was demolished by running over a depth charge used as a land mine, Lieut. William A. Koski of Astoria, Oregon, brought his "E" Troop platoon forward and finished off the covering enemy stronghold. He was awarded a Silver Star for his gallant leadership. Other 8th Cavalry men who received Silver Stars for their gallantry under fire on this date included: Sergeant Garrett C. Eaton of Columbus, Mont., and "E" Troop, who continued to lead a successful attack against fortified Japanese emplacements even though he had been severely wounded by a grenade; Technical Sergeant Robert R. Miller, of Highland Park, Mich., and also of "E" Troop, who took over the command of his platoon when its leader was wounded, and directed the reduction of two enemy strongpoints; 1st Sergeant Norman C. Erickson of Eau Claire, Wis., and "C" Troop who braved a hail of enemy bullets to rescue a wounded tank crew member; and, Staff Sergeant Clarence C. Sanders, a member of the regimental reconnaissance platoon, from Gandy, La., who, when his platoon leader became a casualty from the explosion of a land mine, covered the withdrawal of the platoon leader and other personnel. An Oak Leaf Cluster was added to the Silver Star already worn by Lieut. William H. Swan of Tucson, Ariz., and the 2d Brigade Headquarters as a result of his brave leadership in an attack by the recon platoon on a Jap hot-spot.

The fighting was bitter and the progress was slow, but on 9 February the Japanese defense system in the northeast part of the city was cracked. While a section of the 2d Brigade Reconnaissance Platoon was guarding an important ford across Diliman Creek, a hitherto undiscovered enemy force let go with a blast of intense mortar, machine gun, and small arms fire. A communications jeep with its attendant personnel was caught in an exposed position. Pfc Melvin H. Amundson of Beloit, Wis., one of the squad leaders, quickly appraised the situation and crawled forward along a slight natural drainage ditch. He pointed out the covered route of withdrawal to three men enabling them to make their escape. Then, realizing the value of the radio to the enemy in event they should capture it, Amundson



jumped into the jeep, turned it around, and drove it to safety before the Japs could bring accurate fire to bear on him. His courageous devotion to duty saved his comrades, the jeep, and the radio, and won him a Silver Star.

By evening the 8th Cavalry reached the Pasig River at a point opposite the Philippine Racing Club. During the night the regiment began a river crossing. The speed with which they established a bridgehead on the far side took the enemy by surprise.

The 5th Cavalry, operating on the 8th Cavalry's left flank, drove south through the Wack Wack Country Club on 9 February, and next day crossed the Pasig River in native bancas shortly before noon. By mid-afternoon the 2d Squadron of this regiment had established a line along the outskirts of Neilson Airfield, while the 1st Squadron set up an outpost screen to protect the left flank of the area traversed during the two preceding days.

The 8th Engineers installed a ponton bridge for the 8th Cavalry across the Pasig River. The Japs spotted it and turned artillery fire on it. In the construction of the bridge, the mission of placing the cable on the far shore fell to Sergeant Richard S. Williamson, an "A" Troop man from Unionville, Mo. When the cable became fouled in debris in the river near the enemy shore, he waded into five feet of water and went to work. Enemy fire danced all around him, shrapnel punctured both of his canteens, but he completed his task, freeing the cable and garnering a Silver Star for himself. Another member of "A" Troop, Corporal Francisco G. Garcia, of San Antonio, Texas, took cover along with everybody else when an enemy barrage broke loose, but he left his place of safety when he saw an ammunition truck set on fire by an enemy shell, and assisted the truck-driver in dumping his inflammable load and extinguishing the fire, thereby saving the valuable cargo truck. Pfc Dennis J. Kloer, of Montrose, Mo., from the same troop, went into the teeth of the barrage to remove some vehicles from the line of fire. By repeated trips he saved two cargo trucks, a bulldozer, a weapons carrier, and a quarter-ton. Both he and Garcia got Silver Stars. Another engineer to be so honored for heroism on this day was Sergeant Morris D. Harrison of Beeville, Texas and "C" Troop who, while working with a mine removal detail in the city of Manila, pulled a burning fuse from an enemy mine and thereby saved the important Estera deGallina Bridge from destruction.

The ponton bridge was damaged and knocked out by the Japanese shells on both 10 and 11 February, but counterbattery fire from the Division Artillery which had set up at the Wack Wack Country Club silenced the Japanese pieces while the engineers

made some quick repairs.

The 302d Recon Troop, meanwhile, sent patrols to the east probing for enemy positions in the Maraquina River Valley. The leader of one of these patrols Technical Sergeant Andy J. Bridgewater of Roe, Ark., did a daring thing on 12 February while he and his small group were deep in Japanese territory. As they watched from their concealed observation post, a U.S. Marine Corps aircraft crashed several hundred yards away. Almost at once an enemy patrol was sighted hurrying to the scene of the crash. Two Marine pilots extricated themselves from the wreckage. They were not seriously injured but they were bewildered and did not know which way to turn for safety in the unfamiliar hostile area. Sergeant Bridgewater made a quick decision. He stepped forward out of his concealment shouted to the pilots and beckoned them to join him. They saw him and came. The Jap patrol also saw him and came. It is estimated that Sergeant Bridgewater changed the location of his observation post approximately one minute before the arrival of the Japs. He moved his men and the rescued pilots to another position to the north. The following day when enemy patrol action had become so intense that it was no longer feasible to maintain his OP, he skillfully led his small group of men back to friendly ground taking with him vital information concerning terrain and enemy strength. Later, Sergeant Bridgewater was among those who stepped forward when the Silver Stars were awarded.

On 12 February, the 12th Cavalry, which had been relieved of its protective mission north of Manila by the 112th Cavalry, took over the outposts of the 1st Squadron, 5th Cavalry east of the city. On the way into position two members of the 12th Cavalry, Pfc Roy H. Miles of Arthur, Texas and "D" Troop and Pfc Joseph C. Abbt of Cambridge, Mass. and "C" Troop, performed brave deeds which won them Silver Stars. Miles singlehandedly stood off a banzai attack killing 11 Japs and dispersing a number of others. Abbt, a member of an advance patrol, crawled around the flank of an enemy strongpoint which was holding up the patrol's progress. He killed four of the enemy, knocked out a machine gun, and enabled the patrol to proceed.

The 1st Squadron, 5th Cavalry, moved south across the Pasig River and joined the 2d Squadron which had occupied Neilson Field on the morning of 12 February. In the afternoon, the 2d Squadron drove west and reached Manila Bay, while the 1st Squadron, moving on the 2d's south (left) flank, passed through Neilson Field to the Manila Polo Club where it made contact with the 11th Airborne Division, a motorized patrol of which had reached elements of the 8th Cavalry on the previous evening.



Thus, the encirclement of the city of Manila was completed.

During the 5th Cavalry's fight to reach the waterfront, two members of "F" Troop displayed especial gallantry in action in the vicinity of Pasay. They were Technical Sergeant Osee H. Stermer of Quannah, Texas, (he was later commissioned in the field), and Sergeant Armand E. Roy of Pawtucket, R. I., both of whom received Silver Stars for their heroism in rescuing wounded comrades under fire during a pitched battle.

Meanwhile, the 8th Cavalry had been engaged in a bitter fight across the southern section of the city. The scene of action was ideal for Jap snipers and small enemy groups bent on delaying the troopers' progress. But the 8th Cavalry moved forward. When a nest of Japs blocked the way of an "F" Troop patrol in the Paco Sector, Sergeant Woodrow W. McLaughlin of Hosterman, W. Va., worked his way into a building where he killed five snipers and then directed mortar fire so that it put several machine guns out of action. His Silver Star was awarded posthumously because he was killed in action a week later. Lieut. Lambert E. Berkman of Bishop, Texas, also of "F" Troop led an assault against a building in the same sector. He was cited for the brave manner in which he stayed in the thick of the fight after he had been wounded and directed mortar fire on the enemy. Pfc Gerald W. Palmer of Chicago, Ill. and "B" Troop, was with a sniper-hunting patrol when the squad leader was wounded. He assumed command, ordered the other men to safety, and carried the squad leader out of danger. Then, in an attempt to locate the enemy he was fatally wounded. Two other Silver Star winners were: Captain Merl T. Crow, a medic, from Warren, Ark. and Pfc Charles B. Watson of Lisbon, Ohio, a bazookaman from "C" Troop. Captain Crow was cited for his heroic gallantry in dashing through enemy fire to treat a wounded soldier, thereby saving his life. Watson was wounded when he attacked a 20mm emplacement, but he disregarded his own injuries to carry a fallen comrade to safety. These are only a few of the many acts of bravery and self-sacrifice which took place in the fighting around Manila.

On the evening of 12 February, the 12th Cavalry was sent into the line to replace the 8th Cavalry which had advanced beyond Malate Circle. The 1st Squadron, 5th Cavalry turned the direction of its attack to the east and drove on Fort McKinley. During the fighting which followed in the vicinity of Makati, Sergeant Leon Birdsley of Louella, Wyo., and "C" Troop won a Silver Star for making two trips through intense enemy fire to carry wounded men to safety. Although he was killed in action

ten days later, his courage and self-sacrifice were a great inspiration to all who witnessed his brave deeds.

Near the same place Lieut. Colonel Harry F. Lambert of Elbert, Colo., commanding officer of the 82d Field Artillery Battalion, distinguished himself while in the front lines for the purpose of selecting an observation post. He stayed there under fire for two days and nights frequently risking himself in exposed positions in order to locate exactly the position of enemy weapons. The numerous dead enemy that were found when Fort McKinley was captured were testimony to the accuracy of his observations. His gallantry was rewarded with a Silver Star.

The 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, continued its efforts to reduce the fort until 17 February when it was relieved by the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry. The latter squadron placed artillery and mortar fire on Fort McKinley until the morning of 19 February when the fort was secured.

When the 12th Cavalry reached the waterfront on 12 February, it turned the axis of its attack to the north. Fanatical opposition contested its progress everywhere. The Japanese operated from buildings, ruins, piles of rubble, and massive concrete emplacements—anything that would give them a protected site of resistance. But these strongholds were not proof against demolition by an outfit which had conquered as many jungle pill-boxes as the 12th Cavalry had destroyed.

The battle for Manila now resolved itself into the compression of the remaining Jap defenders of the city into the Wallace Field-Intramuros-Port area just south of the Pasig River. The 37th Division was applying pressure on this area from the north and east. The 1st Cavalry Brigade drove against it from the south and, after the 12th Cavalry had spearheaded its way northward along the waterfront, from the west. A new type of warfare was added to the 1st Cavalry Division's repertoire of combat methods—that of city fighting in a modern city. The determined foe had committed at least 20,000 army, navy, base defense, and service troops to the all out defense of the city. Every building and every wall became a strongpoint. Open spaces were mined and the streets were barricaded with obstacles. These in turn, were covered by fire from antitank guns and automatic weapons situated in buildings and pill-boxes at key street intersections. Artillery was emplaced in the upper stories of buildings where it could deliver fire against the American troops advancing down the main thoroughfares.

The key to the surmounting of these obstacles was, as always, the bravery and determination of the individual combat troopers assisted by the crushing fire power of tanks and artillery. An idea of the difficulties and hardships encountered and the brave





*THE BATTLE FOR MANILA* gave the jungle-experienced 1st Cavalry Division troopers a taste of city-fighting. After thrusting southward to the Pasig River, the Division launched a drive through the eastern suburbs of the city and then turned the axis of attack to the west, completing the encirclement of Manila.

manner in which they were overcome may be gained by passing reference to the citations that were made in connection with the awards of Silver Stars to men of the 12th Cavalry during this period of action. When a Jap machine gun emplaced in De La Salle College cut off one of the squads from "G" Troop, Pfc Tracy J. Marcum of Clay City, Ky., worked his way back to his platoon for help, killing two of the

enemy on the way and then guided two squads to the rescue. When the platoon of Technical Sergeant Dod M. Rains of Aspermont, Texas and Weapons Troop, was caught in the center of a Japanese artillery concentration, five men were killed and eleven were wounded. Sergeant Rains fearlessly and unselfishly remained in the beaten zone tending the wounded and refusing to leave until the last man



was evacuated.

Pfc Reed Williams of Hope, Ind., a BAR man from "G" Troop, was a paragon of coolness when a hidden emplacement let loose with intense machine gun fire. He stood his ground and calmly put the machine gun and its four Jap operators out of commission for keeps. At the Manila Hotel, Sergeant Henry C. Cecil of Mt. Vernon, Texas and "C" Troop, engaged a strongly fortified bunker from an exposed position. The result was eleven Japs killed, three machine guns and two mortars captured.

One reason the men of the 12th Cavalry conducted themselves so gallantly was because of the type of leadership they had. On 15 February, the regimental commander, Colonel James B. Corbett of Palm Beach, Fla., was up with the leading troops during an attack on Harrison Park. He was painfully wounded by a rifle bullet but it took a direct order from the division commander to get him to leave his troops and undergo treatment. His great personal courage and outstanding devotion to duty were an inspiration to all who saw him in action.

At Harrison Park, Pfc Anthony F. Leo of Waynesburg, Penna., and "A" Troop, discovered some electrically controlled mines cleverly concealed in the route of approach. When he traced the wiring, he found that it led to a pill-box where six enemy soldiers were waiting for the opportune time to detonate the explosives. Leo cut the wire and then covered the pill-box with fire until his comrades could overrun the emplacement and annihilate its defenders.

The Japs conducted a night attack on the perimeter of the Service Troop's position in the vicinity of Fort Abad. When the machine gunner at one of the defensive machine guns was wounded, Pvt Horace D. Clements of Benkelman, Neb., carried him to safety and then returned and manned the gun. Next morning, six dead Japs were counted in front of the gun.

Sergeant Hannino A. Mirabelli of Trenton, N.J., was a mortar section sergeant in "E" Troop during the fighting at De LaSalle College. Answering a call for volunteers to enter an occupied building, Sergeant Mirabelli led four men into the structure and evacuated thirty civilians trapped there by the Japs. This done, he returned and rid the building of the enemy.

At the Army-Navy Club, Sergeant James W. Isham of Columbus, Ga. and "A" Troop, went forward with his squad covering him and polished off three pill-boxes with hand grenades. Four other members of "A" Troop distinguished themselves during the battle for the Manila Hotel. Pvt Edward K. Zopp, a BAR man, from East Rainelle, West Va.,

inspired his comrades by leading the advance of his platoon into the building and delivering such a heavy volume of fire that three machine guns and 27 Japs were permanently relieved from combat. Staff Sergeant Walter B. Lotz, of North Albany, N.Y., led an attack against a suicide squad with demolitions and grenades and although he was wounded, he continued to push the assault. Corporal Frank A. Vescere of Worcester, Mass., led his squad into the hotel to mop up the remaining resistance in a room-to-room fight. The Japs sprayed rifle fire from concealed positions but the vigor of Vescere's attack forced them to retreat to the basement in which place his covering fire enabled the remainder of his squad to enter and kill nine of the enemy. Staff Sergeant Clifford Hughes of Timposon, Texas, reconnoitered an enemy position and then while the rest of his platoon placed covering fire, he led a squad to destroy an emplacement with grenades thereby making possible the destruction of two other pill-boxes and their 17 Japanese occupants.

Pvt Jack R. Ferguson of Seattle, Wash. and the Weapons Troop, went into the dark basement of the Army-Navy Club where there was a Jap in the act of setting off a demolition charge. That was the end of the Jap.

During the attack on the High Commissioner's Residence, Lieut. John L. Nichols of Spur, Texas took command of "B" Troop when the CO was wounded. Enemy bullets pinned the troops to the ground, but Lieut. Nichols got up and went through the fusilade to select a new position. He gave directions to the supporting tanks, and when darkness had settled, he resupplied his troops with ammunition, evacuated the wounded, and assembled his men in the new area he had selected. At dawn he led a surprise attack on the building which netted 36 Japs killed, 5 machine guns and a twin-20mm gun captured or destroyed. As if that were not enough, he then led a successful attack on two nearby buildings which resulted in all enemy occupants being killed. Lieut. Nichols was awarded the Distinguished Service Cross for his inspiring leadership and extraordinary heroism.

Harrison Park with its football and baseball fields and attendant buildings was captured during the afternoon of 16 February following some of the most vicious and heroic fighting in the 1st Cavalry history. In the attack on the baseball park, "E" Troop, 5th Cavalry ran into a withering barrage of enemy machine gun and rifle fire from positions concealed in the concrete bleachers. The assaulting force was half-way across the playing field when the Japanese defenders let go with their blast. Pvt Ernest E. Pittman, a member of "E" Troop, from Morrisville, Mo., seeing a fellow soldier wounded and lying in



a lane of enemy fire, gallantly dashed to his side to administer first aid and remove him to safety. Before he could reach his wounded comrade, he himself received a painful wound and fell close to the other soldier. Although directly exposed to enemy fire and bleeding profusely, he refused medical aid until his comrade had been cared for first. General Mudge, always closely concerned with the activities of the front line troops, had witnessed Pittman's gallant act. Without hesitation, the general ran through the enemy fire to the wounded man and signalled for personnel to come forward and remove him. As the rescuers made their way forward, General Mudge drew a Silver Star from his pocket and pinned it on Pittman. He then took Pittman's rifle and opened fire with it at the enemy defenses. Among the other troopers who were cited for going fearlessly into the face of enemy fire to administer to the wounded on this occasion were: Sergeant James L. Hedger of Williamstown, Ky., and Sergeant Clarence C. Hambrick of Salem, Va., both members of Division Headquarters Troop, Technical Sergeant Clarence D. Hamilton of Woodsboro, Texas and "E" Troop, Major Frank G. Mayfield of Junction City, Kan. and 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, and Pvt Allen R. Smith of Berea, Ohio. All were awarded Silver Stars. Smith's was awarded posthumously because after rescuing one man, he sacrificed his life while attempting to save another.

By the evening of 16 February, the section of Manila remaining in the hands of the enemy had become so small it was necessary to centralize control of the American forces fighting that battle. Accordingly, the 1st Cavalry Brigade, less 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, was placed under the operational control of the 37th Infantry Division. The squeezing of the enemy into the Intramuros section of the city continued. It seemed like a never ending house-to-house and room-to-room fight, highlighted by the battles for the Army-Navy Club, the Manila Hotel, the Agricultural Building, the Philippine General Hospital, the Port Commissioner's Office Building, and Rizal Hall. For two long and exhausting weeks the troopers shelled, shot, grenaded, burned, and fought their way through the battered and dusty rubble that had once been buildings of stone and concrete. The twisted girders and mangled reinforcing steel, the ruined masonry and the pulverized stone, the sickening stench of the unburied dead frying under the tropical sun, the ever-present snipers' bullets and grenades all combined to make an unbelievable nightmare. By comparison, Dante's Inferno would have seemed like a week-end at Waldorf.

On the same date, 16 February, at the "Hot Corner", the 112th Cavalry turned back an attack by 500 of the enemy when, with artillery support,

they attempted an all out drive on Manila. The following day two members of the 640th Tank Destroyer Battalion distinguished themselves in the vicinity of Prenza when their reconnaissance company went to the rescue of a group of engineer troops who had been surrounded by Japanese forces. Pfc Hugo Ruede of Leola, South Dakota, and Pfc Earl C. Wrights of East Berlin, Penna., were the driver and gunner, respectively, of a machine gun-carrying jeep that accompanied an armored car on an investigative mission into the enemy lines. When both vehicles were engulfed by a terrific crossfire, the armored car was disabled by the mortal wounding of its commander, Lieut. Rupert K. Allsup. Ruede drove his jeep forward, took charge of the situation, and brought fire to bear against the enemy, thereby enabling the armored car to withdraw. Wrights, although injured, helped Ruede man the machine gun and they poured more than 2000 rounds into the enemy silencing one of his guns. Their jeep was riddled from one end to the other. Their machine gun became so hot that it fired automatically. When their ammunition was nearly gone, Ruede ordered Wrights back to safety and then, sighting the gun on a persistent enemy position, he locked the cradle, inserted the last belt of cartridges, and retired leaving the gun still firing. As a result of this brave action the engineers and the armored car were saved from capture and certain destruction at the hands of the enemy. Ruede was awarded a Distinguished Service Cross and Wrights a Silver Star.

By 3 March, all vestiges of organized resistance in Manila had been overcome. This was accomplished by smooth teamwork, but behind the teamwork were the individual soldiers subordinating their own wishes and desires and even their lives in order that the mission might succeed. Some of the acts of valor and gallantry went unnoticed in the heat of battle or were unrecorded because the persons with knowledge of them became casualties. Others, more or less worthy, met the test of being reduced to dispassionate prose which was carefully weighed by higher authority and, having been found deserving, were rewarded with appropriate decorations. To one who has read all of the citations awarding Silver Stars, Distinguished Service Crosses, Distinguished Service Medals, and Congressional Medals of Honor to members of the 1st Cavalry Division, it is apparent that in the giving out of these decorations justice prevailed insofar as it was possible for human capabilities to make it prevail. It is not within the scope of this book to describe at length the gallant details of every act which won its performer a medal. So many deeds meriting a Silver Star or higher award were performed that not even all of these can be recounted here. Suffice it to say that if a man re-



ceived one of these higher awards, he deserved it.

In addition to the men already mentioned, the following named persons were awarded Silver Stars for gallantry in action during the Battle for Manila: Pfc G.P. Dickson of Waco, Texas, and Master Sergeant Robert C. King of San Angelo, Texas, both from "C" Troop, 5th Cavalry and both honored posthumously; Corporal Richard L. Williams of Grand Rapids, Mich. and Headquarters Battery, 82d F.A. Battalion, posthumously; Staff Sergeant Dominic C. Franco of Pittsburgh, Penna. and "D" Troop, 5th Cavalry; Sergeant Lewis D. Cain of Eagle, New Mex. and "C" Troop, 12th Cavalry; Captain Gherald L. Hoopes of El Paso, Texas and Weapons Troop, 12th Cavalry; Pfc Forest E. Thammes of Mechanicsville, Iowa and Pfc Alex Dirigolamo of Collinsville, Ill., both of "A" Troop, 5th Cavalry; Colonel Franklin F. Wing, Jr. of San Diego, Calif., commanding officer of the 5th Cavalry; Pfc Manuel G. Lopez of Edinburg, Texas and "C" Troop, 12th Cavalry; Lieut. Gerald E. Teifer of Muskegon, Mich. and the 5th Cavalry Medical Detachment; Pvt Julius Kramer of Buffalo, N.Y. and "A" Troop, 8th Engineers; Pvt Gilbert D. Buyher of Avoca, Texas and "B" Company, 44th Tank Battalion; Pvt Francis W. Bertschy of Two Rivers, Wis. and 1st Collecting Troop, 1st Medical Squadron; Corporal Albert M. Vega of San Antonio, Texas and "B" Troop, 5th Cavalry; Technical Sergeant Louie E. Burrus of Bunker, Mo. and "F" Troop, 5th Cavalry; Sergeant Frank C. Flagle of Woodstock, Va. and "C" Battery, 271st F.A. Battalion; Lieut. Lawrence S. Gable of Youngstown, Ohio and Headquarters Battery, 271st F.A. Battalion; Captain Charles B. Cushman of Greensboro, N. Car. and "B" Battery, 82d F.A. Battalion; Pvt Leroy W. Ganschow of Chicago, Ill. and "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry, posthumously; and, Captain William E. Dudley of Chester, Penna. and "E" Troop, 8th Cavalry.

On 23 February, a feat which resulted in the posthumous award of a Congressional Medal of Honor occurred in Manila. Pfc William J. Grabiarz of Buffalo, N.Y. was a scout with "E" Troop, 5th Cavalry when his unit advanced with tanks along a Manila street. Without warning, enemy machine gun and rifle fire from concealed positions in the Customs Building swept the street striking down the troop commander and driving his men to cover. As the officer lay in the open road, unable to move and completely exposed to pointblank enemy fire, Private Grabiarz voluntarily ran from behind a tank to carry him to safety but was himself wounded in the shoulder. Ignoring both the pain in his injured, useless arm and his comrades' shouts to seek cover which was only a few yards distant, the valiant rescuer continued his efforts to drag his commander out of range. Finding this impossible, he rejected the opportunity to save himself and deliberately

covered the officer with his own body to form a human shield, calling as he did so for the tank to maneuver into position between him and the hostile emplacement. The enemy riddled him with concentrated fire before the tank could be interposed. His comrades found that he had been successful in preventing the bullets from striking his leader, who survived. Through his magnificent sacrifice in gallantly giving his life to save his commander, Pvt Grabiarz provided an outstanding and lasting inspiration to his fellow soldiers. He was the second member of the 1st Cavalry Division to receive a Congressional Medal of Honor in World War II; Sergeant Troy A. McGill was the other.

While the battle for Manila was raging the 2d Brigade Combat Team had been fighting in the vicinity of the Novaliches watershed, holding the enemy in the high ground east of the city and preventing reinforcements from reaching the waning Japanese units in Manila. On 20 February, the 2d Brigade turned the Novaliches conflict over to elements of the 6th Infantry Division and moved southward to tackle the left (south) flank of the Shimbu line before Antipolo. The 1st Cavalry Division had been assigned the mission of advancing aggressively east to seize and secure crossings over the Maraquina River and secure a front running from Taytay to Antipolo. This was one of the most formidable assignments the division received during the war. The Japs had prepared defensive positions in this area over period of months and the mountains east of Manila had been fully exploited as a part of the defense system of Luzon. Furthermore, while secondary and service troops had been used in the defense of Manila, the Japanese high command had retained its crack combat troops in readiness for the inevitable mountain campaign.

The 2d Cavalry Brigade Combat Team moved across the Maraquina River on 20 February without opposition. The 7th Cavalry spearheaded the drive eastward. Except for a night counterattack at Ugong, the enemy made little effort to halt the troopers during the next two days as they fanned out across the low country between the river and the mountains, but as they drew nearer to the Japanese stronghold in the foothills, artillery fire from cave positions crashed down on them. The 2nd Squadron, 7th Cavalry thrust a spearhead deep into the enemy's position. Quickly a tremendous artillery duel began. Counterbattery fire was delivered by the 75mm howitzers of the 99th Field Artillery Battalion and the 155's of Corps Artillery. In addition to the artillery fire, the enemy poured forth mortar shells along with rockets of 120mm and 150mm caliber. It was not the haphazard, inaccurate fire that had been encountered on Leyte, but the carefully coordinated and prepared massed fires of the



artillery elements of two enemy combat divisions. This was the Shimbu Line speaking from deeply entrenched positions that had to be mopped up before the 2d Brigade Combat Team could advance. Drawing on their Admiralty and Leyte experience in dealing with pillboxes in mountainous jungle terrain, the troopers went to work on the machine gun nests in concealed caves and the mortars in camouflaged sites. By the afternoon of 25 February, both the 7th and 8th Cavalry Regiments had troops within 2000 yards of Antipolo.

The task seemed endless. The enemy defenses before Antipolo took full advantage of the series of sharp ridges that comprise the Sierra Madre mountain range. Each ridge was honeycombed with systems of interconnecting caves and tunnels. The large caliber weapons were fired from the mouths of caves which, in turn, were protected by cross-fire from numerous pillboxes and bunkers. The enemy had ideal positions from which to observe the advance of the troopers and to adjust barrages of accurately placed shells. It was an uphill battle for the cavalrymen. When one ridge had been captured, there always seemed to be another one ahead, higher and more dominating.

American artillery blasted at the caves and bunkers. Almost daily, Army Air Corps planes provided closely coordinated assistance with their bombs, napalm, and strafing. But the caves required specialized treatment, and they were given it with flamethrowers and TNT charges handled by the foot soldiers.

The engineers and the pioneer and demolition squads played prominent parts in the advance. Cave smashing had to be a thorough and complete procedure. Often, after the entrance of a cave had been sealed, the Jap occupants either reopened the entrance or erupted through the roof of the excavation; and sometimes after a cave had been completely cleaned out, the enemy would come back at night and reoccupy it. When the division commander, Major General Mudge, was observing the demolition of a cave on 28 February, he was wounded in the abdomen by a grenade thrown from the dark interior of an apparently empty excavation. His frequent presence in the thick of the fighting had always been an inspiration to the troops and the news of his injury spurred them on to redoubled efforts.

Brigadier General Hugh F. T. Hoffman assumed command of the division turning over his 2d Cavalry Brigade to Colonel William J. Bradley who had been leading the 8th Cavalry.

Opposition mounted daily as the 2d Cavalry Brigade penetrated toward the heart of the enemy

defenses. At the same time, the tempo of the air support was stepped up with a resultant decrease in enemy artillery, mortar and rocket fire. On the morning of 4 March, elements of the 7th Cavalry were hit by a Jap counterattack on the road 1000 yards west of Antipolo. Two American tanks were knocked out, one by a satchel charge and the other by a heavy mortar shell.

On 6 March, after a brief rest following the Battle of Manila, the 1st Cavalry Brigade Combat Team was moved into positions on the north flank of the 2d Cavalry BCT and took over the sector between it and the 6th Infantry Division which was also attacking the Shimbu Line. Meanwhile, the 302d Reconnaissance Troop was making a daring thrust that protected the 1st Cavalry Division's right flank and harassed the enemy from the rear.

The enemy continued its hopelessly suicidal tactics, remaining in caves until forced out by flamethrowers, and then launching into Banzai attacks that were doomed before they started. On 10 March, the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, flushed a cave with flamethrowers. After several bursts of fire, the operators withdrew just in time to stand clear of more than 100 of the enemy who emerged with their hair and clothes burning, each man carrying a rifle or tommy-gun. The Japanese opened fire and continued to shoot until they fell victims of the flames or of the cavalry machine guns which were trained on them. When the shooting had quieted down, 147 enemy dead were counted in front of the cave and there were others inside who never got out. Total enemy killed by the 1st Cavalry Division on this day alone were 402 actually counted.

This marked the culmination of the battle for Antipolo. This engagement was one of the fiercest and bitterest experienced by the cavalrymen during the entire war. By 12 March, when the 43d Infantry Division relieved the cavalry from this area, the south flank of the Shimbu Line was destroyed and the cavalrymen were in possession of the commanding escarpment which looked down on the pockmarked and scorched spot of earth that had once been the native village of Antipolo. Cavalry patrols had visited the ruins for two days and found them completely deserted.

Indicative of the valor and gallantry displayed during the fight for Antipolo is the fact that in the 20-day period from 21 February to 12 March, 92 Silver Stars and one DSC were won by members of the 1st Cavalry Division. Bronze Stars and Purple Hearts were even more numerous. To anyone interested in winning a Silver Star, a study of the basis on which this decoration was awarded during this engagement might prove enlightening. Forty-one per cent of the Silver Stars were awarded to men



who went to the rescue of wounded comrades under fire. Generally, it was a case of leaving the security of a foxhole or other shelter and crawling into an area beaten by enemy fire and then, with shells and bullets still striking all around, dragging the wounded man back to safety. Sometimes the rescuer picked up his comrade bodily and ran in plain sight of the enemy to his own lines. Frequently, the rescuer himself was wounded, sometimes mortally.

The next most prevalent type of bravery which brought the performer a Silver Star award was that of remaining in position despite the ferocity of an enemy attack. Twenty-two per cent of these decorations were given to men who stuck to their positions when the presence of enemy personnel or gunfire dictated a hasty and healthful withdrawal. In almost every case the heroic act turned the tide of the battle and enabled the recipient's unit to achieve its objective.

Another way in which to win a Silver Star was to lead an attack on a Japanese pillbox. Twenty per cent of the awards were made to men who led drives on enemy strongholds. Sometimes they crawled forward with grenades or TNT, sometimes they strode forward erect firing a BAR from the hip, and sometimes they made headlong dashes with flamethrowers. Always the enemy had the seeming advantage of thick walls to protect him while the attackers were frequently exposed to cross-fire from supporting installations.

Seventeen per cent of the Silver Stars were won by men who led daring combat or reconnaissance patrols into enemy territory. Some of these were made by individuals operating alone and unaided. Often they spent several days and nights behind enemy lines, passing within a few feet of the Japs to gather valuable information about the strength and disposition of enemy defenses. Not every patrol leader won a Silver Star, but his chances of receiving one were enhanced if he displayed cool presence of mind and conspicuous gallantry in extricating his men from a tight spot when the enemy was encountered.

Nearly one-quarter of the Silver Stars were awarded posthumously, the recipients having lost their lives in the performance of their brave deeds or soon thereafter.

Of the 92 Silver Stars awarded for gallantry in the Antipolo engagement, 41 went to members of the 7th Cavalry Regiment, 23 to the 8th Cavalry, 13 to the 12th Cavalry, 4 to the 5th Cavalry, 5 to the 1st Medical Squadron, 4 to members of artillery units, and 2 to members of the 8th Engineer Squadron.

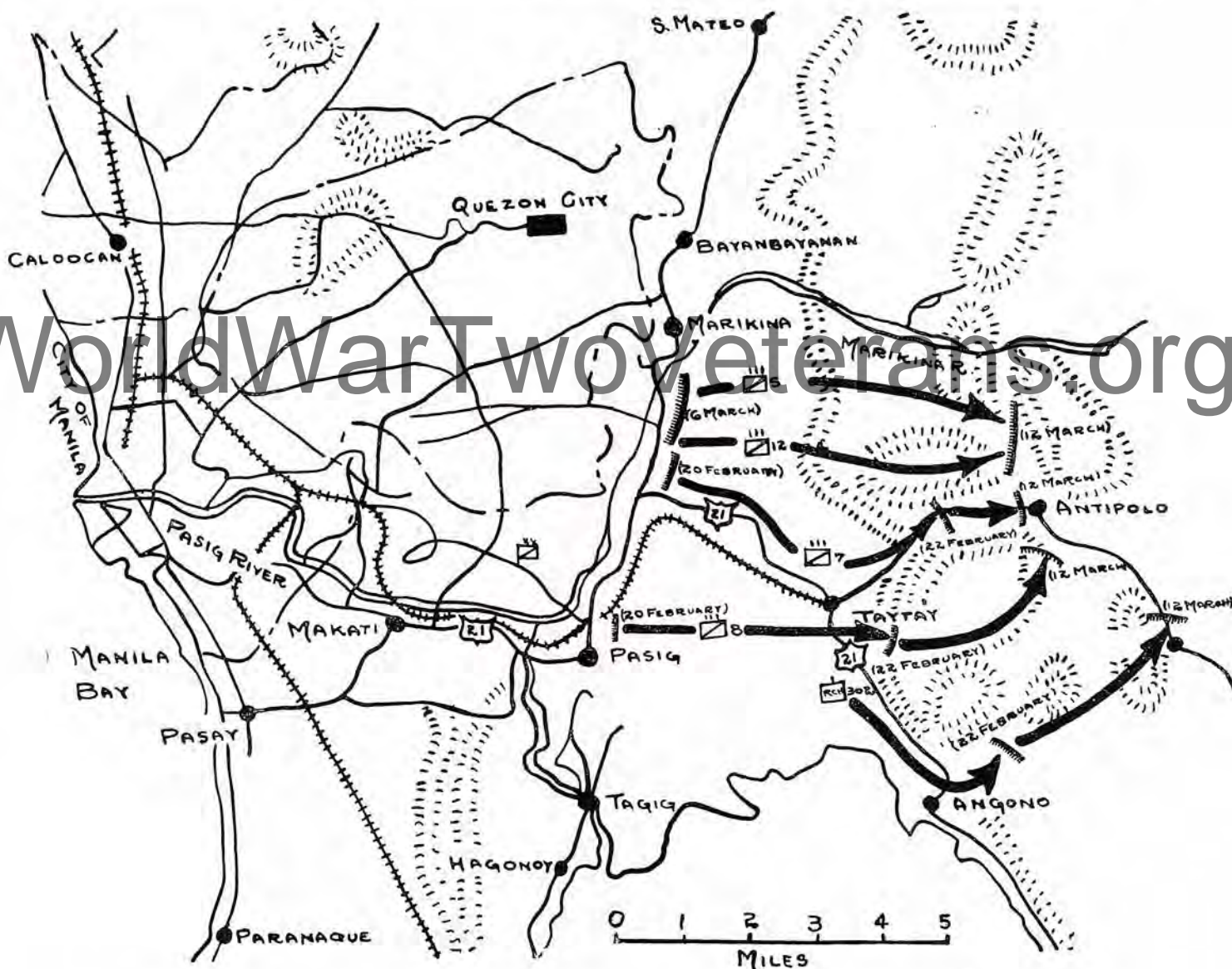
Pfc Calvin T. Lewis of Glasgow, Ky., a member

of "B" Troop, 7th Cavalry, was posthumously awarded a Distinguished Service Cross for the extraordinary heroism he displayed in putting a Japanese bunker out of commission. When the platoon in which he was a BAR-man was stopped dead by machine gun and rifle fire from the camouflaged bunker, he unhesitatingly volunteered to locate the position and knock it out. After carefully searching the terrain to the front, Lewis found the bunker and, with complete disregard for his own safety, crawled to a point on the flank of the bunker and opened automatic fire. After placing heavy fire through the gun slits on the side of the emplacement, he moved boldly to a position in front of it. The enemy spotted him and fired at him, but he sprayed the main opening with his BAR. In the exchange of fire, Lewis was mortally wounded, but he remained in his position engaging the enemy until all occupants of the bunker were killed. His extreme bravery in the face of grave and certain danger, was an inspiration to his comrades and in the highest traditions of the military service.

For gallantry in action during the fight for Antipolo, Silver Stars were awarded to the following named officers and enlisted men:

7th Cavalry Regiment: Sergeant Patrick J. McGrath, Bronx, N.Y., Headquarters Troop; Pvt Sidney G. Walls, Poteau, Okla., "A" Troop; Staff Sergeant Randolph Hyde, Hereford, Texas, "A" Troop; Sergeant Arthur R. Kennedy, Peaks Island, Maine, "D" Troop; Sergeant Arnulfo S. Calderon, El Paso, Texas, Band; Corporal Donald L. Castel, Oakland, Calif., Band; Staff Sergeant Elisha Roop, Stibman, Ky., "H" Troop; Lieut. John W. Feeley, Saginaw, Mich., "F" Troop; Pfc James H. Gallagher Central Falls, R.I., Medical Det.; Pfc Joe Brokofsky, Newark, N. J., "C" Troop; Sergeant Paul Gygax, Jr., Oakland, Calif., Band; Pfc Emil J. Votava, Veselyville, N. D., Band; Sergeant John J. Talley, Norman, Okla., Medical Det.; Sergeant Theron H. Holland, Forsuth, Mo., "B" Troop; Sergeant Arthur B. Craver, Princeton, Texas, "B" Troop; Sergeant Carl B. Goins, Levelland, Texas, "A" Troop; Lieut. Elbert H. Fontree Greybull, Wyo., "G" Troop; Lieut. Charles A. Stubblefield, Fayetteville, Tenn., Headquarters; Lieut. Colonel William L. Nash, Hayden, Ariz., Headquarters, 2d Squadron; Lieut. Joseph Brauner, Bridgeport, Conn., Weapons Troop; Technical Sergeant Carl R. Mather, El Paso, Texas, "A" Troop; Technical Sergeant Albin J. Janowiak, South Bend, Ind., "A" Troop; Lieut. William H. Swan, Tucson, Ariz., "G" Troop; Pvt Thaddeus J. Kwiatkowski, Syracuse, N. Y., "C" Troop; Sergeant Jack J. Bales, Waynesville, Mo., "C" Troop; Pfc Edward R. Casari, Orange, Mass., "E" Troop; Sergeant Earl L. Johnson, Baker, Mont., "B" Troop; Lieut. Laurence J. Reding, El Paso, Texas, Weapons





*IN ATTACKING THE SHIMBU LINE, the 1st Cavalry Division fought with regiments abreast over rough mountain terrain. The enemy had prepared defensive positions supported by coordinated artillery fire, but the troopers slugged their way forward with the help of airstrikes and their own artillery.*

Troop; Sergeant Preston D. Lewis, Rose Hill, Miss., Weapons Troop; Pfc James N. Tabor, Nashville, Tenn., "G" Troop; Staff Sergeant J. T. Harris, Goodwater, Ala., "E" Troop; Sergeant Hillborn W. James, Columbus, Miss., "E" Troop; Staff Sergeant Marco S. DeSanto, St. Albans, N.Y., Band; Sergeant Verlis L. Felkins, Kiowa, Colo., "C" Troop; Sergeant Ysabel A. Carmona, Roswell, New Mex., "B" Troop; Lieut. Archie L. Monk, Grand Saline, Texas, "B" Troop; Pfc J. L. Dandurand, Canby, Minn., "B" Troop; Sergeant Joseph J. Bentz, North Adams Mass., "A" Troop; Sergeant Edwin Jozwiak, South

Bend, Ind., "F" Troop; First Sergeant David E. Wright, Junction City, Kans., "A" Troop; Pvt Ace Hartman, Renton, Wash., "F" Troop; Pvt Elmer R. Judd Kansas City, Mo., "F" Troop.

8th Cavalry Regiment: Pfc Yndalcio P. Estrada, San Bernardino, Calif., "B" Troop; Sergeant Dennis Bell, Mt. Pleasant, Texas, "B" Troop; Corporal Charles E. Anderson, Indianapolis, Ind., Medical Det.; Pvt Hipolito N. Charles, San Antonio, Texas Medical Det.; Technical Sergeant Earl J. Punch, Westwego, La., "C" Troop; Major Charles H. Swift, Jr., Sioux City, Iowa, Medical Det.; Lieut. Ralph A.



Peake, Sistersville, W. Va., "B" Troop; Sergeant Edwin Loudermilk, San Bernardino, Calif., "D" Troop; Sergeant Harold H. Stafford, Denison, Texas "C" Troop; Colonel William J. Bradley, San Antonio, Texas, Regimental Commander; Pfc George M. Elam, Prairegrove, Ark., "B" Troop; Staff Sergeant Francis E. Brecht, Bordentown, N. J., "D" Troop; Pfc Aaron Fleischer, Brooklyn, N.Y., "D" Troop; Staff Sergeant Claude E. George, Kokomo, Ind., "D" Troop; Pfc Gorden L. Schuh, Appleton, Wis., "B" Troop; Staff Sergeant Christopher M. Moore, Newark, N. J., "B" Troop; Pfc Ruben Corona, Salinas, Calif., "E" Troop; Sergeant Henry T. Walls, Talikina, Okla., "B" Troop; Technical Sergeant Cecil T. Hale, El Paso, Texas, "D" Troop; Corporal Joseph A. DeMaria, Bounton, Penna., "B" Troop; Staff Sergeant William R. Rupe, Paducah, Ky., "D" Troop; Sergeant Marvin H. Lester, Cedar Bluff, Va., "D" Troop.

5th Cavalry Regiment: Pfc James C. Taylor, McKenzie, Tenn., "G" Troop; Pfc Walter T. Stewart, Holland, Mo., "A" Troop; Pfc Norman E. Carter, Kansas City, Kans., "A" Troop; Lieut. Salvatore A. Marucci, Orange, N.J., "F" Troop.

12th Cavalry Regiment: Staff Sergeant J. D. Fields, Vernon, Texas, Headquarters 1st Squadron; Pvt Alfredo Casanova, San Antonio, Texas, "C" Troop; Captain John J. Hardin, Jr., Marion, Ark., "B" Troop; Sergeant Fernando G. Livas, Weslaco, Texas, "A" Troop; Sergeant Roberto S. Garcia, Santa Maria, Texas, "A" Troop; Pfc Charles W. Morgan, Jr., Eskota, Texas, "C" Troop; Pfc John M. Robinson, Jr., Brooklyn, N.Y., "G" Troop; Sergeant Verrel H. Wright, Paden, Miss., "G" Troop; Captain Noble J. Taylor, Del Rio, Texas, "G" Troop; Technical Sergeant William C. Watson, Orange, Texas, "A" Troop; Pfc William W. Blough, Pittsburgh, Penna., Headquarters 2d Squadron; Sergeant Bill A. Wallace, Eastland, Texas, Headquarters 1st Squadron; Sergeant Rudolph L. Keplinger, Hagerstown, Md., "G" Troop.

1st Medical Squadron: Pfc Damon A. Clay, Fort Worth, Texas, 2d Collecting Troop; Pfc Joseph Henico, Hastings, Penna., 2d Collecting Troop; Pfc Ramon Y. Gutierrez, Tucson, Ariz., 2d Collecting Troop; Pfc C. J. Ashford, Terral, Okla., 2d Collecting Troop; Lieut. Fred A. Krabbe, Advance, Ind., 1st Collecting Troop.

8th Engineer Squadron: Corporal James I. Cook, Danbury, Wis., "C" Troop; Pvt Barney C. Clary, Gaffney, S. Car., Medical Det.

Division Artillery: Sergeant Harry E. Cox, Concordia, Kans., "A" Battery, 271st F.A. Battalion; Lieut. Jerome E. Patton, Portage, Mont., Headquarters 61st F. A. Battalion; Pfc Jeston C. Whittington Dillon, S. Car., Headquarters Battery, 82d F.A. Bat-

talion; Lieut. Richard H. Nelson, Brockton, Mass., Headquarters, 82d F.A. Battalion.

Following their relief from the Antipolo engagement on 12 March the cavalrymen were given a week's rest and rehabilitation. They needed it for they had been almost constantly on the go since the 20 October D-Day landing on Leyte.

In a little more than five weeks of fighting in the Luzon Campaign, the 1st Cavalry Division had sent 5,697 Japanese warriors to their ancestors and had captured 167 prisoners of war. During the same period, the troopers' losses had been 380 killed in action, 1,614 wounded, and 5 missing.

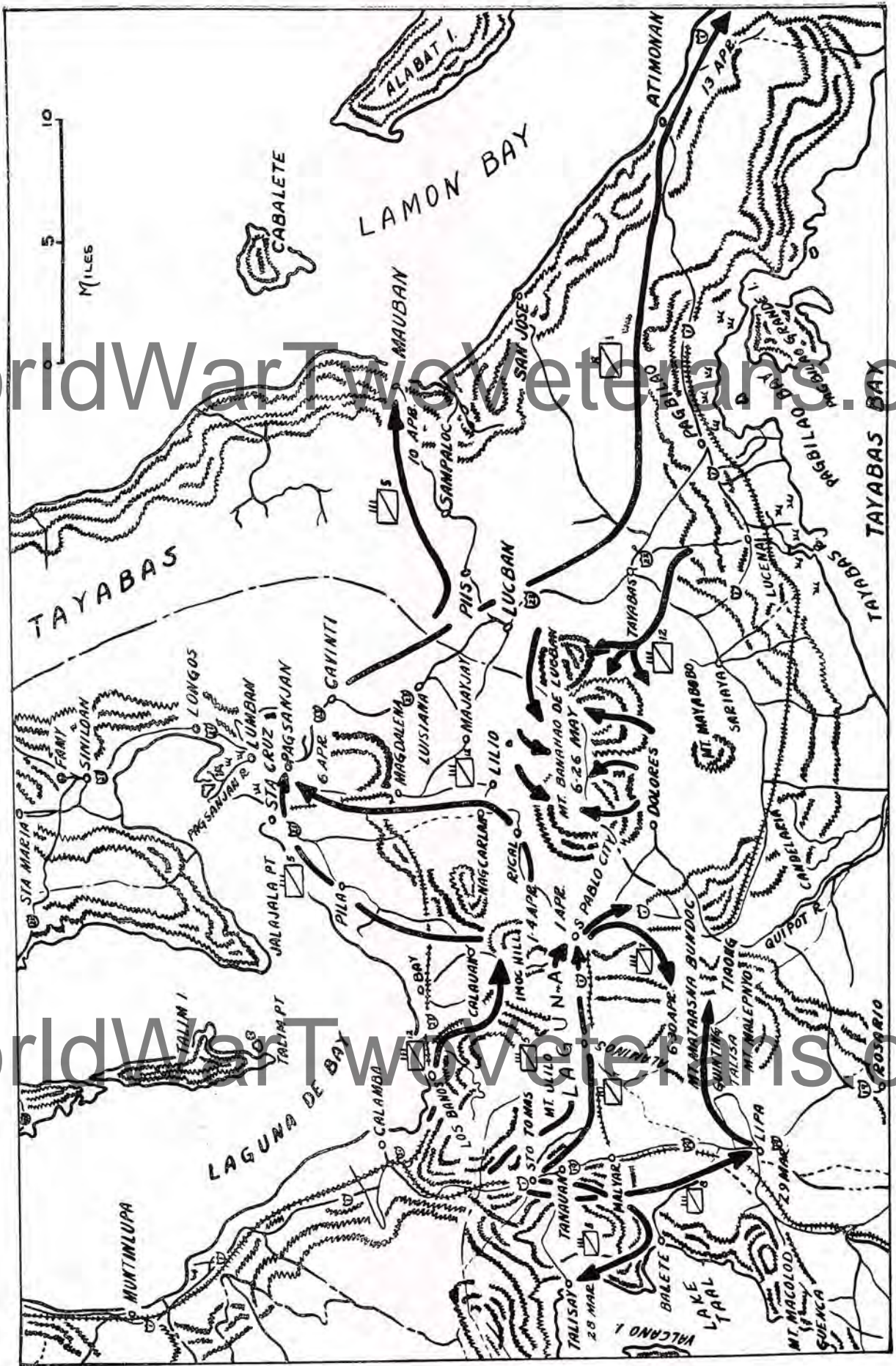
On 21 March, elements of the division left the rest area south of Manila and set forth with a mission to drive southward toward the Batangas Peninsula. Their path lay through the mountainous area between Laguna de Bay and Lake Taal. It was estimated that the enemy had 10,000 troops in southern Luzon comprising the Fuji Heidan under the command of Major General Fujishige. Intelligence sources reported a movement of some enemy forces to the north around the east shore of Laguna de Bay for the purpose of reinforcing his troops east of Manila.

The XIV Corps plan of maneuver called for a pincer movement converging on Lipa to be made by the 11th Airborne Division driving east through the corridor between Lake Taal and the southern shore of Luzon, while the 1st Cavalry Division swept southeast in its area. The immediate objective was to open the important Calamba-Lipa-Batangas road to supply traffic from Manila.

By 23 March, the 1st Cavalry Division had launched a two-pronged advance in its sector with the 1st Brigade Combat Team on the left flank moving eastward and skirting the southwest shore of Laguna de Bay, and the 2d Brigade Combat Team on the right. In pressing southward the 8th Cavalry met stubborn resistance at the town of Santo Tomas. In the taking of this town, the outstanding work of a "B" Troop flamethrower operator, Pfc Gordon L. Schuh of Appleton, Wis. was recognized by the award of an Oak-Leaf Cluster to the Silver Star he had already won at Antipolo.

In the seizing of Tanauan the next day, 25 March, another member of "B" Troop, Sergeant Edward M. Leonard of Santa Cruz, Calif., lost his life while winning a Silver Star for his heroism as a front line mortar observer. Two other members of the 8th Cavalry were rewarded for their gallantry in action on this occasion: Technical Sergeant Edward E. Fix, a "G" Troop man from Rossford, Ohio, who went to the rescue of the wounded under fire; and, Pfc Procopio G. Chavez, an "E" Troop man from Albuquerque, New Mex., wiped out enemy snipers in





**THE SPEED OF THE DRIVE** into southern Luzon enabled the 1st Cavalry Division to annihilate many of the enemy before they could get set. Isolated pockets of resistance near Mt. Malepunyo, Mt. Mataasna Bundoc, and Mt. Banahao required particularly determined efforts by the troopers to overcome them.



three concealed "spider holes" thereby saving the lives of men in his squad.

It was here at Tanauan that Brigadier General Hugh F. T. Hoffman, the Division Commander, distinguished himself once more and won a Silver Star for gallantry in action. While on one of his customary visits to the troops in contact with the enemy, General Hoffman elected to remain with a platoon that was bearing the brunt of a strong Japanese counterattack. His presence among the men and his calm demeanor under fire inspired the troops to hold their position and repulse the enemy. When supporting troops had silenced the enemy mortar fire and two other platoons had reached the advanced position, the troops made an irresistible attack which swept through and secured the key defenses of Tanauan. This incident was only one of many throughout the campaign wherein General Hoffman's presence with the front line troops added materially to their conquering determination and esprit de corps.

For the next two days, 26 and 27 March, the troopers cleaned the enemy from his well organized defenses at Tanauan. During the demolishing of the mutually supporting caves, bunkers, and culverts, a man from Service Troop, 8th Cavalry, Sergeant Warren L. Cape of Long Beach, Calif., won a Silver Star for boldly dynamiting two bunkers and their occupants.

The 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, followed the 8th Cavalry, mopping up bypassed pockets of Japs.

Meanwhile, in the 1st Brigade sector, the 12th Cavalry pried the enemy loose from Los Banos. When the Japs launched a night attack against the perimeter of "G" Troop, Pfc Russell A. Welch of Ashland, Ohio was seriously wounded by a hand grenade. He qualified for a Silver Star, however, when he remained at his machine gun and continued to deliver fire during the ensuing eight hours. His tenacity of purpose and grim determination kept him in action until relief could be sent forward.

As the 8th Cavalry was closing on Lipa, 29 March, the 7th Cavalry and 2d Brigade Headquarters had a short but bitter engagement with the enemy at Malvar airfield. When "D" Troop set up a perimeter for the night, the Japs launched an all out attack with about 300 men in the darkness. Two troopers won Distinguished Service Crosses for their extraordinary heroism in breaking up the attack. Pfc Louis Testa of St. Paul, Minn. fired his rifle at the advancing enemy until he had expended all of his ammunition. Then he took some hand grenades and rushed forward under fire. He threw the grenades into a defiladed enemy position along a railroad embankment. After returning to his troop's perimeter for more grenades he advanced to within 15 feet of a Jap mortar position where his

accurate grenade-throwing put the weapon out of operation by killing or driving off the crew. Testa made three additional forays delivering the grenades to the place where they would do the most good and thereby made a major contribution toward repelling the enemy attack.

Corporal Manuel Urenda of Colonias, New Mex. operated a light machine gun in the perimeter. Although he was painfully wounded four different times by mortar and rifle fire, he refused to be evacuated and stayed at his gun keeping it firing with devastating effect. When the assault was finally repulsed, a large quantity of munitions and twelve Japanese dead were found in front of his position.

Two other "D" Troop men won Silver Stars for their gallantry in action during this battle. They were Pvt Paul C. Downs of Prescott, Ariz. who prevented a breakthrough in his section of the perimeter when he ran forward to an abandoned machine gun and put it back into action; and Pfc Jesus Trejo of Laredo, Texas who, after receiving a painful wound in his right shoulder, continued to feed a machine gun by using his left arm and refused first aid until the attack had been dissipated.

When, in the early morning darkness, an attack was launched against the perimeter of the 2d Brigade Headquarters Troop, the brigade executive officer, Colonel Alfred G. Tuckerman of New York City, reorganized the defenses and then called for a volunteer squad and two tanks that were standing by to carry the attack to the enemy across the airstrip. He led his small group with such aggressive determination that twenty-nine of the enemy were killed.

Later in the day a tank was sent to reconnoiter the airstrip to insure that no enemy were hiding for a possible night counterattack. Six men from 2d Brigade Headquarters Troop accompanied the tank riding on top of it until a burst of enemy machine gun fire forced them to dismount and seek safety behind the vehicle. The tank opened fire on the machine gun but soon a shell became lodged in its 75mm gun. The enemy, meanwhile, brought more machine guns to bear on the tank. It was then that Technical Sergeant Albert McMillin of Everton, Mo. distinguished himself by mounting the tank, removing the rammer staff, and dislodging the shell. The result was that three heavy machine guns and nineteen Japanese were put out of action, no casualties were sustained by the troopers, and Sergeant McMillin got a Silver Star.

On 29 March, the 12th Cavalry moved on from Los Banos toward Calauan. There the outstanding courage and superb leadership of Technical Sergeant Dan R. Morrison of Hazleton, Ind. won him a Silver Star when he took a platoon from "E" Troop into



the town and spent all day outmaneuvering and inflicting heavy casualties on a much larger Japanese unit.

At noon on 30 March, patrols of the 8th Cavalry made contact with the 11th Airborne Division just south of Lipa which the 8th had taken the previous day against disorganized but desperate enemy opposition.

In the 7th Cavalry area near Mt. Olila, a man from "F" Troop, Pvt John J. Gilmore of Framingham, Mass., was cited for rescuing a wounded comrade under fire.

By nightfall of 31 March, the 302d Reconnaissance Troop had advanced east to Pila on the shore of Laguna de Bay without encountering many of the enemy.

As the 1st Cavalry Division intensified its efforts to move eastward and contact the 43d Infantry Division, thereby severing the Japanese north-south route, it became apparent that the enemy had adopted a policy of dropping back and setting up isolated strong-points that were generally located in dominating hill positions. The Japs made no attempt to coordinate their defenses nor did they engage in any large scale counterattacks. They simply holed up and waited for inevitable death or capture, resisting bitterly when attacked but making little effort to stem the relentless advance of the American troops. Important road junctions and communications centers were left unoccupied, or were so feebly held that the fast moving troopers were able to seize these key points before the enemy could muster strength to defend the threatened areas.

The 1st Cavalry Division continued its advance eastward in two columns abreast. The 1st BCT followed Highway 21 along the south shore of Laguna de Bay and drove through the town of Bay to Santa Cruz. It captured Pagsanjan on 6 April, and Cavinti and Luisiana the next day. On 6 April, a patrol from the 5th Cavalry made contact with the 43d Division north of Pagsanjan. The 2d BCT took Alaminos against comparatively light resistance and continued on through San Pablo to capture, on 7 April, a road junction just south of Luisiana. At San Pablo, the 7th Cavalry was detached from the column to turn its attention to the north and east slopes of Mt. Malepunyo where the Japs had taken up defensive positions in the hill mass.

During the first week of April, Silver Stars were awarded for several acts of bravery and gallantry in action. At Alaminos a man from "A" Troop, 5th Cavalry, Pfc Joseph P. Hendricks of Sells, Ariz. lost his life when he courageously rushed an enemy machine gun. Near Santa Rosa, the commanding officer of "B" Troop, 7th Cavalry, Captain Wilbur P. Jackson of El Paso, Texas reconnoitered enemy ter-

ritory and then led his troop in an attack. Although he was wounded, he supervised the organizing of defenses against a counter attack. Two days later Captain Roger O. King of Brooklyn, N.Y., commander of "C" Troop, led his men in the capture of Santa Rosa and directed them as they fought their own private engagement for three days. When the 12th Cavalry was fighting in the vicinity of Imoc Hill, a Headquarters Troop man from Woodstock, Va., Pfc Lauck H. Ramey, showed outstanding heroism in leading his squad in a charge on the enemy and Lieut. John A. Hussey of Bangor, Me. and "G" Troop was wounded when he led an attack against a Jap position but he nevertheless resumed the offensive and directed the capture of two Jap 105mm guns.

Four members of the Military Police Platoon were cited for their brave actions in holding off a Japanese attempt at an amphibious landing at San Roque, a locality on the southern shore of Laguna de Bay. The enemy got ashore but their mission was frustrated by the M.P.'s guarding near-by installations. Silver Stars were awarded to Corporal Donald R. Johnson of Onaway, Mich., Pvt Louis Menne of New York City, Pfc Edward F. Witkowski of Taylor, Penna., and Pfc Ralph Wombacker of Moscow, Penna. The awards to Witkowski and Wombacker were posthumous as they were both fatally wounded while stemming the attack.

When the Japs attacked a 7th Cavalry position near Mapait Hill on 6 April using grenades and satchel charges, four men who stuck to their artillery observation post won Silver Stars. Two members of "C" Battery, 99th Field Artillery Battalion, Pvt James G. McLeroy of Mt. Pleasant, Texas and Lieut. Rocco Stigliani of Farmingdale, L.I., N.Y., and two members of Headquarters, 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, Captain Urcel L. Bell of New Orleans, La. and Lieut. Raphael P. Fromm of Junction, Ill. were instrumental in breaking up the assault. Lieut. Stigliani was mortally wounded while attempting to call down artillery fire on the attackers.

A Distinguished Service Cross was won during this period by Pvt Nelson D. Palmer of Springfield, Mass. Palmer was in command of a guerrilla force assigned the mission of destroying an isolated enemy position in the vicinity of Lipa. When unexpected enemy fire filled his men with panic, Palmer dashed to the front and rallied his wavering command. His personal example and words of encouragement saved the day. At the height of the attack with success in sight, Palmer was killed but his heroic performance will long be remembered. He was a member of "G" Troop, 8th Cavalry.

On 10 April, a penetration to the east coast of Luzon was made by "A" Troop, 5th Cavalry, when



they entered Mauban. The town was occupied in force the following day and patrols were sent along the shore of Lamon Bay toward Antimonan just reached by the 11 Airborne Division. Both divisions now had troops disposed across nearly the entire breadth of southern Luzon and both divisions were engaged in the elimination of Japs on Mt. Malepunyo. The 2d BCT of the 1st Cavalry Division was on the north side of it and the 11th Airborne Division was on the south side.

A reshuffling of division boundaries occurred on 12 April with the result that the 1st Cavalry Division took over the responsibility for the eastern sector and initiated a drive southward on the Bicol Peninsula to eliminate enemy resistance there and contact the 158th Regimental Combat Team which was working its way northward from Legaspi.

As the 7th Cavalry drove on Mt. Malepunyo two men from Weapons Troop won Silver Stars for rescuing wounded under fire in the vicinity of Santa Clara. They were Pfc Robert D. Underwood of Levelland, Texas, and Corporal Millard G. Gray of Anadarko, Okla. When a patrol from Headquarters Troop approached a patch of woods near Santa Clara two men were killed and the others were pinned to the ground by a shattering burst of enemy machine gun fire from the thicket. Three men in a jeep which was mounted with a machine gun came to the rescue and set up their position in an exposed area so that they might better give the Japs the treatment prescribed for such situations. Pfc John F. Copeland of Sparks, Neb. was the daring driver of the vehicle. Pfc Renaud J. Michaud of Frenchville, Me. and Pfc Richard T. Smith of Dallas, Texas manned the machine gun. They knocked out one enemy machine gun and neutralized another thereby relieving their beleaguered comrades and enabling the attack to proceed successfully. Michaud was mortally wounded in this gallant action but his deed and those of Copeland and Smith were rewarded with Silver Stars.

Aside from the Japs on the Bicol, the only major Japanese stronghold remaining in southern Luzon was at Mt. Malepunyo, although there were a few small groups of enemy stragglers scattered throughout the area. The 2d BCT had initially developed enemy positions in the Mt. Malepunyo sector when it sent the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry onto Mapait Hill 29 March, but by 6 April the entire 2d Brigade was committed to the northern and eastern approaches of Mt. Malepunyo. Gains were made slowly and the going was tough.

During an attack in which tanks of the 603d Tank Company supported the 8th Cavalry on 11 April, one of the tanks was hit by enemy shells, its commander wounded and communications disrupted.

The company commander, Lieut. George H. Hallanan of Pierrepont Manor, N.Y. won a Silver Star for the gallant manner in which he restored communications, evacuated the wounded under intense fire, and coordinated the attack so that it was completed successfully.

As the battle for Mt. Malepunyo continued, two members of the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry were cited for gallantry in action on 12 April. Sergeant Jesse Riddell, an "F" Troop man from Irvine, Ky. ran pointblank at a concealed enemy machine gun and killed its four crew members; Lieut. Curtis L. Elliott, an "E" Troop platoon commander from Bellefontaine, Ohio, amid a hail of enemy bullets, directed mortar fire on one hostile machine gun, neutralized another with his rifle, and was killed trying to get a third one.

On 18 April, Technical Sergeant James W. Osborne of "B" Troop, 8th Cavalry and Jacksonville, Fla. led a tank into enemy territory on foot. He pointed out targets so that the tank's gun could fire on them and when two Japanese soldiers tried to rush the tank with grenades, he dropped them both with his rifle. His bravery won him a Silver Star.

The next day three other members of the 8th Cavalry were also cited for gallantry in action. They were Sergeant Allen J. Marrior of "F" Troop and Belle Rose, La. who singlehandedly rushed forward with a machine gun and silenced an active enemy bunker thereby enabling his wounded comrades to be rescued; Sergeant Nolan D. Bailey, Jr. of Headquarters Troop and Sylacauga, Ala. who stayed at his switchboard during the height of a Japanese barrage and repaired the wiring so that artillery fire data could be transmitted; and Captain James L. McHenry of "C" Troop and Brighton, Mass. who demonstrated outstanding leadership in handling his troop and in directing counterbattery fire against the enemy.

On 21 April, Sergeant Noble Hamiter of Dallas, Texas, a man from the 2d Collecting Troop of the 1st Medical Squadron, won a Silver Star for his bravery in rescuing two wounded men under intense enemy fire.

The 7th Cavalry (less the 2d Squadron) was relieved from the Mt. Malepunyo area on 20 April and assigned the mission of launching a drive northeast from Siniloan to establish solid contact with the enemy. The remainder of the 2d BCT stayed in the Mt. Malepunyo area and continued to pry the Japs out of their entrenched positions in the vicinity of Mt. Mataasna Bundoc.

On 22 April, Lieut. Colonel Raymond F. King of El Paso, Texas, commander of the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry, was killed in action while leading his unit at Mt. Malepunyo. His earnest solicitude for



the welfare of the front-line troops and his determination to give them the benefit of his personal direction and battle experience caused him to take great risks in the face of the enemy. While reconnoitering a path of advance in front of his unit, he was struck down by a sniper's bullet.

On 23 April, the 8th Cavalry, supported by the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, was attached to the 11th Airborne Division. The 2d Cavalry Brigade Headquarters then moved from Alaminos to Siniloan to join elements of the 7th Cavalry operating eastward from there. By 26 April, the enemy on Mt. Mataasna Bundoc had been sufficiently compressed so that the 2d Squadron (less "F" Troop) was relieved and sent to Siniloan. With the help of heavy air strikes against the enemy's forward positions on 27 April, the American troops moved in on Mt. Mataasna Bundoc and broke the back of enemy resistance there.

During the mop-up which followed a medical aid man from Weapons Troop, 8th Cavalry, Corporal Leo V. Tomlin of Union, Miss. won an Oak-Leaf Cluster to go with the Silver Star he had won in the Admiralty Campaign. When he and four others were wounded by the explosion of a mortar shell, he secured his medical aid kit and crawled to the nearest wounded man. Unable to work because of his many wounds, Tomlin had himself carried to each wounded man in succession and personally directed the treatment of each. Not until he had cared for the others would he allow his own wounds to be treated.

On the night of 2-3 May, the 8th Cavalry and "F" Troop, 7th Cavalry were released to join the 2d Cavalry Brigade.

While troops of the 2d Brigade were busy at Mt. Malepunyo, the 12th Cavalry was spread out across Batangas Province scouring the countryside for Jap stragglers and keeping lines of communication open. The 5th Cavalry, meanwhile, pushed south into the Bicol Peninsula meeting light enemy resistance in the vicinity of Flat Top Mountain. Compared with some of the fighting the 5th had engaged in elsewhere, its advance down the Bicol was only feebly opposed in scattered disorganized skirmishes with remnants believed to be of the 105th Japanese Infantry Division.

On 18 April, the 12th Cavalry command post opened at Gumaca and the regiment began to secure the line of communication to Pitogo as well as the vast area from Calauag back through the Antimonan-Mauban-Lucena-Pagsanjan-Los Banos road. By 21 April, the 5th Cavalry had cleared small enemy groups from the Flat Top Mountain area. After finding mostly abandoned positions and some medical supplies, they resumed the advance through Camarines Norte Province without opposition. The

1st Squadron, 5th Cavalry, was detached from the regiment as brigade reserve in the Sumalong area, but the rest of the 5th Cavalry moved on toward Labo, occupying it on 24 April. The regiment then sent a patrol to the coast at Paracale where an enemy radar had been reported. The station was found to have been destroyed by U.S. air action.

The advance continued, and Daet was occupied on 25 April. From there patrols moved southeast to the Bicol River and reported the entire area free of enemy. The 5th Cavalry made its first enemy contact since Flat Top Mountain when, on 26 April, "E" Troop routed about 100 Japs northeast of Santol Bay, killing twelve of them.

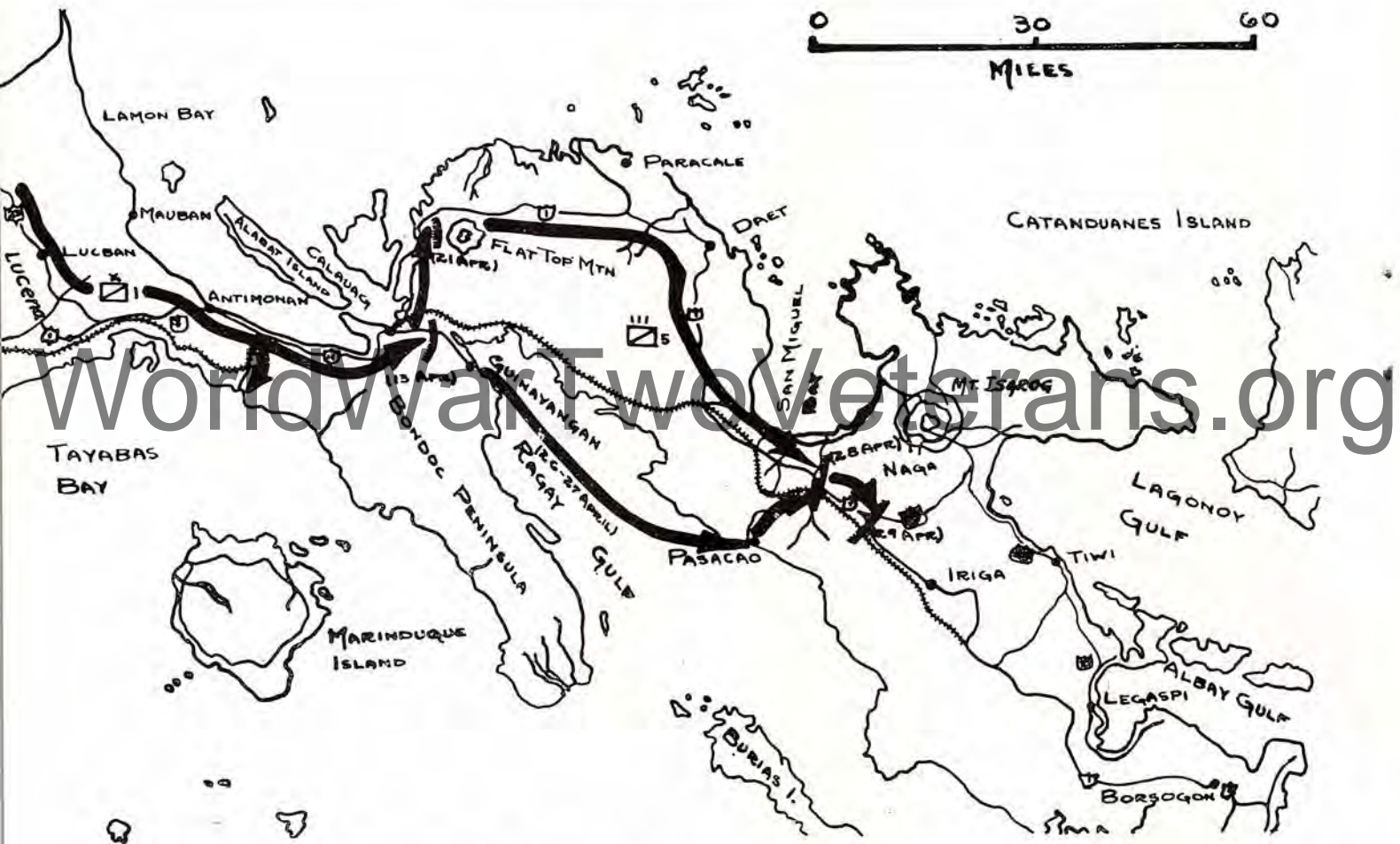
During the fighting near Binawangan, Lieut. William L. Fitzgerald of Columbia, Mo., had the duty of observing artillery fire for Battery "A" of the 82d Field Artillery Battalion. In order to have radio communication he was forced to set up his OP in an area outside "E" Troop's perimeter. He later received a Silver Star for staying in business there for one night and two days despite the fact that sniper fire hit the heel of his shoe, his wrist watch, and his helmet.

With the enemy cleared from Camarines Norte Province, attention was turned farther southward. Between the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, and the 158th RCT lay miles of poor roads and the wide Bicol River which would have to be crossed without the aid of landing craft. Brigadier General Stadler, commander of the 1st Cavalry Brigade, decided on a maneuver that called for another amphibious landing for the 5th Cavalry. "B" Troop and a troop of Engineers were assembled at Guinayangan and on the night of 26-27 April they were transported by water to Pasacao where they landed unopposed just after midnight. By the following noon, "B" Troop had a patrol in Naga without any trouble from the enemy. The remainder of the 2d Squadron (less "A" Troop) moved by water to Pasacao and by land to Naga on 28 April. Other elements of the 5th Cavalry RCT moved over land from Daet, reaching the Bicol River on 29 April. Two days later the 5th Cavalry RCT was placed under the operational control of the 158th RCT with which it made contact on 2 May.

As a patrol from "A" Troop, 5th Cavalry, was advancing near Calauag, on 27 April, Pfc Maurice A. Dory of Austin, Nevada perceived three enemy soldiers armed with bayonets charging the automatic rifleman of the leading squad. The BAR-man's weapon failed to function, but Dory with extremely cool courage placed himself front of his comrade and accurately plugged all three of the Japs. His brave act won him a Silver Star.

On 3 May, the 5th Cavalry RCT closed at Naga





*THE DRIVE DOWN THE BICOL Peninsula resulted in the clearing of all enemy resistance from southeastern Luzon. After making overland and amphibious movements to Naga, the 5th Cavalry Regiment joined forces with the 158th RCT for the final mop-up.*

and made preparations to launch a coordinated drive to rid the Bicol of the remaining Jap forces whose strength was estimated to be about 3,000. The attack was directed toward Mt. Isarog. When the troops got there, they found fewer enemy than originally anticipated. The mountainous area contained the usual caves and light machine gun emplacements constructed to control the trails, but as the troops advanced, they found the positions vacated. A thorough search of the mountain did not disclose the former occupants. Patrolling of the peninsula continued during the month of May. Early in June the 5th Cavalry reverted to control of the 1st Cavalry Division and returned to Lucena.

While the operations in the Bicol Peninsula progressed, the 1st Cavalry Brigade had been securing the route from Lucena to Antimonan to Calauag. As soon as it was determined to be free from enemy threat, the 1st Brigade (less 5th Cavalry) moved back to the vicinity of Lucena and commenced searches

into Mt. Banahao. The 12th Cavalry and the 302d Reconnaissance Troop operated long range combat patrols into Mt. Banahao from all sides. Almost daily contacts were had with the enemy in small groups or individual stragglers. Many Japanese were killed in widely scattered and isolated engagements, but no organized resistance was encountered.

By 3 May the enemy at Mt. Malepunyo had been sufficiently subdued to permit the release of the 3th Cavalry from that sector. The unit commenced movement on that date to Siniloan to rejoin the 2d Cavalry Brigade there. Then began the final phase of the campaign for southern Luzon—the advance to Infanta.

When the 7th Cavalry was relieved from Mt. Malepunyo on 20 April it went to Siniloan and took over from elements of the XI Corps the mission of securing Infanta. In that area on the east of Luzon the straggling remains of the Japanese forces were



attempting to concentrate. The route from Siniloan to Infanta lay over a narrow, rutted, muddy trail that ran through jungle-covered mountains. This trail was ideal for the Japanese to defend. At Famy Technical Sergeant Howard E. Huibregtse of Ripon, Wis. who was a platoon leader in "A" Troop, won a Silver Star for the skillful manner in which he shepherded his men from under a heavy enemy barrage.

When the 7th Cavalry approached the hairpin turns in the vicinity of the Kapatalan Sawmill, progress was halted by an enemy strongpoint consisting of about 300 members of the Japanese Gyoro Base unit. For the next few days the advance toward Infanta was stalemated while strength was being built up and patrols were pinpointing targets for the air force to obliterate with bombs and napalm. Meanwhile patrols were sent north toward Pagus to feel out the enemy in that direction. When one such patrol ran into an enemy holdout, one trooper was wounded and the others were forced to seek cover behind a rice-paddy dike. The enemy prepared to attack. Rather than take it lying down, three members of the patrol decided to take offensive action and save themselves and their comrades if possible. These brave troopers were Pfc Margarito G. Lopez of San Antonio, Texas, Sergeant Earl E. Shappell of Leesport, Tenn., and Pvt Delbert E. Rogers of Wattensaw, Ark. They sprang from their cover and charged the enemy who were advancing near-by under the shelter of a river bank. With grenades and rifle fire they killed three Japanese soldiers and drove the rest away. Their wounded comrade was saved and the three men won Silver Stars.

On 2 May, another 7th Cavalry man, Pfc Earl E. Zweifel of Pacific, Mo., and "B" Troop, won a Silver Star for gallantry in action at Famy. When the enemy infiltrated to within a few yards of Zweifel's machine gun position and threw a grenade at him, he picked up the grenade and tossed it back. It exploded just as he released it, seriously injuring both his hands. Nevertheless, he saved his machine gun from enemy capture and enabled his comrades to make a safe withdrawal.

With the division responsible for such a large area as had been overrun in the preceding three weeks, it was inevitable that certain bypassed groups of Jap stragglers would cause trouble. One such heavily armed group was reported to be terrorizing civilians in the vicinity of Candelaria on 3 May. A squad from the Division Military Police Platoon set forth to round up the enemy and put them out of action. Two members of the M.P. squad were awarded Silver Stars as a result of their actions in annihilating this numerically superior Jap patrol. Staff Sergeant John

McCaughey of Brooklawn, N.J. was mortally wounded when he boldly advanced to draw enemy fire and force the Japs to expose their concealed positions. Major Richard A. Carver of Dayton, Ohio organized and led an attack force that relieved the M.P. squad. Although seriously and painfully wounded he would not allow himself to be evacuated until his mission had been accomplished.

Upon the return of the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, and the 8th Cavalry to the control of the 2d Cavalry Brigade during early May, the strength of the latter organization was then sufficient to permit the launching of an attack on 7 May. Supported by massed artillery fires and a heavy airstrike, the 7th Cavalry led off with squadrons abreast against Japanese positions on the high ground commanding the Sawmill area and the road leading to it. By nightfall, 27 caves had been sealed, more than 200 Japanese defenders lay dead, and the ridges had been secured.

The heroic actions of three troopers who made important contributions to the success of the attack on the Sawmill are recorded in the Silver Star citations for that day's fighting. When the enemy unexpectedly opened fire on a bulldozer which was making badly needed repairs to the road, Lieut. George N. Renshaw of Detroit, Mich. and "C" Troop, 8th Engineer Squadron, first ordered his men to the protection of a nearby cut in a bend in the road. Then, seeing that the enemy were using grenades and demolition charges in an attempt to destroy the bulldozer, which was the only one of these critical pieces of machinery within 40 miles, Lieut. Renshaw personally directed the setting up of three machine guns which poured such fire into the enemy position that it was temporarily silenced. The bulldozer operator ran forward to his machine but before he could start its engine, another enemy machine gun opened up from a different location. Fully exposing himself, Lieut. Renshaw ran to his machine gun position and by directing the fire of two of the guns onto the new enemy outbreak and keeping the third trained on the original firing point, he enabled the operator to move his dozer. Under cover of these guns, he withdrew his men and their equipment to safety without a single casualty and only minor damage to the bulldozer.

Corporal Reuben E. Anderson of Minneapolis, Minn., another member of "C" Troop, 8th Engineer Squadron, was cited for courageously moving forward under fire and demolishing an enemy pillbox. His action not only killed the Jap occupants, but it saved the lives of ten guerrillas who had been pinned down by machine gun fire from the pillbox.

Sergeant Lonnie A. Horton, a 7th Cavalry "A" Trooper from Tucumcari, New Mexico, led his squad in a headlong rush at a Japanese pillbox, and in so



doing routed an enemy force of fifteen men.

The capture of the heights above the Sawmill made possible the clearing out of the remaining enemy groups inside. The advance toward the east coast then continued. Small enemy groups protested with sporadic mortar and small arms fire, but the troopers swept them aside. The route became increasingly difficult. Two miles from the coast the trail became so poor that even jeeps could not progress. Moving onward by foot, the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry on 13 May reached the shoreline in the vicinity of Binangonan Point and found no Japs there. The 1st Squadron followed close behind probing the jungle on each side of the trail to clear it of enemy troops.

The 8th Cavalry, meanwhile, operated in the area north of Siniloan scouring the countryside around Santa Maria and in the upper reaches of the Santa Maria River where, with the aid of attached Filipino guerrillas, they killed a number of Jap stragglers who had been driven away from the defenses of the Sawmill.

Instead of trying to reinforce and supply the 7th Cavalry by using the nearly impassable trail through the mountains, the 2d Brigade sent troops and supplies by landing craft from Mauban to Binangonan Point. For a week, while strength was being built, the 7th Cavalry sent patrols northward along the shore of Lamong Bay toward Real. Farther on was the town of Infanta, the ultimate objective of the drive where, it was believed, the Japs were concentrating for another stand.

It was near Real that Captain Christian Gronbeck, Jr. of East Barnet, Vermont added another incident to his distinguished record of bravery and self-sacrifice as a 7th Cavalry surgeon. When the advance party of his squadron was unexpectedly taken under fire at close range, two troopers were killed and a third seriously wounded. Realizing that vital time would be lost if he waited for the squadron to launch an attack so that the wounded man could be evacuated without danger, Captain Gronbeck crawled twenty yards into enemy territory to the side of the casualty. Although two enemy bullets ripped through his clothing he remained unscathed and succeeded in dragging his patient back to safety where he administered medical care.

The next day, 18 May, three other 7th Cavalrymen won Silver Stars. Pfc Edward J. Biernacki of Perth Amboy, N.J. lost his life in a gallant attempt to

rescue a wounded comrade under fire.

Corporal John M. Olguin of San Pedro, Calif. crawled fifty yards through dense underbrush with both friendly and enemy fire crashing around him to assist two wounded men to safety. He carried one and led the other back to the security of their own lines. His act definitely saved the lives of his two comrades.

As "A" Troop was advancing from Binangonan Point toward Real, the point of the troop met withering small arms and machine gun fire from concealed Japanese positions. The leading platoon was quickly pinned to the ground by the intense and accurate fusillade. What might have been a disaster for the troop was prevented by the courageous action and quick thinking of Lieut. Joe D. Crane of Athens, Texas who audaciously led his flank guard platoon in a maneuver which hit the enemy on their right, annihilating fifteen of their number and capturing two machine guns and twelve rifles.

As the 7th Cavalry approached Real, naval gunboats patrolled the shoreline to prevent the enemy from escaping by means of rafts or native bancas. From offshore a barrage was laid on the town of Real and on other places where the enemy was suspected of having installations. Even so, the enemy was able to oppose the 7th Cavalry with some artillery and mortar fire. Two miles south of Real an enemy force of about 200 men put up a sharp fight before being forced to withdraw. Real was seized on 21 May. The next day, "D" Troop led the attack toward Gumian. As this troop was consolidating a newly gained position, a Japanese force of about 150 counterattacked with mortars, machine guns, rifles, and grenades. The ferocity of the attack and the excellent concealment afforded by the dense foliage enabled the enemy to come within ten yards of the perimeter before being detected. Three men were awarded Silver Stars for the important roles they played in repulsing this enemy onslaught. They were: Technical Sergeant Pirtle H. Kennett of Jasonville, Indiana who stood erect fully exposed to enemy view and fire so that he could better direct the operations of his machine gunners; Pvt William A. Harden of New Hope, Ala. who manned his machine gun until it was disabled by enemy fire and then held the Japs at bay with his carbine while his assistant went to the rear and procured a new steam condensing hose to replace the one which had been shot away; and Lieut. Charles E. Paul of Cam-

☞ AFTER CAPTURING KAPATALAN SAWMILL on 7 May, the 2d Cavalry Brigade launched a drive through the rugged Sierra Madre Mountains which ended with the capture of Infanta by the 7th Cavalry Regiment on 25 May.



den, Ark. who, after taking the precaution of ordering his men to remain under cover of their foxholes, returned to his observation post and directed mortar fire with such deadly close-in accuracy that the enemy was forced to withdraw and leave behind many dead and large quantities of weapons and ammunition.

While the 7th Cavalry was capturing Gumian on 23 May, the 8th Cavalry continued to play hide-and-seek with the Japs around Santa Maria. On this date, a patrol from "F" Troop which was comprised mainly of new replacements who were receiving an introduction to the art of Jap-hunting, ran into a concealed enemy force which outnumbered them. The platoon sergeant was seriously wounded. Pfc Jack Lambert of Burnsville, Miss., an instructor, assumed command and took over the responsibility of extricating the patrol from its critical situation. Realizing that reinforcements were urgently needed, Lambert ran through enemy fire across an open field and on to his troop where he gave information of the best route to be used in outflanking the enemy. Then, fearing that his tense and inexperienced men might make the mistake of firing on the rescue party he raced again across the open field and gave them proper instructions. By his calm, cool leadership, the wounded were removed and the patrol was withdrawn safely.

A 12th Cavalry reconnaissance patrol around Lucban on the same day ran into a concealed Japanese pillbox. Pfc Robert P. Augenstein of Brooklyn, N.Y., and "H" Troop, disposed of it by engaging in a grenade duel and finally throwing grenades through the vision slits in the face of deadly enemy fire.

The town of Infanta was taken by the 7th Cavalry on 25 May. Lieut Colonel Anderson's organized guerrillas operating around Infanta assisted with the attack and enabled the 7th Cavalry to enter the town without opposition.

At dusk on 28 May, a small Japanese force armed with machine guns, mortars, and rifles attacked the regimental and squadron command posts of the 7th Cavalry which were situated near Real. The attack came as a surprise because of a hurricane which was raging at the time. With no help available, the regimental commander, Colonel Walter E. Finnegan of Boston, Mass., set about restoring order with his small headquarters force consisting of clerks, outpost guards, and a few guerrillas. Displaying exemplary leadership, Colonel Finnegan launched his small force into a surprise attack which completely stunned the enemy causing them to flee in disorder. It was this same outstanding leadership of Colonel Finnegan's that was responsible for the many successes of his regiment. He was awarded a Silver Star for his gallantry at Real.

During this same attack the commanding officer

of the 99th Field Artillery Battalion, Lieut, Colonel Charles E. Tenneson of Haverford, Penna., was cited for gallantry in action because he went through intense small arms fire into an exposed area and rescued a wounded officer. Again at great risk to his life, he crawled twenty yards through an open space to a position outside the perimeter from which he adjusted artillery fire on the enemy mortars and machine guns. Partially exposed to enemy fire he remained in that position for some thirty minutes until the attack was repulsed.

While the 7th Cavalry was making its final drive into Infanta, elements of the 8th Cavalry combed the area from the north shore of Laguna de Bay to the Agos River. After the fall of Infanta, the 2d Brigade sent out strong patrols to search both sides of the Agos River. In the course of one of these patrols, conducted by "F" Troop, 8th Cavalry, the enemy opened fire at the troopers as they were moving along a stream-bed. The artillery forward observer, Staff Sergeant Wilburn T. Blackwell of Ada, Okla. and Battery "A", 99th Field Artillery Battalion, who was accompanying the patrol, left the cover of the stream-bed and, despite the danger involved, voluntarily went to a near-by exposed rice-paddy where he set up his radio and adjusted artillery fire on the enemy. His heroism won him a Silver Star.

By 1 June, possession of southern Luzon was firmly in the hands of the U.S. Army. Individual stragglers and small roving groups continued to seek refuge in the inhospitable jungle-clad hills but their ability to wage organized warfare had been decimated. One of the areas in which they attempted to hide was Mt. Banahao. Into this mountain retreat the 1st Cavalry Brigade Headquarters and 12th Cavalry Regiment sent patrols to bring an end to Japanese resistance. While a patrol from 1st Brigade was thus engaged on 2 June, the patrol leader, Sergeant Burleson Corley of Sacul, Texas lost his life and won a Silver Star when he led an attack on an enemy group.

On the same day, Sergeant Jessie Riddell of Irvine, Kentucky and "F" Troop, 7th Cavalry added an Oak-Leaf Cluster to the Silver Star he had won at Mt. Malepuno. When about thirty Japanese soldiers attacked his troop's perimeter near Infanta just before dawn, Sergeant Riddell saw one of his comrades engaged in hand-to-hand combat with a Japanese officer armed with a Samurai sword. He ran to the rescue, pausing en route to kill three of the infiltrating enemy with his rifle. He then shot the Jap officer who had narrowly missed killing the American soldier by jabbing the sword through his jacket.

As the mop-up of southern Luzon continued



through June, the gallantry and heroism of several other troopers were demonstrated and were rewarded with Silver Star decorations. Incidents of bravery which came to the attention of higher authority included the following: When the "C" Troop, 8th Cavalry patrol of which Pvt James R. Salyards of Akron, Ohio, was the point man, overtook a group of Japanese on a mountain trail near Pagus, Salyards opened fire on the enemy column and killed thirteen before they could do anything about it. He would have killed more but he was mortally wounded by a sniper.

Near Santa Maria an 8th Cavalry medic, Pvt Richard W. Anson of Amityville, N.Y., was cited for rescuing wounded under fire at great risk to himself.

As a troop from the 8th Cavalry was probing for Japs in the Kaliva River Valley, it was suddenly pinned down by intense fire from a Japanese strongpoint. The fate of the troopers would have been unhappy indeed if Lieut. Colonel John F. Polk of Columbus, Ohio, had not come forward from regimental headquarters and supervised the demolition of the enemy strongpoint with flamethrowers and explosives. In so doing he exposed himself many times to sniper fire, but the troop was saved and the enemy exterminated.

On 19 June, "G" Troop, 5th Cavalry, attached to the 8th Cavalry, captured a Japanese prisoner who told of a group of about 150 of his compatriots not far away whom, he believed, might be talked into surrendering. The troop commander Lieut. Terrill E. Price of Ridley Park, Penna., decided to go to the Japs and get them to give themselves up peacefully. Accompanied by only the prisoner and a Filipino interpreter he went to their stronghold in the jungle. At first negotiations went smoothly but suddenly the Japs took a menacing attitude and Price was forced

to shoot his way out and escape. The next day he led his troop to the Jap position and cleaned it out.

A patrol from "B" Troop, 7th Cavalry was patrolling for the enemy near Gumian when Jap rifle fire came at them unexpectedly from nearly bushes. This did not faze the point man, Pvt Bernis E. Stringer of Visalia, Calif. He rushed forward firing his BAR from the hip. He killed one Jap, wounded another and then deliberately reloaded his weapon in plain sight of another whom he quickly dispatched.

Stringer lost his life a short while later, but his bravery will long be remembered.

The last Silver Star to be won by a member of the 1st Cavalry Division during the Luzon campaign went to Sergeant Clyde C. Bohannon of Cherryvale, Kans. He led a patrol from "B" Troop, 7th Cavalry, against a camouflaged enemy position in the hills near Infanta and thereby enabled a wounded comrade to be rescued from the line of fire.

The Luzon campaign was officially declared finished on 30 June 1945. As was the case following both the Admiralty and Leyte campaigns, however, the 1st Cavalry troopers continued to kill and capture enemy holdouts during the aftermath. The division concentrated at Lucena in southern Tayabas Province and from there patrols were sent out on Jap-hunting expeditions.

The official box-score at the close of the Luzon campaign was as follows: Japanese killed by the 1st Cavalry Division, 14,114; prisoners of war captured, 1199.

1st Cavalry losses: killed in action, 680; wounded in action, 2334; missing in action, 3.

For the three campaigns: Japs killed and counted 24,097; prisoners captured, 1365 Japanese, 39 Chinese, 71 Sikhs, 91 Formosans, and 1 Korean.

In addition to the troopers mentioned by name in the text of this chapter, the following won Silver Stars for gallantry in action during the Luzon Campaign:

Name	Home	Organization	Date
Lieut. Frank E. Gertner	Youngstown, Ohio	2d Brig. Recon. Plat.	31 Jan. 45
Lieut. Burton E. Howard*	Poteet, Texas	Co. "B", 44th Tank Bn.	1 Feb.
Pvt. Glenn A. Girton	El Monte, Calif.	"D" Troop, 5th Cav.	2 Feb.
Tech. Sgt. Albert McMillin	Everton, Mo.	Hq. Troop, 2d Brig.	"
Lieut. Charles Stearns	El Paso, Texas	Hq. 27th Ord. Co.	3 Feb.
Lieut. Karl J. Hughes	Kansas City, Kans.	"B" Btry, 61st F A Bn.	"
Sgt. Harvey E. Burkhour	Shamokin, Penna.	Hq. Troop, 2d Brig.	"
Capt. Francis M. Gray	Des Moines, Iowa	Hq. & Hq. Btry 82d F.A. Bn.	"
Capt. James I. Rhiel	Columbus, Ohio	1st Med. Sqn.	"
Corp. Eldon C. Levicn	Donahue, Iowa	Hq. Troop, 2d Brig.	"
Pfc. Melvin F. Colman	Baldwin, N. D.	Med. Det., 61st F A Bn.	"



Lieut. Col. Wm. E. Lobit	Galveston, Texas	Hq. 2d Sqn. 5th Cav.	"
Lieut. Ervin R. Fliginer	Garrison, S. D.	"F" Troop, 8th Cav.	4 Feb.
Pfc. Julius A. Rodzvilla	Wilkes-Barre, Penna.	"F" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Sgt. Joseph G. Baker	Great Falls, Mont.	"A" Troop, 8th Engr.	"
Sgt. Lewis M. Hensley	Phoenix, Ariz.	Hq. Troop, 2d Brig.	"
Major Frank G. Mayfield**	Junction City, Kans.	Hv. 2d Sqn. 5th Cav.	"
Sgt. Rubin Urist	Brooklyn, N. Y.	Sv. Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Lieut. Francis M. Huffman	Palestine, Texas	302d Ren. Troop	"
Corp. Joseph F. Aiello	Cliffside Park, N. J.	"A" Troop, 8th Engr.	6 Feb.
Pfc. Vern C. Ellen	Seattle, Wash.	"A" Troop, 8th Engr.	"
Sgt. Samuel H. Pedley	Scranton, Penna.	Co. "B", 44th Tank Bn.	7 Feb.
Chaplain (Capt.) John B. Tye.	Philadelphia, Penna.	Div. Arty.	"
Corp. Wm. C. Bostic, Jr.	Durbin, W. Va.	Sv. Btry, 99th F A Bn.	8 Feb.
Lieut. Chester E. Synakiewicz	Chicago, Ill.	603d Tank Co.	"
Pfc. Charles E. Anderson	Indianapolis, Ind.	Med. Det., 8th Cav.	10 Feb.
Capt. Louis F. T. Stankiewicz	Cadiz, Ohio	Hq. 99th F. A. Bn.	10 Feb.
Lieut. Burton R. Kennedy	Chicago, Ill.	"H" Troop, 5th Cav.	"
Pfc. Charles D. Garlock	Ansonia, Conn.	Hq. Troop, 1st Brig.	12 Feb.
Pfc. Robert F. Plant	Kelso, Wash.	"D" Troop, 8th Cav.	13 Feb.
Pfc. Wm. F. Halpin	Chicago, Ill.	"B" Troop, 8th Cav	15 Feb.
Lieut. Chester B. Vickery	St. Louis, Mo.	302d Ren. Troop,	17 Feb.
Tech. Sgt. Ocie L. Smitheart	Lufkin, Texas	"E" Troop, 8th Cav.	18 Feb.
Pvt. Wm. D. Mountain	Buffalo, N. Y.	Hq. 2d Sqn., 8th Cav.	"
Sgt. Thomas R. McDonald	Bronx, N. Y., N. Y.	"E" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Tech. Sgt. William T. Williams	Culleoka, Tenn.	"E" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Pfc. John Perry, Jr.	Hayward, Calif.	"F" Troop, 8th Cav.	"
Pvt. Joseph A. Sorrentino	Nashville, Tenn.	Med. Det., 8th Cav.	19 Feb.
Lieut. Crossett T. Hopper**	Memphis, Tenn.	754th Tank Bn.	27 Feb.
Lieut. John A. Hussey	Bangor, Me.	Hq., 12th Cav.	3 Apr.
Sgt. James D. Hunter	Lake Orion, Mich.	"D" Troop, 8th Cav.	18 Apr.

\* Posthumously awarded.    \*\* Bronze oak-leaf cluster.



# LUZON PICTORIAL

*The 1st Cavalry Division landed on the shores of Lingayen Gulf, Luzon, P.I. on 27 January 1945. Three days later General MacArthur ordered the division to make a bold dash into Manila, 100 miles away, and free the internees held prisoner by the Japanese at Santo Tomas University. Here are pictures taken along the way as the "Flying Column" smashed through enemy-held territory on its historic liberating drive.*



*Starting from Guimba in the early morning hours of 1 February 1945, the mobile units of the 1st Cavalry Division forded the Pampanga River and met their first Japanese opposition at Cabanatuan.*



*Moving on, the troops were forced to make frequent halts to drive off the enemy.*





*The drive was spearheaded by the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, and the 44th Tank Battalion.*







*The Japs had destroyed most of the bridges along the route.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*But we forded the rivers with the help of bulldozers.*







*The 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, crossed the Angat River east of Plaridel on 2 February. The tank, "Battlin' Basic," eventually smashed its way through the wall of the Santo Tomas University compound.*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, crossed the Angat River near Baliuag as happy Filipinos looked on. When the cheering natives appeared along the highway, it was a welcome sign, for it indicated the absence of the enemy.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



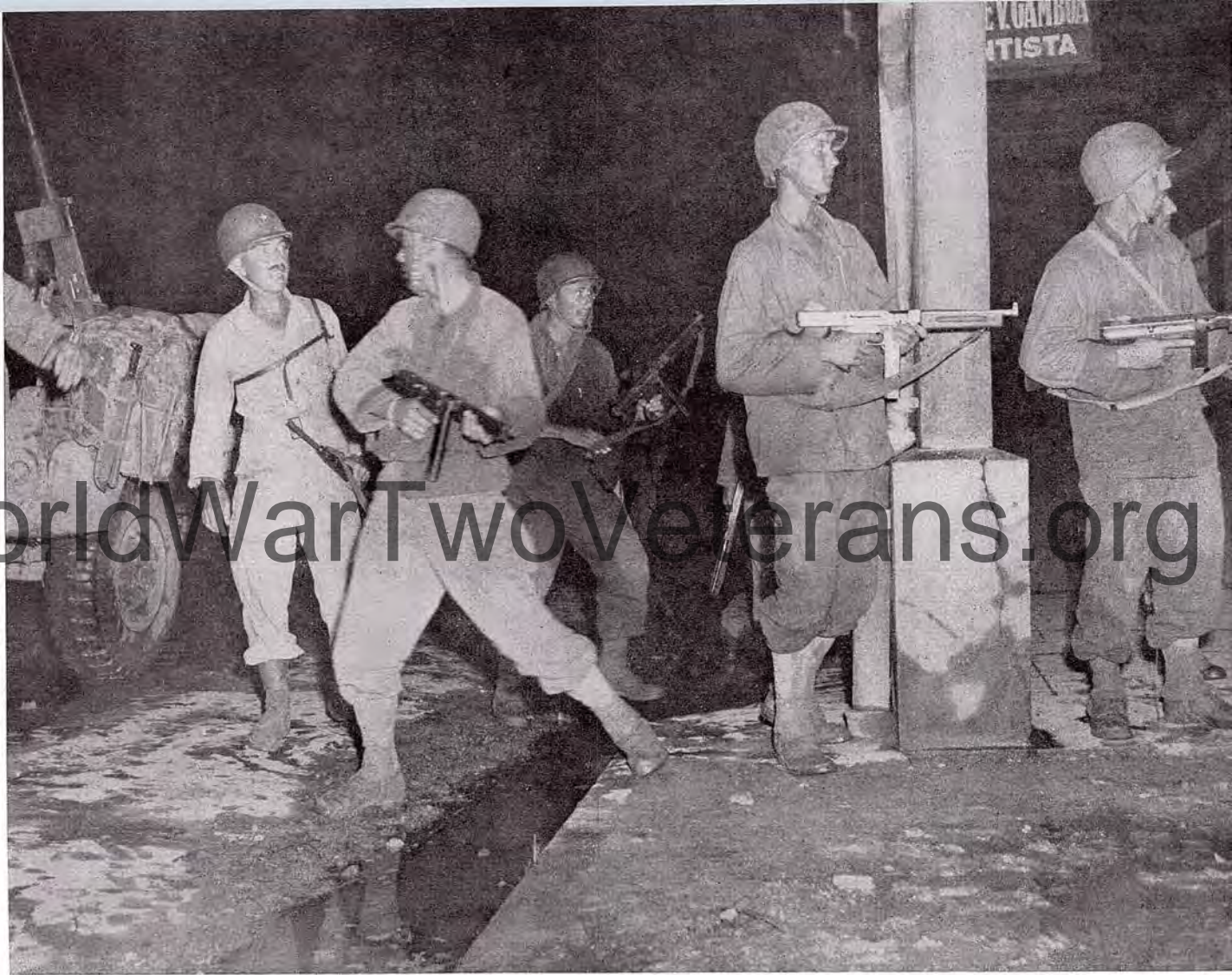


*Frequently, the column was forced to halt and fight its way forward.*



s.org





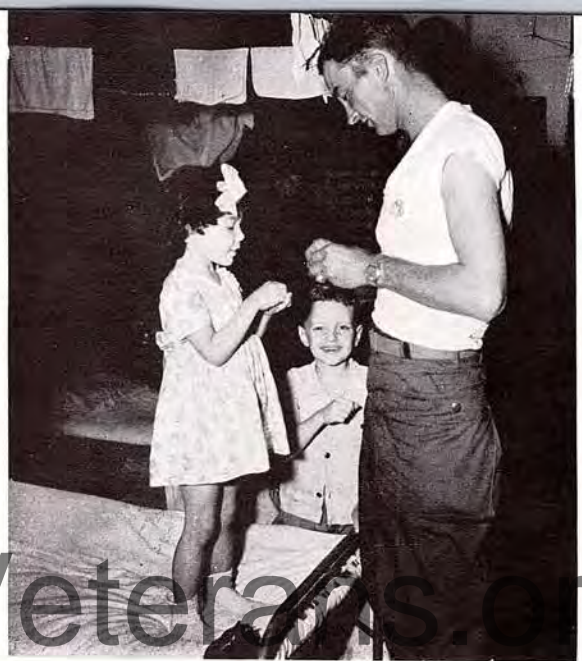
*As the column approached the heart of Manila during the evening of 3 February, the enemy made several flank attacks from the side streets. Here is General Chase, commander of the "Flying Column," and men of his headquarters in the act of repelling Japanese forces. Photoflash picture was taken by Tom Shafer of Acme News-pictures who accompanied the troops.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

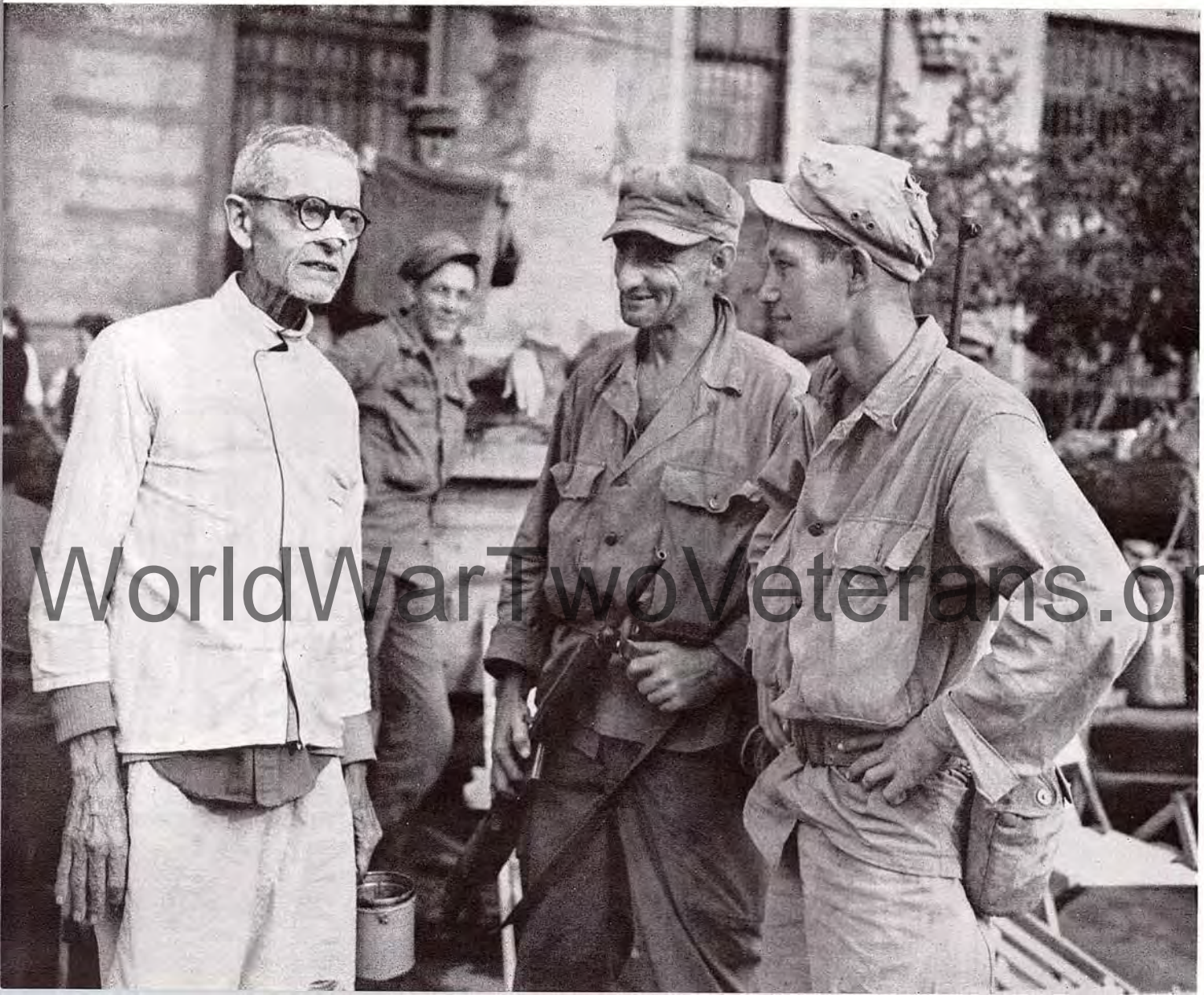
*The troopers crashed into the Santo Tomas Internment Camp compound at 8:50 P.M. on 3 February. To the right is a view of the main building as it appeared on the morning of 4 February.*







*After three years of imprisonment, the internees . . . . .*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*were happy to see Americans again.*

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







*The life of the internees had been somewhat primitive. Below is a view of the shanties in the courtyard.*







*The exhausted troopers rested and cleaned themselves and their equipment on 4 February. Above right, Lieut. Colonel "Hack" Conner, C.O. of the 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, which led the dash into Santo Tomas University.*







*The war did not end with the capture of Santo Tomas. Here are pictures taken by Carl Mydans, LIFE photographer, showing (upper left) the CP of the 2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry, at the entrance of Main Building, the interrogation of a POW (upper right), the roundup of Japanese prisoners-of-war (lower left), and a combat troop preparing to go on a patrol (lower right).*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Safe-conduct from the University grounds was granted to 63 Japanese soldiers in return for the release of 276 internees held as hostages in the Education Building. Shown here are Colonel Brady, 1st Brigade exec., and men of "E" Troop, 5th Cavalry escorting the Japs out of the compound at dawn on 5 February 1945.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



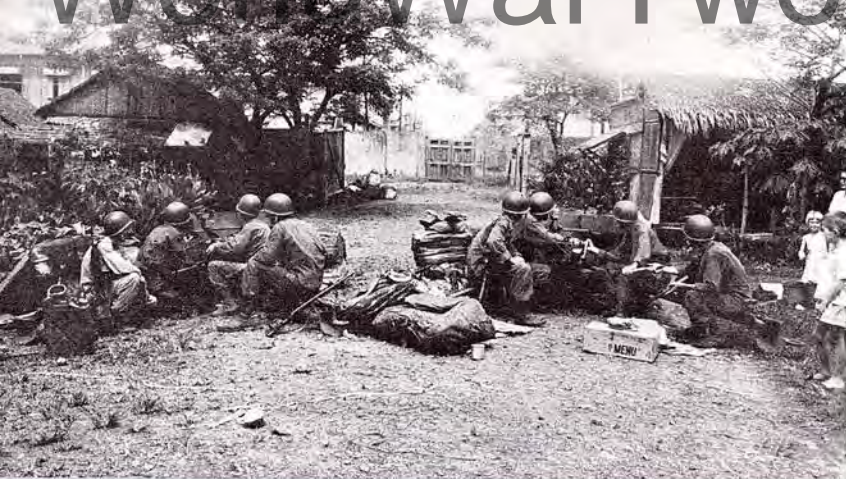


WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Outside the entrance of Santo Tomas, the troopers set up defenses to protect the internment camp from attack. Above, soldiers and Filipinos look down on the body of a Jap who failed in an attempt to get through the lines.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*On the morning of 4 February 1945, the troopers sallied forth to commence the battle for Manila.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Searching for snipers.*



*Attacking a barricaded bridge.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Looters.*

*Wreckage.*







*At the Pasig River we fired point-blank at Jap machine gun positions on the opposite bank.*

*A Jap lies dead in the street as the tanks and troops move past the pock-marked buildings of the Far Eastern University.*





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Crouching to dodge sniper fire, American soldiers advanced through the ruins and desolation wrought by the retreating Japs.*

*An army bulldozer ploughs through the rubble as it starts to clear the wreckage of battle from the streets of Manila.*

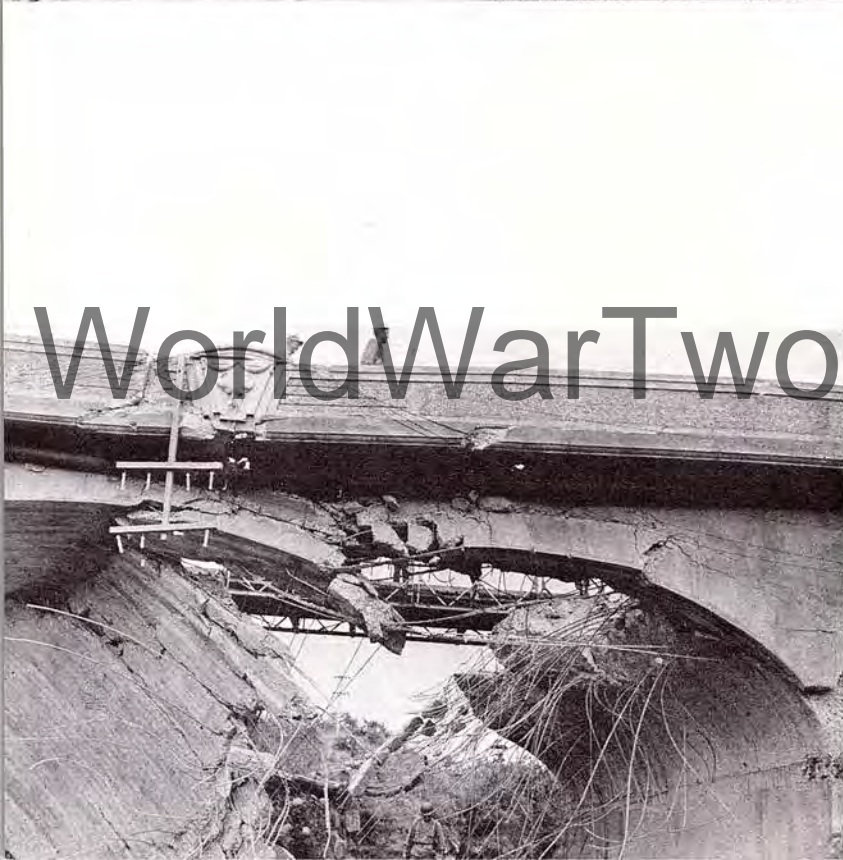
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







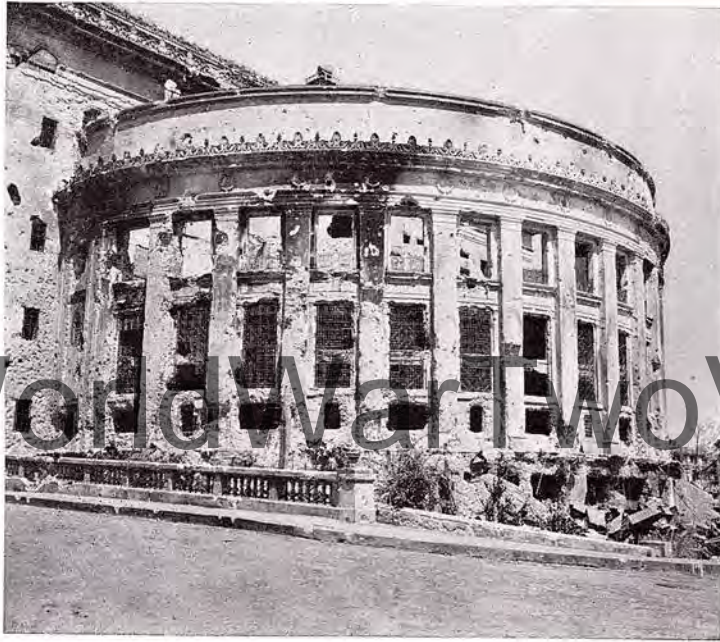
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*War-wrecked Manila. Above, a shell hits Jones Bridge over the Pasig River. At right, ruins of the 19th of June Bridge in Quezon City.*





*The Manila Post Office*



*Quezon Bridge*

*San Luis Terrace*



*A 44th Battalion tank and burned street-cars  
near St. Scholastica Church.*

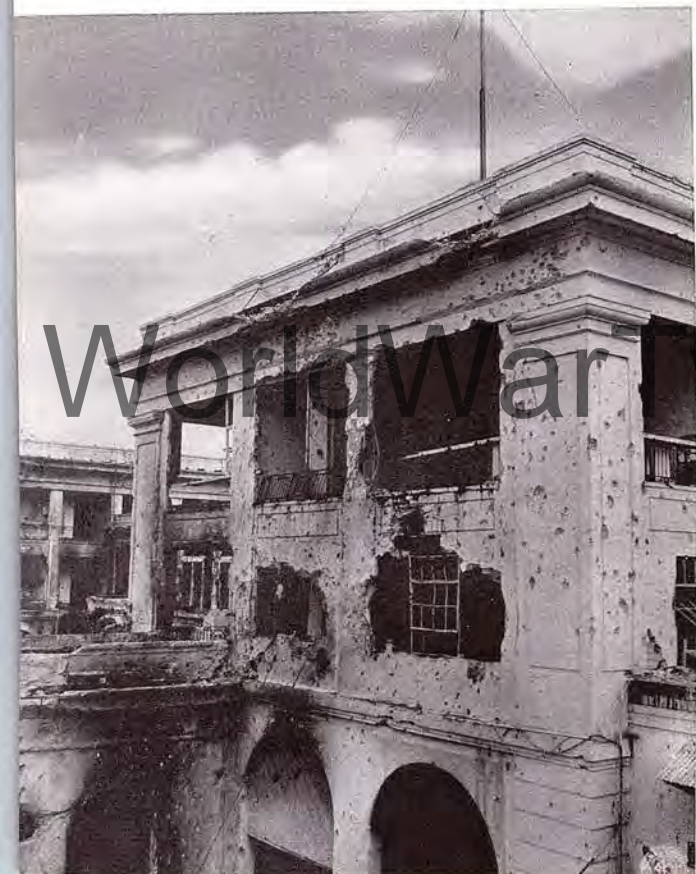






WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Men of the 1st Cavalry Division recaptured these buildings from the Japs.  
Above, inside the Manila Hotel. Below, the Army and Navy Officers Club.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*A Jap Marine surrenders.*



*Delousing a land mine.*



*Front line conference.*

*1st Cav bazooka at the Rizal Stadium.*

*Their spears were not enough.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwo





*Typical Jap defense in the rubble.*



*Police building in the Paco section of Manila.*

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Fighting scene at the University of the Philippines.*



*Palm Court Terrace.*



*"E" Troop, 8th Cavalry, exhibits some trophies.*





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org  
*After Manila, we fought our way eastward toward Antipolo in one of the toughest battles ever experienced by the 1st Cavalry Division. Above, tanks and men moving into enemy territory.*



*The 7th Cavalry had its CP along a defladed road.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Front line troops sniped at snipers.*





*Tanks blasted Jap positions.*

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Bulldozers helped seal up caves.*

*This tank was caught by a land mine but its crew got out safely.*



*After an air-strike, Marine Corps flyers visited the front lines.*





*The walking wounded and the litter patients*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*were treated at forward aid stations.*

*The Field Artillery did its share of pounding Japanese defenses.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*After Antipolo we moved into Southern Luzon to eliminate enemy opposition there.*



*A troop commander explaining the situation.*



*Flank patrols searched for snipers.*

*Every building was a potential snipers' nest.*



*Road blocks . . . friendly*



*. . . and enemy*





*Armored cars and light tanks led the way.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Cheering Filipinos greeted their fast-moving liberators.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







*Both wire and radio were used for communication.*

# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Artillery OP at San Pablo.*



*The church at San Pablo.*

*Machine gunner in the rain.*

*Wounded guerrilla.*



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The Japs left many demolished bridges in the wake of their retreat.*

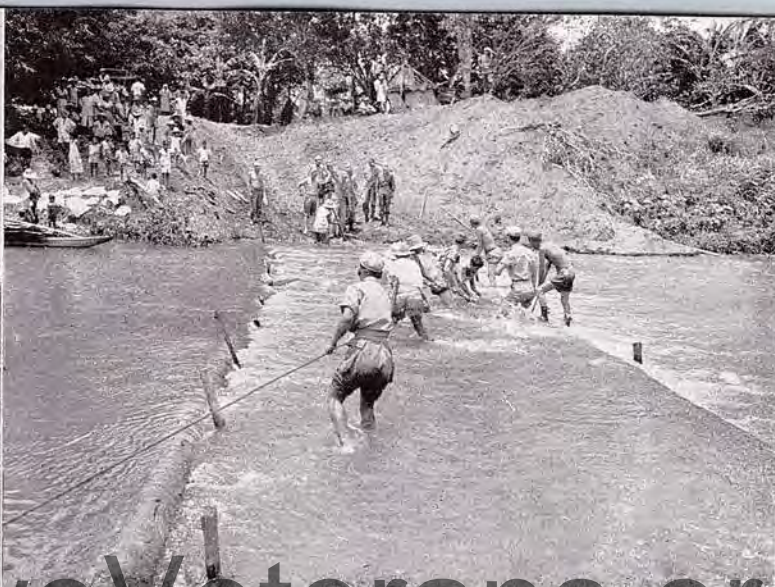


*But the engineers built new ones.*



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Many of the rivers had to be forded.*



*Sometimes the advance was across rice fields.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Scenes in Santa Cruz.*





*5th Cavalry CP in position at Naga.*



*82d F.A. Battalion holding church services near Lucban.*

*SCENES IN SOUTHERN LUZON*

*Tanks and crews from "A" Company, 44th Tank Battalion in Laguna Province.*



*A jeep making a path for a convoy at Cabuyi, Batangas Province.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The fighting around the Kapatalan Sawmill required considerable cave blasting.*



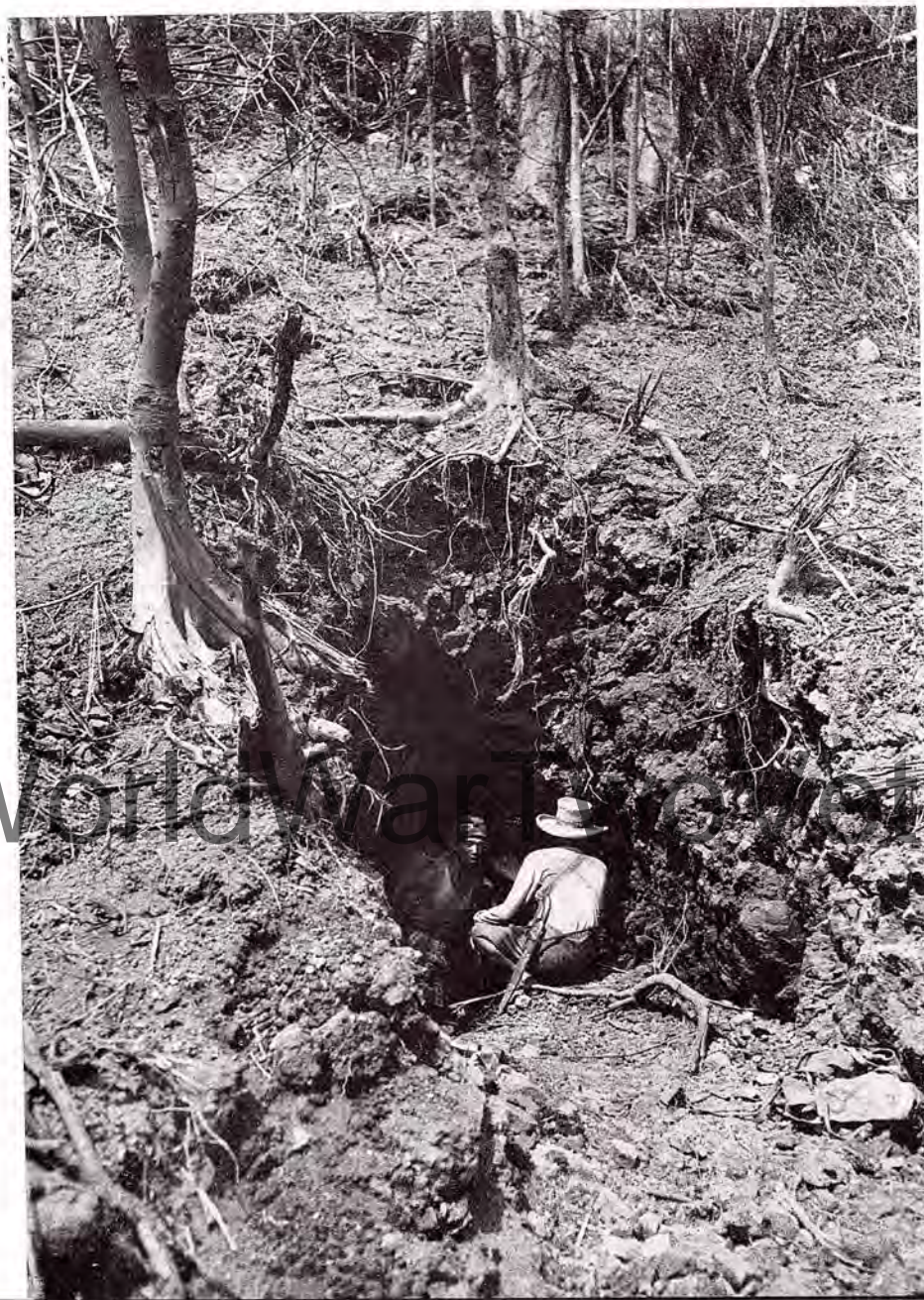




WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Before*

*and after blasting.*



*Guerrillas enter a cave and recapture an American flag.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Near the Sawmill. Above, a mortar squad taking a brief rest in rough country. Right, dodging enemy fire along the trail. Below, Filipino bearers carrying TNT pass a Jap who was cut down as he ran from his roadside cave.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Between Kapatalan Sawmill and Infanta. The 8th Engineers emplacing a Bailey bridge. Left, another cave demolished. Below, the 99th F.A. Battalion helping to build a road.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







WorldWarVeterans.org

*Above, setting up a mortar position. Right, observing a mortar round hitting a Jap position. Below, prisoners captured near Infanta.*



WorldWarVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The 7th Cavalry had a long hard march to Infanta.*



*Both sides of the trail had to be combed for Japs.*

*Patrols went into the jungle searching for the enemy.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The troops found bridges mined and ready for demolition.* *The engineers removed the mines and detonated them harmlessly.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Reconstructing a blasted bridge.*

*Time out for a drink.*

*Supplies for the fighting troops were loaded at Mauban.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Filipinos helping to unload the 99th F.A. Battalion at Infanta.*



*Catalina flying boats evacuated the wounded from Infanta.*

*The natives came out of hiding after Infanta had been liberated.*

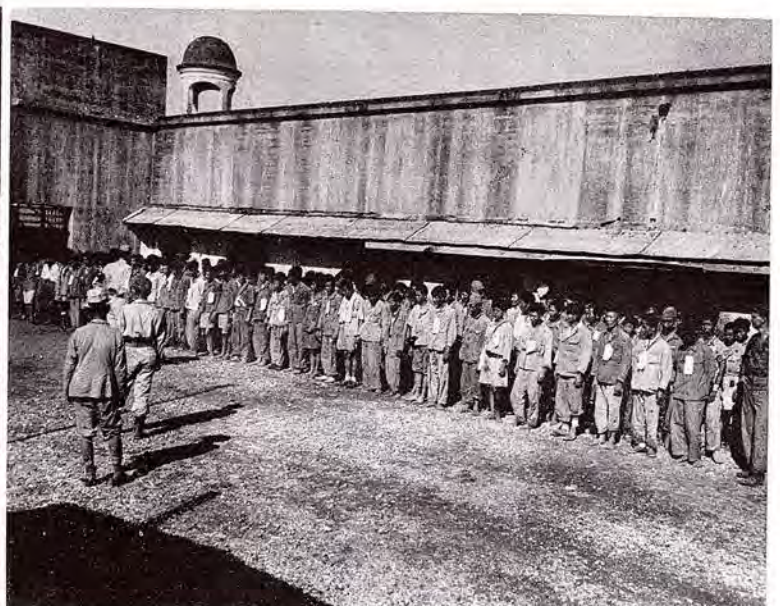


WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Japanese prisoners captured near Infanta.*



*were assembled in the jail at Lucena.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*As the Luzon fighting ended, the 1st Cavalry Division was concentrated at Lucena. Below left, a prime mover, ammo trailer, gun, and gun crew of the 82d F. A. Battalion. Below right, building the camp at Lucena.*







*General Hoffman awarding decorations after the Luzon Campaign.*



*Newly decorated heroes at Lucena.*



*On 1 August 1945, General Hoffman turned the command of the division over to General Chase.*



*With the end of the war in sight . . . .*

*high point men, including Master Sergeant Dale Mitte, were deployed home.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



The grave of a veteran of four campaigns, "Master Sergeant Chipps," mascot of the 1st Signal Troop, was visited by a pup alleged to be one of his offspring.



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



At the gates of the barrio, Lucena.

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# First Cavalry Division Artillery Combat Operations

*by Colonel Rex E. Chandler*

Here is the complete account of the First Cavalry Division Artillery combat actions in World War II written by former Brigadier General Rex E. Chandler, wartime Division Artillery commander. The First major campaign for the Division, the Admiralty Islands, presented artillery problems of technique in transport, over-water displacements and fire support not covered at that time in existing field manuals. How this and other combat problems were overcome is discussed in this article.

ACCOUNTS of combat operations of American divisions seldom more than mention the presence of artillery. The better the support, the more closely integrated the infantry-artillery team, the more likely were the problems and solutions of the artilleryman to be lost in the recording of actions which brought about successful operations. Particularly was this true in organizations where there existed a mutual interest, admiration and confidence such as was found in the First Cavalry Division. The following paragraphs summarize a few of the methods of handling artillery support met and worked out by the artillerymen of the Cavalry Division in the march from Camp Strathpine, Australia, to Tokyo.

The First Cavalry Division, the only "Square division" of World War II, entered the combat zone with less than the full complement of artillery normally provided an American division. It was short in quantity and light in the caliber of its weapons. The division arrived at Camp Strathpine, Australia, with three artillery battalions organized as follows:

61st FA Bn, 1½-ton truck-drawn, 105mm (Snub-nose) M-3 Howitzer.

82d FA Bn, ¼-ton truck-drawn (jeep), 75mm Pack Howitzer.

99th FA Bn, ¼-ton truck-drawn (jeep), 75mm Pack Howitzer.

Such an organization provided one 75mm howitzer battalion for direct support of each cavalry brigade and the 105mm M-3 battalion for general support. What the division needed, and what it finally finished combat with on Luzon in 1945, was four 105mm battalions, one for the direct support of each cavalry regiment, and a 155mm howitzer battalion for support of the division as a whole (general support). The evolution of the artillery organization followed the requirements of combat as each operation indicated the need for more artillery and heavier calibers.

The 271st FA Bn, 105mm Howitzer, truck-drawn, was organized at Camp Strathpine on October 11, 1943, from officer and enlisted personnel drawn from the other battalions. Because the 99th FA Bn had been converted from mule pack to a jeep-drawn there existed a surplus of enlisted personnel in that unit. This personnel plus overstrength brought overseas by the other



battalions permitted the organization of the 271st without outside replacements. Thus four months later the battalion was to do an outstanding job in combat. A tribute to the excellent training of the division artillerymen and the superlative efforts of the men and officers of that battalion.

Also in October 1943 the 61st FA Bn was converted to two-and-one-half-ton truck-drawn, and the M-3 (Snubnose) howitzers replaced with M-2 howitzers. At Borio, New Guinea, in January 1944, further changes were made in the prime movers of all battalions. The 61st and 271st FA Bns were given TD-9 tractors in exchange for two-and-one-half-ton trucks and the 99th and 82d FA Bns exchanged their one-quarter-ton (jeeps) for three-quarter-ton weapons carriers. Thus equipped and organized the division artillery entered combat in the Admiralty Islands.

The Admiralty Islands campaign brought out two defects in the weapons and organization of the artillery of the division. First the 75mm pack howitzers were too light for jungle warfare. Second a general support artillery battalion of 155mm caliber was needed. With only four battalions to support four cavalry regiments the division artillery commander was often confronted with the problem of where to get additional artillery to influence the action of a particular regiment. In every such case it was necessary to withdraw a battalion from its direct support mission. As a result of the experience of this campaign a request was made on the Sixth Army to convert all light battalions to 105mm howitzers and provide a 155mm howitzer battalion for general support. This request was met as follows:

In October 1944 and three days prior to loading out for the Leyte operation the 82d FA Bn received its 105mm howitzers. Because of limited over-water transport the 99th FA Bn left its three-quarter-ton prime movers in the Admiralties, went porte, and loaded its weapons in two-and-one-half-ton trucks. With such an arrangement it became a compact march and water-transported unit with far more cargo and ammunition carrying capacity than it had with either the one-quarter-ton or three-quarter-ton prime movers. Several times during the Leyte Campaign the 947th FA Bn, 155mm Howitzer, was attached to the division for specific operations. When the division sailed for Luzon in January, 1945, the 947th accompanied it and remained attached throughout that campaign. Toward the end of the fighting on Luzon the 99th received its 105mm howitzers. The cycle of organization, transportation, and equipment was completed shortly before VJ Day with the division artillery organized as follows: five battalions, 61st FA Bn, 82d FA Bn, 99th FA Bn, 271st FA Bn, and 947th FA Bn, all composed of tractor-drawn 105mm howitzers. (Attached and adopted by troopers and artillerymen alike for the excellence of its fires and the esprit of its officers and men.)

The Admiralty Islands campaign presented artillery problems of technique in transport, over-water dis-

placements and fire support not covered at that time in existing field manuals.

In amphibious operations followed by fighting in jungle terrain the first problem that confronted the artillerymen was that of transportation. The current WD T/O & E's provided for motor transport far in excess of that which could be carried by the watercraft available and beyond the capabilities of the road net on the objective shore. This was recognized early and the First Cavalry Division Artillery was reorganized in New Guinea to conform to the principle that the maximum amount of transportation needed for any operation would be that required to mobile load TE equipment and one-half unit of fire of ammunition with all personnel, except drivers, walking and carrying individual equipment. Overloading was accepted. Initially battery commanders were allowed considerable latitude in the manner of loading under the directive that the equipment would be readily accessible in the order in which it would be needed in the occupation of position. The ingenuity and initiative of the individual were encouraged. As new ideas were developed and found satisfactory they were adopted and made uniform throughout all battalions. Battery commanders were required to keep all equipment in the vehicles, nothing in supply and storage tents. Thus loaded, the battery or battalion could move out in a few hours and the men were trained to keep their equipment dry and serviceable under field conditions. During the training in the Borio, New Guinea, staging area, batteries operated with reduced transportation. This reorganization paid dividends when the operations started.

A usual method of target designated by artillerymen is the use of numbered reference points or scheduled fire concentrations indicated on a map or overlay by 200-yard circles. During the Admiralty Campaign and thereafter this method was adopted by the cavalry and

**A First Cavalry Division Artillery gun crew stands by to fire during jungle training of the 61st Field Artillery Battalion at Camp Strathpine, Brisbane, Queensland, Australia.**





extended to supporting Navy units, providing a common language and relatively secret code for the initial phases of each shore to shore operation and major attack. Where practicable copies of the artillery reference point and concentration overlays were furnished through Liaison Officer and forward observers down to cavalry platoon leaders. Thus any cavalryman could call for Naval gunfire or artillery fire by the simple means of asking for a numbered concentration or designating his target with reference to it.

In jungle warfare wherever practicable the artillery should be emplaced on the flank of the attacking forces to provide closer support of the advancing troops and eliminate tree bursts within our own lines. By clever use of island positions the artillery was able to provide such support throughout all phases of the shore to shore operations during the Admiralty Island campaign. In the attack on Lorengau by the Second Cavalry Brigade the three artillery battalions designated to support the attack were in island positions from which they could support all phases of the attack. The 61st and 271st FA Battalions were on Hauwei Island and the 99th on north Butjo Luo Island. All battalions fired in support of the initial landing at Lugos Mission. The 61st and 271st FA Battalions provided flanking fire to the squadrons of the Eighth Cavalry in their movements down the Beach Road and Number One Road toward Lorengau. So effective were these positions that the gunners could observe their own fire and using field glasses watch the advance of the cavalry down the Beach Road.

The 99th FA Battalion interdicted Number Two Road, the only avenue of withdrawal of the Japs, and provided flanking fire for the advance of the Seventh Cavalry along that road after the capture of Lorengau. Following the attack on Lorengau the 271st FA Bn was returned to direct support of the 12th Cavalry for the attack of the First Brigade in the Papitalai Hills. This battalion displaced to positions in the Salami Plantation on the West Shore of Los Negros Island. From there it could support the action of elements of the Twelfth Cavalry and reinforce the fires of the 82d FA Battalion in position near Momote Airstrip. The positions of these two battalions were such that either battalion could reinforce the other with flanking fire and afford close in support of the cavalry irrespective of the direction of attack. Interlocking radio communication permitted the observers of one battalion to adjust fire of the other, a very important and necessary consideration when elements of the attacking regiments converged in the thick jungle of the Papitalai Hills.

The following comments of a squadron commander of the Fifth Cavalry are appropriate.

"We used all the artillery we could get. We could not get too much. One entire battalion of field artillery in direct support of our squadron was most profitable.

"Preparatory to the attack, a barrage of intensity commensurate with the importance of the objective

was indispensable in attaining the objective with minimum casualties. On occasions we found it profitable to use as many as 1500 rounds or more in the initial preparation. The take-off was followed by a rolling barrage, in close, which facilitated the advance. Enemy outposts were driven back so that we were able to reach their main line of resistance without delay and harassment. Artillery fire leveled foliage, made bare pillboxes and bunkers, and exposed enemy points of resistance. Craters from artillery fire offered our troops cover in the advance. The delay fuze was used effectively to bring the shells through the foliage to get the bursts down on the ground. Artillery fire on villages drove the enemy away from the supply points and denied them food and ammunition. Many enemy dead were found in these villages following artillery fire.

Concentrations on points of resistance, and prepared positions located in the daytime by our patrols, silenced enemy fire, kept the enemy in their dugouts, and prevented movement on the ground between our perimeters and their prepared positions. Fire on our flanks protected our long and narrow lines of communications and supply from envelopment.

"Close and constant liaison with squadron, troop, and forward observers, who were with the forward elements, resulted in excellent coordination. All our plans included detailed employment of artillery.

"Observer planes were of inestimable value in these jungles. Often it was only through their use that we were able to locate ourselves accurately on the ground. The location of our troops and the objective for the day were made known to the air observer daily. By the use of flares fired from front-line positions the exact location of our troops was determined by the observer so that he could adjust close-in fires with safety. This worked especially well when our troops were pinned to the ground. Returning patrols reported coordinates of targets to the liaison officer with the Squadron, who sent them to the air observer. In practically every instance the target was well covered with artillery fire. The effectiveness of all daytime fire was constantly adjusted and checked by plane when ground observation was not possible, which in the jungle is most of the time."

The Leyte campaign presented problems of mud and mountains that taxed the artillery to the utmost to provide adequate fire support and afforded opportunities for assistance that put the cavalry-artillery team into a smooth functioning unit and tightened the bonds of mutual admiration and respect.

Accurate maps were nonexistent. The only way in which the artillery could provide fire support was through the combined efforts of the ground and air observers, by the methods worked out in the jungle terrain of the Admiralties. The air observer after spotting the location of the ground observer would start an adjustment with the initial rounds well in front of the cavalry troops. He would then pull the fire back until



the ground observer could take over. In the mountainous terrain this required careful coordination by the observers and accurate laying of the pieces at the gun positions.

When the bottom dropped out of the secondary supply routes to the cavalry regiments operating in the mountains, artillery ammunition vehicles, the tractor and trailer, were used to push food and ammunition forward and evacuate sick and wounded. The artillery liaison planes dropped medical supplies, food and ammunition to isolated troops in positions that made any other means of transport impracticable.

One incident which occurred during this operation illustrates the measures which an artilleryman will take to look after his supported unit. One of the cavalry regiments in its movement across the mountains was beyond the support of its artillery battalion but the battalion commander continued to follow its movements from a liaison plane. An air drop of food to the regiment did not materialize. The situation became critical. Division headquarters were unable to arrange to have food dropped through the usual request channels. The artillery battalion commander went to the air strip near Tacloban and persuaded an air corps pilot of a C-47 to take the mission, without benefit of orders or fighter cover. He, the battalion commander, secured the food, lashed himself in the open door of the plane, placed his own radio set in a position so that he could talk with his forward observer with the regiment and proceeded to deliver. The ground observer talked the pilot into position over the dropping ground and the battalion commander kicked packages out of the door on each pass of the plane over the area. This performance was repeated several days later not, however, without some repercussions from corps and Army staff, but the job was done. If the artillery could not support the regiment by fire it certainly could with food.

A single one-way beach and mountain road on Leyte connected Carrigara and the operating area of the Cavalry Division with the Ormoc Valley. This was the principal supply route of the 32d Division. When the Fifth, Seventh and Twelfth Cavalry regiments broke through the mountains and entered the valley the question of artillery support became critical. Only one battalion could get through and be supplied over the Carrigara-Ormoc road and then not until the resistance confronting the 32d Division, north of Loroy, had been broken. The 77th Division had landed near Ormoc and was pushing north for a junction with the Twelfth Cavalry. An artillery staff officer was dispatched to that division to act as a liaison officer and arrangements made for the use of its artillery until the 61st FA battalion could move south to suitable positions. The excellent assistance rendered by the 77th Division artillery provided the support needed at a critical period. In the mopping up operations and movement of the cavalry to the west coast of Leyte the 61st FA Bn had some of the most intense firing and lucrative targets of the cam-

paign, not to mention the constant harassing of infiltrating Japs by-passed in the fast movement of the cavalry.

Artillerymen who served with the cavalry prior to the war have indicated that there was always the question in the minds of the cavalry officers as to whether the artillery could keep up with the fast moving mounted trooper. The same question arose when the division made its dash from Lingayan Gulf to Manila in February 1945. To meet this situation the tractor-drawn artillery battalions dropped their tractors, hitched the howitzers to two-and-one-half-ton trucks and joined the columns. Two truck-drawn batteries were with the flying columns that broke into Santo Tomas University and the remainder of the artillery was in position near Grace Park Air Strip, when the division entered Manila. Not once during subsequent operations east of Manila, on the Bicol Peninsula, and west of Laguna de Baya was a regiment without artillery support although the roads and terrain taxed the initiative and ingenuity of the battalion commanders to the utmost.

From positions on and near the Wac Wac Golf Course in Manila, the Artillery supported the action of the First Brigade, south of the Passig River, and the operations of the Second Brigade, east and northeast of Manila. During one period the light battalions and batteries of the 947th were so disposed that they were delivering fire through 270 degrees of the compass.

The action in Manila and east, toward Antipolo afforded the division artillery its first wartime opportunity to mass the fires of all battalions. What amounted to a division artillery fire-direction center was placed in operation with direct telephone communication to the fire-directive center of each battalion. An improvised telephone switching arrangement at Division Artillery CP permitted the Division Artillery S-3 to call and talk to all battalion S-3's, individually, or on a party line. Within three to five minutes all battalions could be firing on a target located and adjusted on by any observer. TOT (Time on Target) fires were used with excellent effect. In addition the artillery controlled and coordinated air strikes by lifting artillery fires just prior to the air attack, marking targets with smoke rounds and reporting the effectiveness through forward and air-observers. This was accomplished by a Division Artillery Liaison Officer, in direct radio communication with the Division Artillery CP and all battalions, stationed with the air liaison and control officer at his forward observation post. Such control insured more effective air support and withheld the artillery fires only during the period where the planes were making their runs over the target.

As the artillery battalions were withdrawn from combat during the closing stages of the fighting on Luzon they were given the mission of patrolling and mopping up in the rear areas of the zone of action of the division. A new role for the artillerymen but one which brought them closer to the problems and hardships of the cavalry trooper and made them better artillerymen.



## FIRST IN TOKYO—The Occupation of Japan

When the Luzon Campaign came to its official termination on 1 July 1945, the 1st Cavalry Division was situated at Lucena in Tayabas Province, Luzon. Under the command of Brigadier General Hugh F.T. Hoffman, the division embarked on a rehabilitation and training program in preparation for the invasion of the Japanese homeland. The 1st Cavalry Division was scheduled to play a prominent part in the attack on the home islands of Nippon during the Olympic Operation about 1 November 1945.

On 1 August, Major General Chase "came home" to the 1st Cavalry Division. On 7 February, after conducting the flying column's spectacular dash to Manila, he had been transferred to command the 38th Infantry Division which, under his leadership, made military history as "The Avengers of Bataan." Upon General Chase's return, General Hoffman, who had been in command of the division since the serious wounding of Major General Verne D. Mudge, resumed his post as commanding general of the 2d Cavalry Brigade.

Then, in quick succession, came the news of the Potsdam Declaration, the dropping of the atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, Russia's declaration of war on Japan, and Japan's willingness to surrender unconditionally. On 13 August, a warning order was received from General MacArthur's Headquarters stating that the 1st Cavalry Division had been selected to accompany the Supreme Commander into Tokyo and be a part of Lieut. General Robert L. Eichelberger's Eighth Army in the occupation of Japan. Detailed orders followed on 17 August. Preparations for loading out began at once and continued day and night. Ships of the Navy Transron Division 16 began arriving at Batangas Bay. A staging area was set up south of Lipa and an advanced command post went into operation on the docks at Batangas.

On 25 August, a huge convoy set forth from Batangas Bay. The next day, typhoon warnings forced the convoy to make an overnight halt in Subic Bay, but on 27 August, it headed out again steaming northward along the west coast of Luzon through the South China Sea.

Dawn of 2 September found the troopers on deck early to catch a glimpse of the Jap homeland as the convoy sailed up Tokyo Bay. The twinkling lights along the shore faded and the rugged hills of Honshu poked their heads through the early morning mists. Bespectacled Jap harbor pilots came aboard

to guide the long column of ships into Yokohama Harbor, past the big battleship, USS Missouri, where, in a little while, General MacArthur would receive the signatures of Japanese surrender. Overhead American airplanes put on a mighty demonstration of aerial power.

By 1030 the leading ships of the convoy were in place in the inner harbor of Yokohama. At that time a reconnaissance party headed by Colonel Charles A. Sheldon, the Division Chief of Staff, went ashore at the Yokohama docks to contact Lieut. Colonel Moyers S. Shore's advance party which had arrived by plane five days earlier, and to reconnoiter the area in which the landing would be made.

At 1100 the division made an assault landing with brigade combat teams abreast—Brigadier General Stadler's 1st Brigade on the left, and Brigadier General Hoffman 2d Brigade (less the 8th Cavalry held aboard ship as division reserve) on the right. It was just like other assault landings which the troopers had made except that there was no pre-invasion bombardment and there was no resistance.

The initial assembly areas were within five blocks of the docks. There the units closed and prepared to move to Hara-Machida which had been selected as the assembly area for the first phase of the occupation of Tokyo. General Chase landed at 1630 and assumed control of his troops ashore in the area not far from the docks. By this time ships had tied up at the Yokohama piers and were unloading troops and cargo directly onto the docks. By 1600, 10,750 personnel and eleven percent of the cargo had been unloaded.

The 12th Cavalry, under the command of Colonel James G. Corbett was given the mission of seizing and guarding five airfields in the vicinity of Tachikawa. Occupation of these fields was accomplished by 4 September. The 8th Cavalry, commanded by Colonel Alfred G. Tuckerman, passed to the control of XI Corps on the morning of 4 September with the mission of occupying Yokohama. Meanwhile, the division had completed unloading and, save for the units on independent missions, had closed in the Hara-Machida assembly area by 1000 on 4 September.

At noon on 5 September, a reconnaissance party headed by Colonel Sheldon entered Tokyo. While the formal entrance was to come later, this actually marked the first official movement of American personnel into the capital of Japan's once-mighty empire.



The reconnaissance was without incident. Its mission was to find bivouac areas for the division within the city itself.

During this period patrols were active throughout the Hara-Machida-Tachikawa area. Numerous military and naval installations were located and placed under guard.

Although there had been some doubt as to reactions of the Japanese populace when the troops had first come ashore, no friction or untoward incidents developed. In the Kanto Plain area surrounding Tokyo was a large segment of the Japanese army which was commencing its own disarmament. The units included 14 infantry divisions, 17 independent mixed brigades, 1 armored division, and 1 infantry regiment. Had any part of this force decided to rebel at the provisions of the peace agreement, the 1st Cavalry Division might have been badly hit before it had gained a firm foothold in Japan. On the contrary, both the Japs and the Americans were highly pleased at the behaviour of each other. The troopers' experience with the unyielding, do-or-die conduct of the Japanese soldier on the battlefield made it almost inconceivable that he would permit these "foreign barbarians" to walk upon the sacred soil of Nippon without displaying some kind of resistance even though it was of a futile token-like nature. Instead, the Japanese people exhibited a fine willingness to cooperate to the utmost of their ability. Long years of war propaganda had taught them that the arrival of the Americans would be followed by an orgy of raping and looting. Their women and private property would not be safe for a minute. When the large-scale outrages failed to materialize, the Japs began to breathe easier.

At 0800 on 8 September, a history-making convoy left Hara-Machida with Tokyo as its destination. Headed by General Chase, the party included a veteran from each troop in the division so that all units would be represented on this climactic trek of the war. Passing through Hachioji, Fuchu, and Chofu, the convoy halted briefly at the Tokyo City Limits. General Chase stepped across the line thereby putting the American Army officially in Tokyo and adding another "First" to the record of "The First Team." To Pfc Paul Davis of Fairland, Ottawa County, Oklahoma, who followed the general, went the honor of being the first enlisted man to enter the city officially. This won for him an award of \$1000 offered by the Veterans of Foreign Wars of his home county to the first soldier from the county to set foot in Tokyo. Davis was a member of "D" Troop, 12th Cavalry.

On the same morning, General MacArthur made his official entry into the city escorted by the 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, under the command of Major

William W. West III, the 302d Reconnaissance Troop, the Division Band, and a colorful display of the division standards and guidons. At the American embassy, General MacArthur gave the following instructions to Lieut. General Robert L. Eichelberger, commanding general of the Eighth Army:

"Have our country's flag unfurled and in the Tokyo sun let it wave in its full glory as a symbol of hope for the oppressed and as a harbinger of victory for the right."

As veteran cavalymen raised the flag atop the American embassy building their comrades stood at attention while the division band played the national anthem. The flag was the one which had been flying over the Capitol at Washington on Pearl Harbor Day and had flown over the Battleship Missouri while the surrender documents were being signed.

On the same day, the 2d Cavalry Brigade Headquarters and the 7th Cavalry Regiment, Lieut. Colonel William A. Adams, Jr. commanding, moved by rail and motor from Hara-Machida to Tokyo. The bivouac area was on the Yoyogi Parade Ground adjacent to the Meiji Inner Shrine. Needless to say, the occupation of the parade ground did not interfere with Japanese military ceremonies for by this time the Imperial Army was well on the road to disbandment. Japanese army uniforms were much in evidence but the insignia was disappearing in compliance with the surrender terms.

On 10 September, the 8th Cavalry was relieved from attachment to XI Corps and moved to Kawasaki where its command post was set up at Keio University. Except for the Division Artillery which remained at Hara-Machida, the remainder of the division was concentrated at the Yoyogi Parade Grounds.

The division's first mission in Tokyo was to assume control of the central portion of the city. Troops of the 7th Cavalry guarded the American Embassy where General MacArthur had taken up residence, and the Meiji Shrine, one of the most sacred spots in Japan according to the Japanese viewpoint. Daily patrols began the long task of locating, investigating, and reporting all Japanese installations which had contributed to the nation's war effort, and there were many. All arsenals, factories, barracks, and storage grounds had to be examined and reports made of their contents. In addition, the division was concerned with the status of demobilization of the Japanese armed forces. Although the Imperial Army and Navy were being disbanded under the supervision of Japanese officials, the 1st Cavalry Division maintained liaison with them and checked on the progress of their work. It is to the credit of the Japanese that they were generally cooperative in answering the questions of the reconnaissance patrols



and giving, to the best of their ability, information concerning the installations in their charge. A few of the officials queried by the patrols appeared to be hostile in their attitude, but when this condition was reported, the situation was generally rectified. In some instances, incomplete or apparently evasive information was given but this was attributable, to a large degree, to the fact that the persons with fuller knowledge had departed before the patrols arrived.

On 11 September, members of the 1st Cavalry Division assisted in frustrating the suicide attempt of Hideki Tojo, war-time premier of Japan whose name had been placed at the head of the list of Japanese war criminals. Tojo shot himself with a small pistol but before he could bleed to death he was evacuated from his residence in a 1st Cav ambulance and given medical treatment so that he survived to stand trial by the International Tribunal.

On 14 September, General Hoffman was appointed Provost Marshal General of Tokyo in addition to his duty as commander of the 2d Cavalry Brigade. The 720th Military Police Battalion, less one platoon, was attached to the 2d Cavalry Brigade. It was relieved from attachment on 25 November.

Now that the war had ended and it had become apparent that the occupation of Japan would not require any tremendous force of arms, redeployment of veterans with long service went forward on a large scale. Some of the U.S. Army divisions which had come to Japan only a few days before commenced preparations for inactivation or movement home to the United States. This meant that the 1st Cavalry Division, one of the units selected to remain overseas, would be charged with responsibility for an increasingly larger zone of occupation. On 16 September, the 1st Cavalry Division was given responsibility for occupying all of the city of Tokyo, and adjacent parts of Tokyo and Saitama Prefectures. Additional occupation areas were assigned to the 1st Cavalry Division later. By March 1946, its zone embraced 5000 square miles of Japan with a population of 20,000,000 and included the following prefectures: Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Yamanashi, Saitama, Nagano, Gumma, Tochigi, Niigata, Fukushima, and Ibaraki. The 11th Airborne Division took over responsibility for the occupation of Fukushima in April 1946.

An important project during the early days of the occupation was to find adequate housing facilities for the troops. Although September is not a particularly cold month in Japan, the tent camp at Yoyogi was unsuitable as winter quarters for troopers whose blood had been thinned by two years in the tropics. A typhoon which damaged the camp on 16 September emphasized the need for more permanent billets. By 25 September all elements of the division

had moved into buildings of wood or masonry construction. Much cleaning and some repair was required to put these billets into the condition demanded by U.S. Army standards. The 1st Cavalry Brigade, less the 12th Cavalry, went into quarters at the Japanese Military Police Academy at Nakano. The 2d Cavalry Brigade Headquarters was located in the buildings formerly occupied by the 1st Imperial Guard Regiment while the 8th Cavalry was billeted in the 3d Imperial Guard Barracks across the street. The 7th Cavalry's new quarters were in the Japanese Naval Paymaster's School near the Tokyo water front. All other units of the division took up station at the Japanese Army Military Preparatory School at Asaka just on the city limits of Tokyo. There, during the war, the Japanese had constructed a number of large wooden barracks on the site of Tokyo's swankest golf links. All that remained of the golf course was the club house but there was plenty of room for training, horseback riding, and expansion of facilities if required. The area was named Camp Drake in honor of Colonel Royce A. Drake, former commander of the 5th Cavalry, who was the first officer to lose his life in the Leyte Campaign.

On 1 November, the 1st Cavalry Brigade CP was moved to Yokohama where it occupied the Men Kua Building. The 5th and 12th Cavalry Regiments had already moved to stations in Kanagawa Prefecture a few days earlier to effect relief of the Americal Infantry Division which was being inactivated. General Stadler, commander of the 1st Brigade, became provost marshal of Yokohama and the 531st Military Police Battalion was attached to the brigade. On 25 November, General Stadler was relieved as provost marshal and the 531st M.P.'s reverted to direct control of the Commanding General, Eighth Army.

As the occupation continued, the various units of the division were shifted from place to place so that they could accomplish their missions most effectively. At the end of the first eighteen months of occupation, the command posts of the 1st Brigade, 5th Cavalry, and 12th Cavalry were situated at Camp McGill at Otawa about 20 miles south of Yokohama. This camp was named for Sergeant Troy A. McGill the sergeant from Troop "G", 5th Cavalry who lost his life and won a Congressional Medal of Honor in the Admiralty Campaign. The 2d Cavalry Brigade had its CP at the Imperial Guard Headquarters Building in Tokyo, the 7th Cavalry was at the Merchant Marine School, and the 8th Cavalry continued to occupy the 3d Imperial Guard Regiment Barracks in Tokyo. The Division Artillery Headquarters at Ojima in Gumma Prefecture was so located that it could maintain good control over the four artillery battalions which had the duty of occupying the moun-



tainous prefectures which comprised the northern portion of the division's zone of responsibility. Division Headquarters and other units of the division were stationed at Camp Drake in Tokyo.

On 25 September, there began a great shifting and turnover of personnel which continued thence forward and added considerably to the difficulties of carrying out the occupation mission. The 1st Cavalry Division received from the 43d Infantry Division 200 officers and 3380 enlisted men whose short length of service did not entitle them to immediate return to the United States. The next day 4000 Cav. Div. personnel with high adjusted service rating scores were transferred to the 43d Division for shipment home and discharge. The 43d Division was one of the first to be deployed from Japan to the United States after VJ Day. Later, as other units were inactivated or deployed to the States, many "low point" men were turned over to the 1st Cavalry Division to complete their tours of duty. These additions and the trickle of replacements which came directly from the United States, however, did not equal the division's losses through redeployment. By the end of the first year of occupation, the 1st Cavalry Division was operating at one-quarter of its authorized strength. In the latter part of 1946, the division was brought up to strength by the assignment of troops, the majority of whom were teen-age lads who required considerable training before they were able to contribute to the occupation mission in Japan. During the period from 1 July 1945 to 31 January 1947, 32,494 personnel were redeployed to the States from the 1st Cavalry Division, a turnover of approximately three times the authorized strength of the division.

On 30 September 1945, one of the major tasks in the early stages of the occupation was performed by the 2d Cavalry Brigade when at XI Corps' order, it closed 21 banking institutions in Tokyo and seized all records pending an investigation of foreign financial activities by these firms. Twenty-one teams consisting of guards, interpreters and counter-intelligence corps personnel descended simultaneously on the 21 installations and effected the closing without incident.

As the 1st Cavalry Division completed its first month of occupation duties, the demilitarization of Japanese war industries was in full swing. During the ensuing year the major effort of the division was devoted toward locating, inventorying, and assisting in the destruction of arms, ammunition, and military supplies. Factories which had been producing for the Japanese war machine were seized and either destroyed or held for reparations. As the arsenals, military posts, and airfields were cleaned up, the search was broadened to include numerous caves, mountain hideouts, and other points to which the

war material had been dispersed. Early in the conflict, the Japanese had begun to make provision for the movement of their war industries to underground retreats. The destruction of their great cities by the aerial bombing during the spring of 1945 had hastened this procedure. The dispersion of war plants and stocks of vital material continued right up until the time American troops had actually landed in Japan. When the cavalry patrols searched the countryside, they found thousands of caves which literally honeycombed the landscape. Many of them contained nothing, but in a great number of others caches of arms, ammunition, and machinery were found and seized. Complete underground factories with ventilating and sewage systems, dormitories, and offices were discovered. The war had ended before most of them could get into production. The demilitarization became a grim game of hide-and-seek. At the beginning of the occupation, schools, temples, and shrines were spared from search by the occupation forces, but after it became known that certain of these institutions were being used for the storage of munitions, a systematic and revealing survey was made. After a year and a half of occupation, unreported and undestroyed implements of war were still being turned up occasionally in small amounts.

The failure to locate these contraband items earlier was not entirely due to duplicity or willful contravention of the surrender directives on the part of the Japanese. While there may have been a few instances of deliberate concealment or passive taciturnity, much of the delay may be attributed to the fact that records were lost or incomplete, and some of the occupation units were inactivated or deployed before they could complete action on information which had been given to them. A number of the more recent finds resulted directly from information furnished by Japanese citizens or police.

In October 1945, the 1st Cavalry Division commenced the seizure of stocks of precious metals, jewelry, foreign currency, and narcotics which were in the possession of Japanese business firms and industrial plants. By the end of January 1947, more than 76,000,000 grams of gold, more than a billion grams of silver, more than 7,000,000 grams of platinum, and a large quantity of diamonds had been confiscated by the division and impounded in the vaults of the Bank of Japan. About 60,000,000 grams of narcotics had been seized and either destroyed or turned over to the Japanese Home Ministry.

In addition to seizing and disposing of munitions and precious items, other duties which the 1st Cavalry Division performed included:

a. Conducting an inventory of all lumber mills in its zone of responsibility to determine production capacity and the stocks of lumber on hand. One



hundred sixty-nine mills were canvassed during this survey.

b. On 6 November 1945, the division took over the operation of the repatriation center at the port of Uraga south of Yokohama on Tokyo Bay. Japanese nationals, including army, navy, civil service, and diplomatic personnel, being returned from overseas, were received, processed, and sent to their homes in Japan. Non-citizens of Japan passed through the port on their way back to their own countries. Among the problems that added to the difficulty of operating the port was prevalence of diseases such as cholera and typhus aboard the incoming ships. Quarantine measures were enforced and the danger of an epidemic in Japan was allayed. In all, more than 560,000 incoming Japanese, 61,000 cases of funeral ashes, and more than 12,000 outgoing Formosans, and Ryukyans were processed through the port of Uraga under the supervision of the 1st Cavalry Brigade.

c. On 11 October 1945, patrols from the 1st Cavalry Division officiated at the release of 34 political prisoners who had been confined by the Japanese government for periods ranging up to 18 years.

d. Another duty which befell the 1st Cavalry Division was the seizure of the Tokyo embassies of the puppet Chinese and Manchurian governments which had come into being during the development of the "Greater East Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere." These buildings were placed under guard and their contents impounded.

e. In furtherance of the ideas of freedom of speech and assembly which the Allies brought to the people of Japan, numerous mass meetings and rallies were permitted and encouraged by the occupation authorities. To insure that these meetings were not molested by the police or other unsympathetic elements, the 1st Cavalry Division provided observers who stood by unobtrusively and were equipped to summon help by radio if, for any reason, a peaceful assembly degenerated into a riotous mob.

f. In searching the countryside, the patrols occasionally came across the wreckage of crashed planes which were either casualties of the war or the result of accidents to operational flights during the occupation period. In every case, the patrols took steps to identify the plane and any of its personnel who had been killed.

g. Because of its spotlighted position in the capital of Japan, the 1st Cavalry Division's conduct of the occupation was particularly significant to all of the Japanese people. "The First Team," always a "show" outfit, had to be especially on its mettle when exposed to the view of the Japanese public. Lest any unreconstructed malcontent mistake the charity and benevolence of the occupation for a sign of weakness, the 1st Cavalry Division conducted par-

ades, reviews, and ceremonies on the Imperial Plaza in the heart of downtown Tokyo from time to time. On the average of once every few weeks, troops and armor of the division assembled on the plaza in front of the Emperor's Palace and put on a display of armed might which could leave no doubt in the minds of all who saw it that the occupation forces were both ready and able to enforce the will of the supreme commander if the necessity should arise. Occasions such as Army Day, the 4th of July, Armistice Day, and "Manila Day" (in commemoration of the "Flying Column's" liberating dash into the capital of the Philippines on 3 February 1945) were all celebrated with appropriate parades. When the Chief of Staff of the United States Army, General Dwight D. Eisenhower visited Japan in May 1946 a review and inspection was tendered him. The following letter to Brigadier General Bradford, who was acting as Division Commander during General Chase's temporary absence in the States, is self-explanatory:

"12 May 1946

My dear General Bradford:

The magnificent appearance of your troops this morning has made a tremendous impression upon me. In all of my visits during the past four years, I have seen no troops who have presented a more inspiring sight. I was very proud to view such a display of military perfection.

Please extend to all of the officers and men of the 1st Cavalry Division my sincere appreciation for the honor done me, and pass on to them my congratulations for a job well done.

With warm personal regards,

Sincerely,

/s/ Dwight D. Eisenhower  
DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER  
Chief of Staff"

h. 1st Cavalry Division surveillance teams observed at the elections which were conducted in the division's zone of responsibility. Their mission was to see that fairness and honesty prevailed during the voting and counting of votes afterward.

i. By far the most momentous task performed by the division was the actual destruction of Japanese war materiel. The first problem was to get the thousands of guns, tanks, airplanes, tons of ammunition and poison gas concentrated so that they could be handled. After that came the actual destruction or disposal. The guns and tanks were rendered useless by breaking them or twisting them out of shape so that they could never be restored. The airplanes were turned over to the Army Air Corps for demolition. The ammunition and poison gas was disposed of mainly by dumping it from barges into the sea. The greater



part of the physical work was done by Japanese laborers under the close supervision of American ordnance and chemical warfare expert personnel. In all, 32,224 tons of ammunition and explosives, 60,000 tons of weapons (guns, small arms and bayonets), and 4,000 tons of chemical warfare materiel, were destroyed in the 1st Cavalry Division zone of responsibility. Major William E. Williamson, division chemical officer, supervised the destruction of 6,000 tons of chemicals in the British zone of occupation near Kure.

At the end of the first year and a half of occupation duty in Japan, the 1st Cavalry Division had a high percentage of eighteen and nineteen-year-old enlisted men. On the other hand, offsetting this lack of experience and furnishing the guidance which has held aloft the fine traditions of "The First Team," the commanding general and his general staff embodied as much combat experience as the staff of any

other division in the U.S. Army eighteen months after the war ended.

The battle-experienced commanders and staff of the 1st Cavalry Division are not the only reason for the high quality of performance which has characterized the actions of the organization. The 1st Cavalry Division has a glorious tradition which imbues all of its troopers with esprit de corps and pride in their unit. Adherence to the tried-and true policy of "taking care of the men first" has paid off. The flashy parades and the high-octane shoulder patch might lead the casual outsider to believe that the 1st Cav is a "shoe-shines and haircut" outfit, but the well-groomed appearance of the average trooper springs from a firmer foundation. It is based on thorough training and firm discipline, on each individual's confidence in his ability to perform the military duties assigned to him.



# OCCUPATION PICTORIAL

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*While the surrender terms were being signed aboard the U. S. S. Missouri, the 1st Cavalry Division landed at Yokohama. Above, assault boats carrying troops pass the breakwater of Yokohama's inner harbor. Later in the day, 2 September 1945, the troopers disembarked (right) from the transports at the Yokohama docks.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*The Japanese showed interest but no hostility as the American forces moved themselves and their equipment onto the "Sacred Soil of Nippon." Below right, a convoy passes a burnt-out building while Japs look on.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*On 8 September, General Chase led his troops into Tokyo. Below, he congratulates Pfc Paul Davis of Ottawa County, Oklahoma, who won \$1000 for being the first enlisted man from his home county to enter Tokyo.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The convoy proceeding toward the center of Tokyo.*







*1st Cavalry Division troopers formed the first honor guard for the American Embassy in Tokyo. There, the colors of all units of the division were massed for the flag-raising ceremony.*

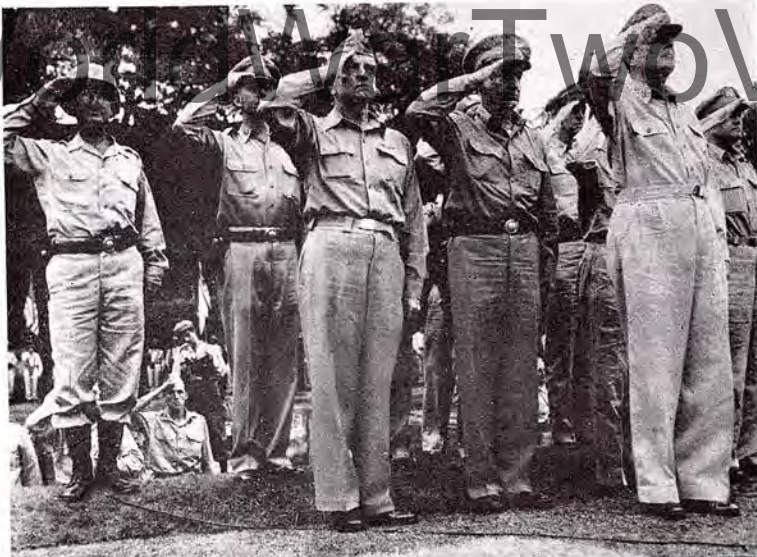




WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*The flag was the one which had flown over the White House on Pearl Harbor Day. Its raising was witnessed by General Chase, General Byers, Admiral Halsey, General Eichelberger, General MacArthur and other high-ranking officers.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*One of the first duties of the 1st Cavalry Division was to assist in the evacuation of recovered prisoners-of-war. Some of them could depart under their own power.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





..... but others required assistance.  
1st Cav troopers carried litter patients  
through the Yokohama railroad sta-  
tion.

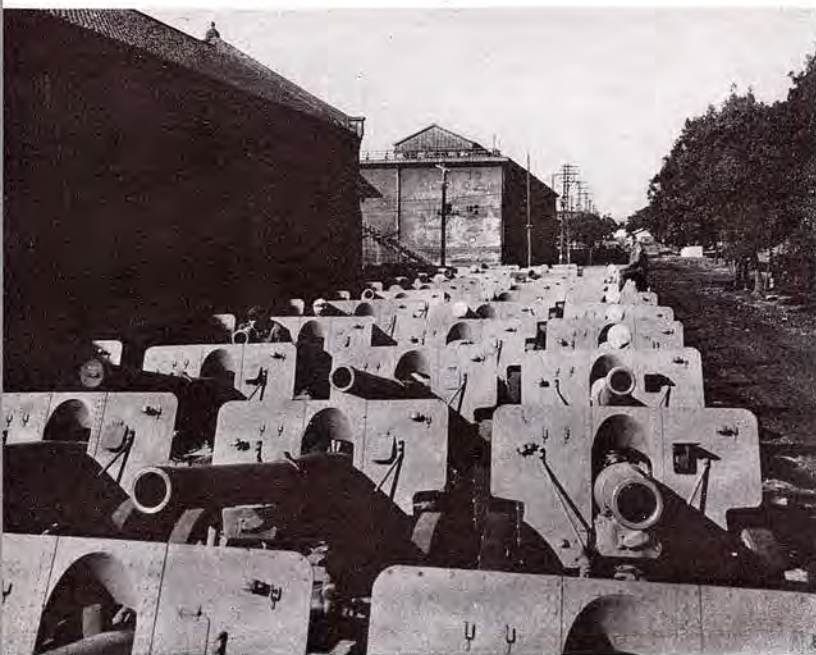


WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Putting the Jap war machine out of commission was one of the largest projects that fell to the 1st Cavalry Division. Above left, Jap tanks lined up for inspection. Above right, Lieut. Bruce Biegalle of the Division Chemical Office inventories Jap chemical shells. Left, horse-drawn field pieces. Below left, chemical shell inserts prior to their destruction. Below right, black powder is examined before being disposed of.*



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





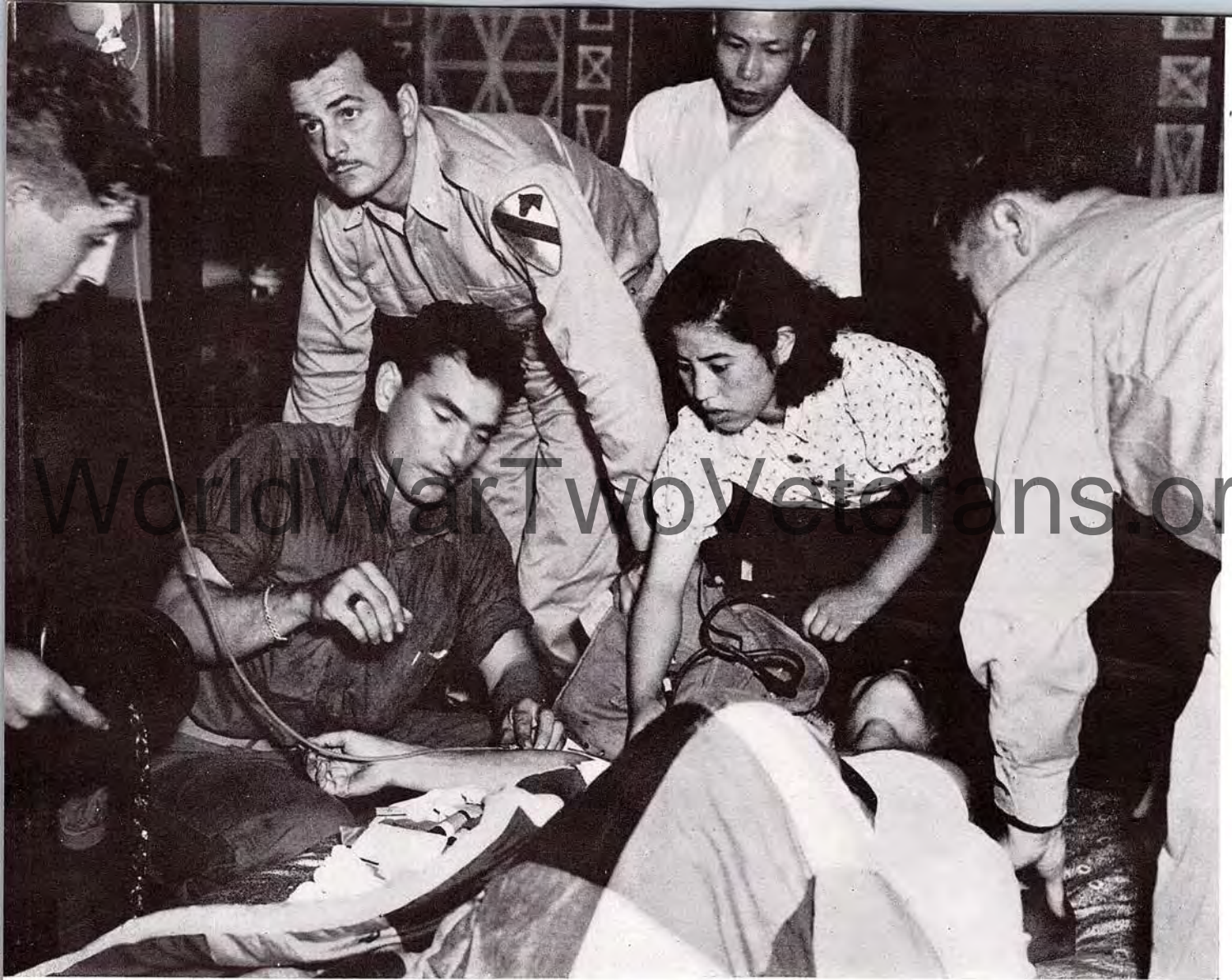
*Above, a 1st Cav liaison plane takes off from a strip which is lined with wrecked Jap aircraft. After oil was applied, the planes were destroyed by burning.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*1st Cavalry Division personnel frustrated the suicide attempt of former premier Hideki Tojo so that he could stand trial as a war criminal. Below, Prince Konoye killed himself with poison on the day he was to be arrested.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Our first camp in Tokyo was at Yoyogi Parade Grounds. In September 1945, the Division Headquarters moved into Camp Drake on the outskirts of the city.*



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The recovery of silver coins from the flooded Japanese mint was carried on under 1st Cavalry supervision.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Japanese war loot consisting of solid silver bric-a-brac being examined, above, before it was placed in the vaults of the Bank of Japan. Below, General Chase is shown a valuable solid gold wine pot by the vice-governor of the bank.*



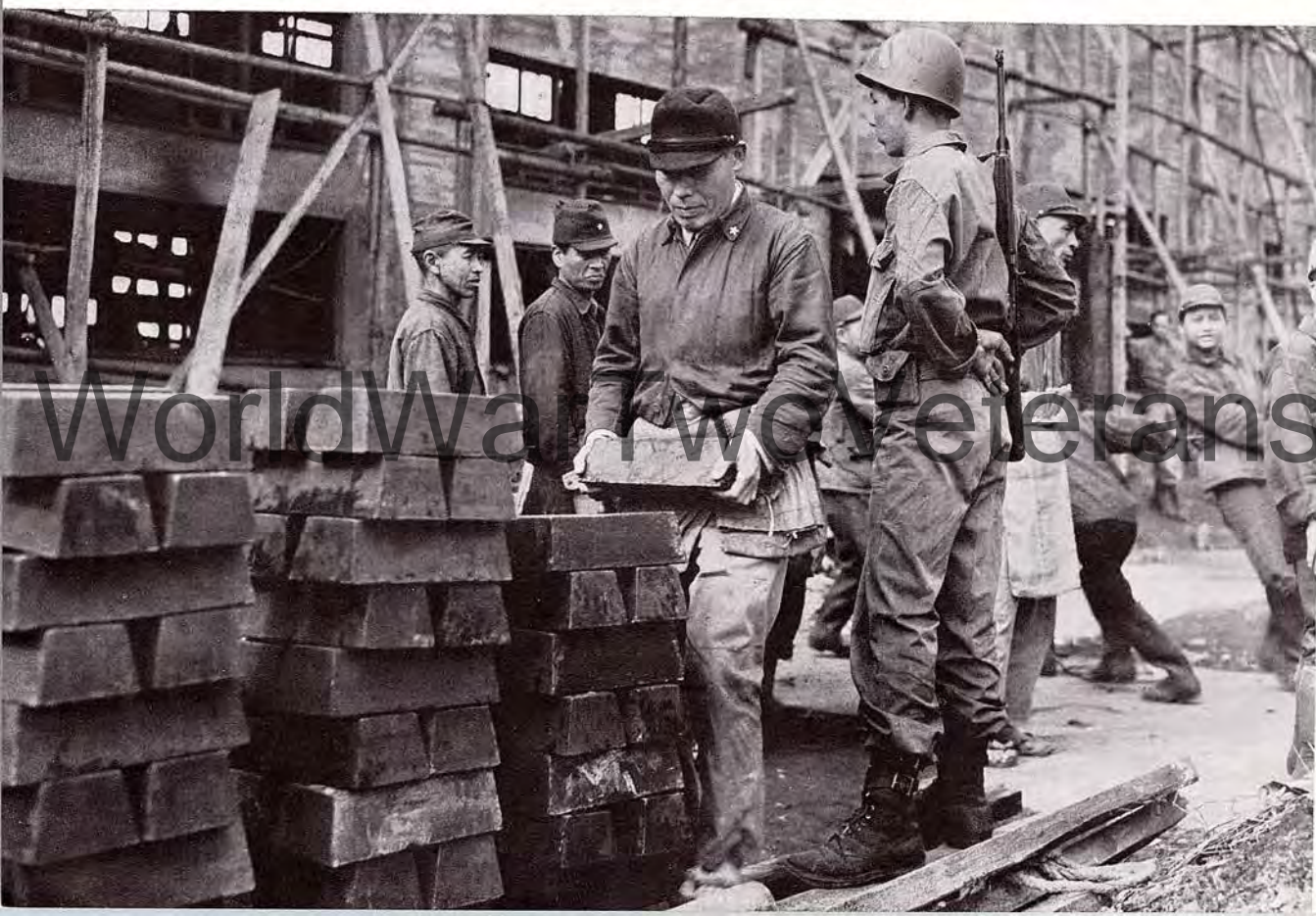
WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarIveterans.org

*With the help of U. S. Navy divers, the 1st Cavalry Division recovered 103 silver ingots from the muddy waters of Tokyo Bay. Other ingots were removed from the ruined Imperial Mint.*



WorldWarIveterans.org





*Precious metals were escorted by armored cars to the Bank of Japan where 1st Cavalry troopers stood guard over the vaults.*







*Guarding the Imperial Palace and controlling traffic were occupation duties.*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*We also helped with the repatriation of Japanese civilians and members of the armed forces. Public health was protected by the administration of DDT.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

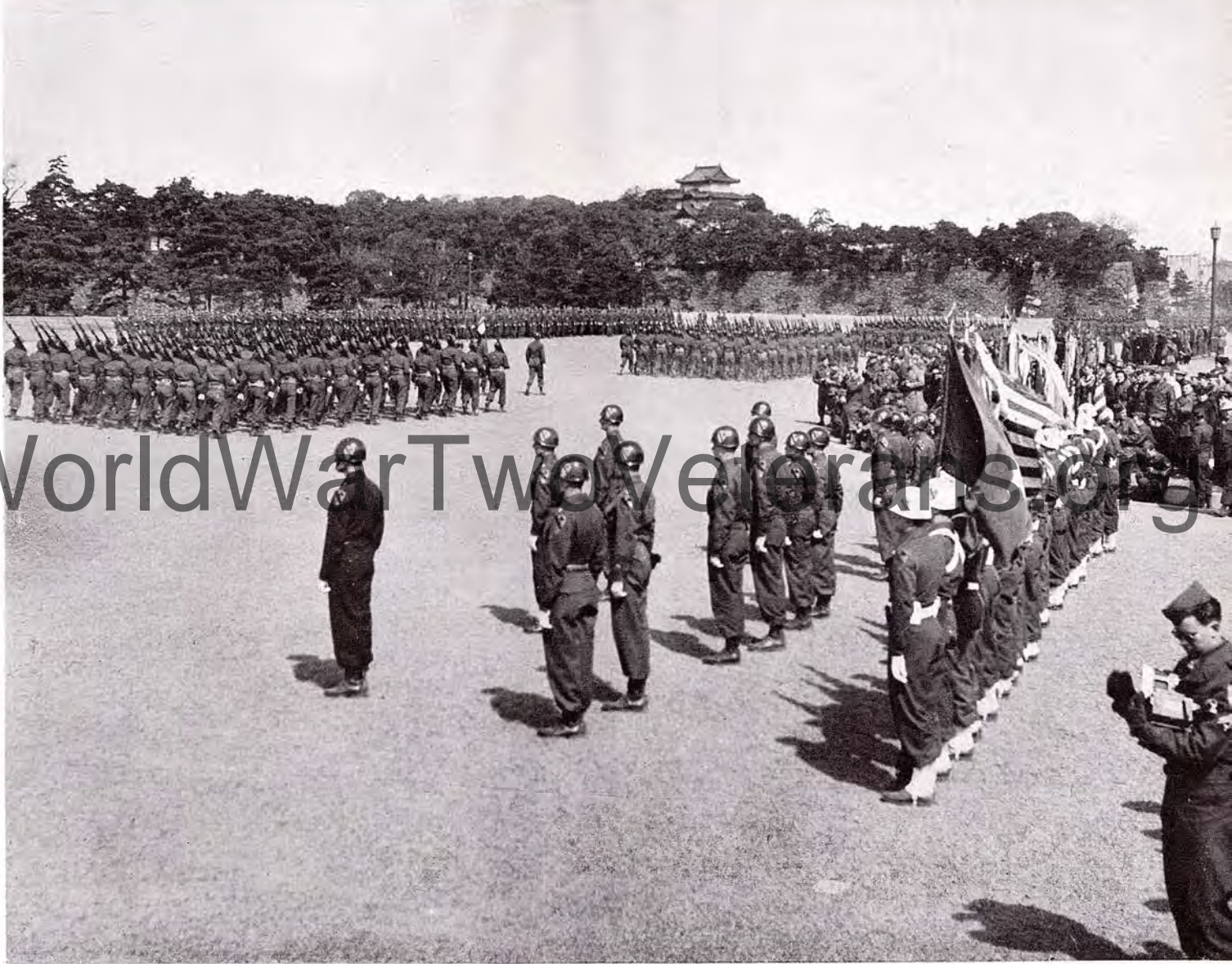




*Frequent inspections and ceremonies kept the troopers at top efficiency. Above, General Eichelberger, CG of the Eighth Army, inspecting troops at Yoyogi. Below troopers putting on the finishing touches before a parade.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*Displays of armed might helped to convince the Japs that we were prepared for anything. Above, a parade on the Imperial Palace plaza was viewed (below) by Mrs. MacArthur, General Eichelberger, General Chase, and Vice Admiral Sherman.*







*World War II battle streamers were presented by General Eichelberger in a colorful ceremony in Tokyo. Jeeps made an interesting display.*







*The Army Day parade, 1946*



*The 4th of July parade in 1946 took the troopers through the streets of Tokyo, and called for a 48-gun salute.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*Among the many notable visitors received in Japan were Secretary of War Patterson, General Eisenhower, and former President Hoover.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

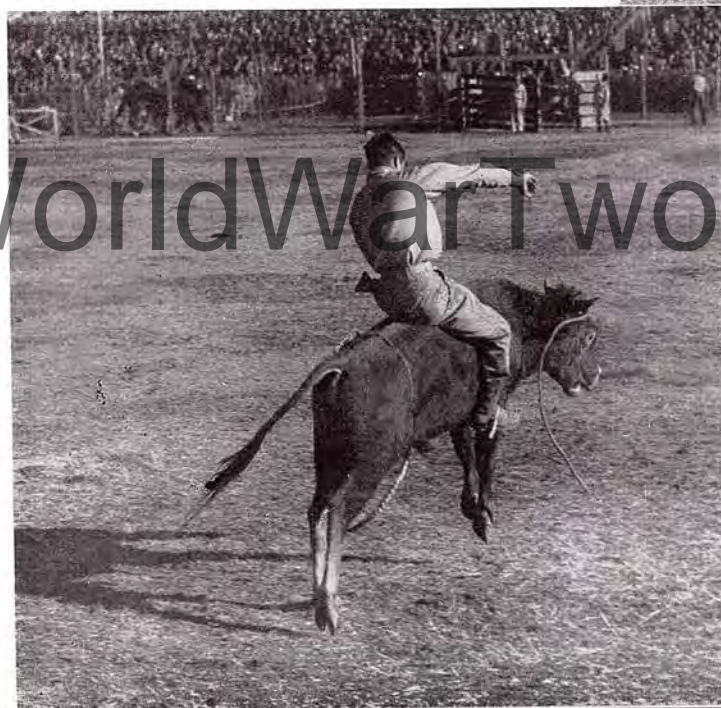






WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*On Armistice Day, 1945, we entertained ourselves and the Japanese with a rodeo. The white horse was advertised as belonging to the Japanese Emperor, but in reality it was a race-horse from a nearby race-track.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

Sightseeing was one of our favorite diversions in Tokyo. Above left, two troopers examine the ruins of the Imperial Palace. Above right, blasted railway cars at Yokohama. Below, Ginza sidewalk merchants doing a thriving souvenir business.



# WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





*The Imperial Hotel*



*The Diet Building*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

*Mrs. Douglas MacArthur presenting the 42d General Hospital with a flag which originally flew over the High Commissioner's Residence in Manila and was retaken from the Japs by the 12th Cavalry during the Luzon Campaign.*



*Baseball scores from home.*



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org





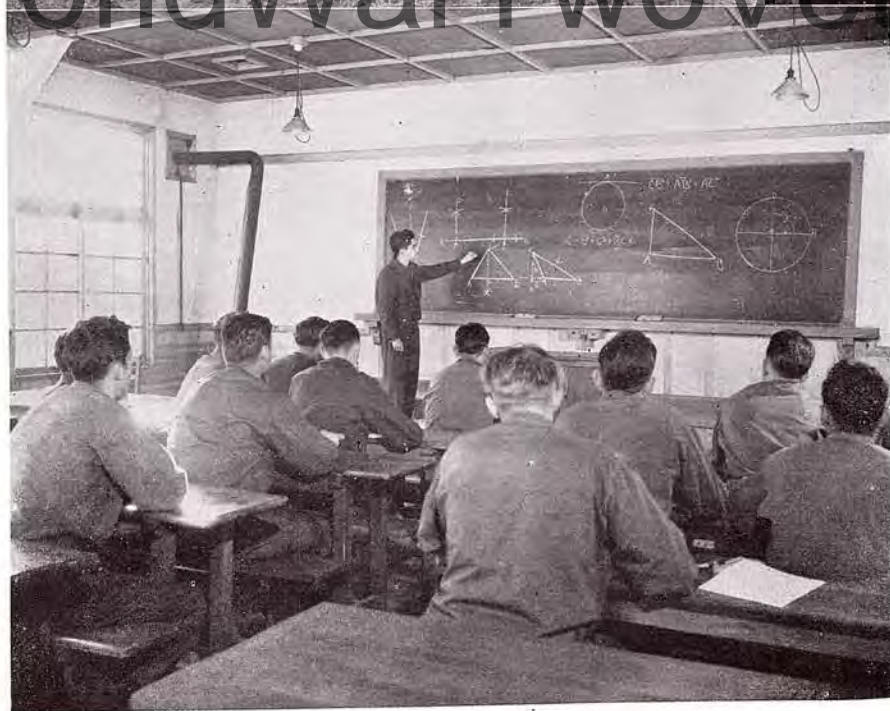
*Mrs. MacArthur dedicating the "S. S. Gary Owen," a recreation yacht anchored near the 7th Cavalry Regiment's barracks and operated for the troopers by the American Red Cross.*







WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



*The G. I. Kollege of Knowledge at Camp Drake provided an opportunity for troopers to complete interrupted schooling. Graduates can brag about having been educated abroad.*

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org







*Admiral Halsey pays off a bet. Although he did not ride the Emperor's horse through the main streets of Tokyo, the admiral provided a happy occasion by posing on a Japanese nag while General Chase stood by to offer encouragement.*

At Ease With The Japanese - by **Bill Keame**



*"Another First for the Cavalry"*



## THE CHAIN OF COMMAND

During World War II, the 1st Cavalry Division served with higher units as indicated below:

<i>Campaign</i>	<i>Army</i>	<i>Corps</i>	<i>Dates</i>
New Guinea	Sixth General Walter Krueger, Commanding	None	19 Dec 43 to 28 Feb 44
Bismarck Archipelago (Admiralties)	Sixth	None	29 Feb 44 to 18 May 44
Leyte	Sixth	X Corps Major General Franklin C. Sibert, Commanding	20 Oct 44 to 25 Dec 44
Luzon	Sixth	I Corps Major General Innis P. Swift, Commanding	27 Jan 45 to 30 Jan 45
		XIV Corps Lieut. General Oscar W. Griswold, Commanding	31 Jan 45 to 14 Jun 45
		XI Corps Lieut. General Charles P. Hall, Commanding	15 Jun 45 to 14 Aug 45
En route to Japan and Occupation of Japan	Eighth Lieut. General Robert L. Eichelberger, Commanding	XI Corps	15 Aug 45 to 28 Feb 46
	Eighth	IX Corps Major General Charles W. Ryder, Commanding	1 Mar 46 to date



# ORGANIC UNITS OF THE 1ST CAVALRY DIVISION IN WORLD WAR II

1st Cavalry Division Headquarters and Headquarters Troop

1st Cavalry Division Military Police Platoon

1st Signal Troop

27th Ordnance Medium Maintenance Company

302d Mechanized Cavalry Reconnaissance Troop

603d Medium Tank Troop

Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade

5th Cavalry Regiment

12th Cavalry Regiment

Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade

7th Cavalry Regiment

8th Cavalry Regiment

Headquarters and Headquarters Battery, 1st Cavalry Division Artillery

61st Field Artillery Battalion

82d Field Artillery Battalion

99th Field Artillery Battalion

271st Field Artillery Battalion

8th Combat Engineer Squadron

1st Medical Squadron

16th Cavalry Quartermaster Squadron

In addition to the organic units of the division many other combat and service units were attached to the division at various times and contributed greatly to the successes of "The First Team." Outstanding among the combat units were the 112th Cavalry Regimental Combat Team, 947th Field Artillery Battalion (155 How), 44th Tank Battalion, 85th Chemical Mortar Battalion, 40th Naval Construction Battalion (Sea Bees).



## DISTINGUISHED UNIT CITATIONS

Following is a list units of the 1st Cavalry Division which were cited by the War Department in the name of the President of the United States as public evidence of deserved honor and distinction. Citations for several other divisional units were still pending at the time this book went to press.

UNIT	WAR DEPARTMENT GENERAL ORDER NUMBER
2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry	50, 17 June 1944
Troop "A", 8th Cavalry	57, 20 July 1944
Troop "G", 12th Cavalry	45, 12 June 1945
Troop "A", 5th Cavalry	47, 18 June 1945
Det, 1st Platoon, 603d Tank Company	53, 11 July 1945
Troop "G", 7th Cavalry	58, 19 July 1945
2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry reinforced by 2d Section, Antitank Platoon, Headquarters Troop, 7th Cavalry; P and D Section, Service Troop, 7th Cavalry; Liaison and Forward Observers Party, 99th Field Artillery Battalion; 1st Platoon, 2d Collecting Troop, 1st Medical Squadron; Detachment, 603d Tank Company	36, 19 April 1946
2d Squadron, 8th Cavalry reinforced by Reconnaissance Platoon, Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade; Reconnaissance Platoon, 8th Cavalry; Battery "B", 61st Field Artillery Battalion; 1st Platoon, Troop "C", 8th Engineer Squadron; 2d Platoon, 2d Collecting Troop, 1st Medical Squadron; Detachment, 27th Ordnance Company; and Company "B", 44th Tank Battalion	38, 20 April 1946
Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, 12th Cavalry	108, 24 September 1946
1st Squadron, 12th Cavalry reinforced by Weapons Troop, 12th Cavalry; Reconnaissance and Train Defense Platoon, 12th Cavalry; 2d Platoon, 1st Collecting Troop, 1st Medical Squadron	110, 26 September 1946



## THE 1st CAVALRY DIVISION ASSOCIATION

In the summer of 1944, when the Admiralty fighting had quieted down, a group of officers and men organized themselves into the 1st Cavalry Division Association. The memory of the campaign's brave deeds and unselfish sacrifices were still fresh in their minds when they formed this association for the purpose of recognizing and preserving the high traditions and heroic accomplishments of the 1st Cavalry Division. Other aims of the association were to promote good fellowship, to preserve and strengthen for all time the fine friendships which had sprung from cooperation in battle, and to provide a means of continuing the 1st Cav spirit after the troopers have laid down their arms and returned to civilian pursuits.

Membership in the association is open to all troopers, commissioned, warrant, and enlisted, who have served with honor in the 1st Cavalry Division, charter membership being extended to eligible persons who join the association during the period of hostilities of World War II and six months thereafter.

Sometime during the year following the declaration of peace, the association will hold a reunion of all members to determine a program which will promote the aims and purposes set forth above.

The cost of becoming a member of the 1st Cavalry Division Association is three pounds (Australian) or ten dollars (American) payable through the secretary, Colonel Edmund P. Stone, P. O. Box 201, Pomona, California. There are no annual dues and the payment of the initiation fee entitles each payee to life membership.

One of the proposed uses of the funds resulting from the collection of membership fees is the erection of a monument in memory of the gallant heroes of the division. Its type and location will be decided by the members at the first annual meeting.

Every member of the association may, upon application, become a member of the 1st Cavalry Division Last Squad Club. This club will meet annually for a dinner party and will drink a toast to the memory of all troopers who have answered the Final Rollcall.

At the time of publication of this book, there were about 5,000 members of the association. Any of the many other eligible veterans of the 1st Cavalry Division who wish to join the association may do so by sending their initiation fee to Colonel Stone.





*Colonel Royce A. Drake who lost his life while commanding the 5th Cavalry Regiment at Leyte and for whom Camp Drake is named.*

## WE SHALL NOT FORGET

In honor of 1st Cavalry Division troopers who lost their lives in World War II, several installations in Japan were named for these fallen heroes.

Camp Drake, home of the 1st Cavalry Division Headquarters and Division Special Troops during the occupation of Japan, was so named in honor of Colonel Royce A. Drake, commanding officer of the 5th Cavalry Regiment. Colonel Drake lost his life during the first night ashore when that organization made its attack on Leyte.

Camp McGill, the station of the 1st Cavalry Brigade and the 5th and 12th Cavalry Regiments, honors the memory of Sergeant Troy A. McGill, a Congressional Medal of Honor winner who was killed during a banzai attack on Los Negros Island during the early part of the Admiralty Campaign.

Camp Palmer is the name given to the former Japanese army cavalry training school. It is named for Pfc Gerald W. Palmer, "B" Troop, 8th Cavalry, who lost his life in Luzon. It is used as the 2d Cavalry Brigade rifle range.

Camp King, the station of the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry at Omiya, is named in honor of Lieut. Colonel Raymond F. King who was killed in action while commanding that squadron in Luzon.

Camp Manus, the 2d Cavalry Brigade training area on the slopes of Mt. Fuji, recalls the valiant fighting which occurred on Manus Island during the Admiralty Campaign.

Camp Drew, home of the 271st and 99th Field Artillery Battalions, honors the memory of Pvt Edwin P. Drew, a member of "B" Battery, 271st F.A. Battalion who fell in action during the Luzon Campaign.



Camp Whittington, named for Pfc Jeston C. Whittington of the 82d Field Artillery Battalion who lost his life in combat during the Luzon Campaign, is the home of that battalion in Ojima, Japan.

Cornelius Field House at Camp Drake is named for Captain William C. Cornelius who fell in the Admiralty Campaign.

Herron Field, the division baseball field, honors Staff Sergeant Earl C. Herron of Division Headquarters Troop who was killed in the San Juanico Strait during the Leyte Campaign.

Elverson Field, the 2d Cavalry Brigade athletic field, is so named in memory of 1st Lieut. Frank W. Elverson 2d Brigade Special Services Officer who was killed in action in Luzon.

Several installations of the 7th Cavalry Regiment, which is stationed in downtown Tokyo, honor fallen heroes of that organization. They are: Lewis Field, the regimental athletic field, named for the D.S.C. winner, Pfc Calvin Lewis of "B" Troop who lost his life at Antipolo in the Luzon Campaign; McKnight Barracks which houses the regimental headquarters and is named for Chaplain (Capt.) Thomas E. McKnight who was killed while performing his duty in Luzon; Gallagher Barracks, home of the 1st Squadron, is named for 1st Lieut. Francis W. Gallagher of "B" Troop who lost his life in Leyte; Judd Barracks, home of the 2d Squadron, is named for Pvt Elmer R. Judd of "F" Troop killed in Luzon; Ross Hall, the 7th Cavalry Regiment's first three graders NCO club, designated in honor of Staff Sergeant Noel B. Ross of Weapons Troop who was killed in Leyte; Craver Hall, the fourth and fifth graders NCO club, which is named for Sergeant Arthur B. Craver of "B" Troop who died in battle in Luzon; Johnson Hall, the 1st Squadron's NCO club, which pays tribute to the memory of Sergeant Earl L. Johnson of "B" Troop who was killed in action at Antipolo, Luzon; and Taylor Hall, the 2d Squadron's officers' mess, which honors Captain James V. Taylor of "G" Troop who also lost his life at Antipolo, Luzon.

The dependent housing community at Camp Drake is named Momote Village after the settlement on Los Negros Island where the division was launched into its first combat of the war. The dependent housing community of the 1st Cavalry Brigade at Camp McGill is called Admiralty Heights in memory of the Admiralty Campaign.

Several of the streets in Camp Drake and in Camp McGill are named in honor of men of the division who fell in battle while performing deeds of gallantry and heroism.

Valorous conduct, gallantry in action, and meritorious service of members of the 1st Cavalry Division during World War II were recognized by the award of medals as follows:

Congressional Medal of Honor	2
Distinguished Service Cross	28
Distinguished Service Medal	4
Silver Star	638
Legion of Merit	46
Soldier's Medal	45
Bronze Star Medal	2884
Air Medal	77
Purple Heart	2490



## PHOTO CREDITS



*These three Acme Newspictures' photographers, Frank Prist, Stanley Troutman and Tom Shafer took some of the combat pictures which appear in this book. Prist lost his life in action while covering the Leyte Campaign.*

*Carl Mydans, TIME-LIFE photographer and correspondent who accompanied the flying column on its drive to Santo Tomas.*

Credit for the photographs used in this book is indicated by page number and source as follows. Abbreviations used are: Acme for Acme Newspictures, Inc.; SC for U. S. Army Signal Corps; AAF for U. S. Army Air Force.

Australia: pages 5-13, SC.

Admiralty Campaign: page 39, Acme-Prist, SC; 40, SC, 5th Air Force; 41, 5th Air Force, SC; 42, SC; 43, SC, AAF; 44, Acme-Shafer, SC; 45, Acme-Shafer, SC; 46, Acme-Prist, SC, Acme-Shafer, SC; 47-8, SC; 49, Acme-Prist, 5th Air Force; 50, SC, Acme-Shafer; 51, SC, Acme-Prist; 52, Acme-Prist, SC; 53-4, SC; 55, Acme-Prist, SC; 56, SC, Acme-SC, SC; 57, SC; 58, Acme-Shafer, SC; 59, SC, Acme, SC; 60, SC, Acme-Shafer; 61-2, SC; 63, Acme-Shafer, SC, Acme-Prist; 64, Acme-Prist; 65, SC; 66, Acme-Shafer, SC; 67-9, SC; 70, Acme-Shafer, Acme-Prist, SC.

Leyte-Samar Campaign: 101, SC; 102, U. S. Navy, Acme, SC; 103, Coast Guard, USN; 104, SC; 105, Acme-SC; 106, Acme-Troutman; 107-8, SC; 109, Acme-SC, SC; 110-11, SC; 112, Acme-Troutman, SC; 113-16, SC; 117, Acme-Troutman, SC; 118-19, SC; 120, Acme, Acme-Prist; 121, Acme-Troutman, SC; 122, SC; 123, Coast Guard, SC; 124, SC.

Luzon Campaign: 157-58, LIFE-Mydans; 159, Acme-Hatch, SC, LIFE-Mydans; 161, SC, Acme; 162, SC, LIFE-Mydans; 163, Acme-Shafer, LIFE-Mydans; 164, SC; 165, SC, LIFE-Mydans; 166, LIFE-Mydans, SC; 167-69, LIFE-Mydans; 170, Acme-Shafer, SC; 171, SC; 172, SC, Acme-Troutman; 173, Acme-Troutman, SC; 174-77, SC; 178, SC, Acme-Hatch; 179-98, SC.

Occupation: 205, Acme; 206, SC; 207, Acme-SC, SC; 208-9, SC; 210, SC, Acme; 211, Acme-SC, SC; 212-13, SC; 214, Acme-Church, SC; 215-17, SC; 218, Acme-Shafer, SC; 219, Acme-SC, Acme-Shafer; 220, Acme, SC; 221, Acme-Shafer, SC; 222, Acme-Lopez, Acme-Church, SC; 223-24, SC; 225-27, Acme-Shafer; 228-29, SC; 230, Acme-Church, Acme-Lopez, SC; 231-32, SC; 233, Acme-Shafer; 234, SC, Courtesy of Pacific Stars and Stripes; 241, Acme, LIFE.



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org



JAPAN

Tokyo

CHINA

Luzon

PHILIPPINES

Leyte

MANILA

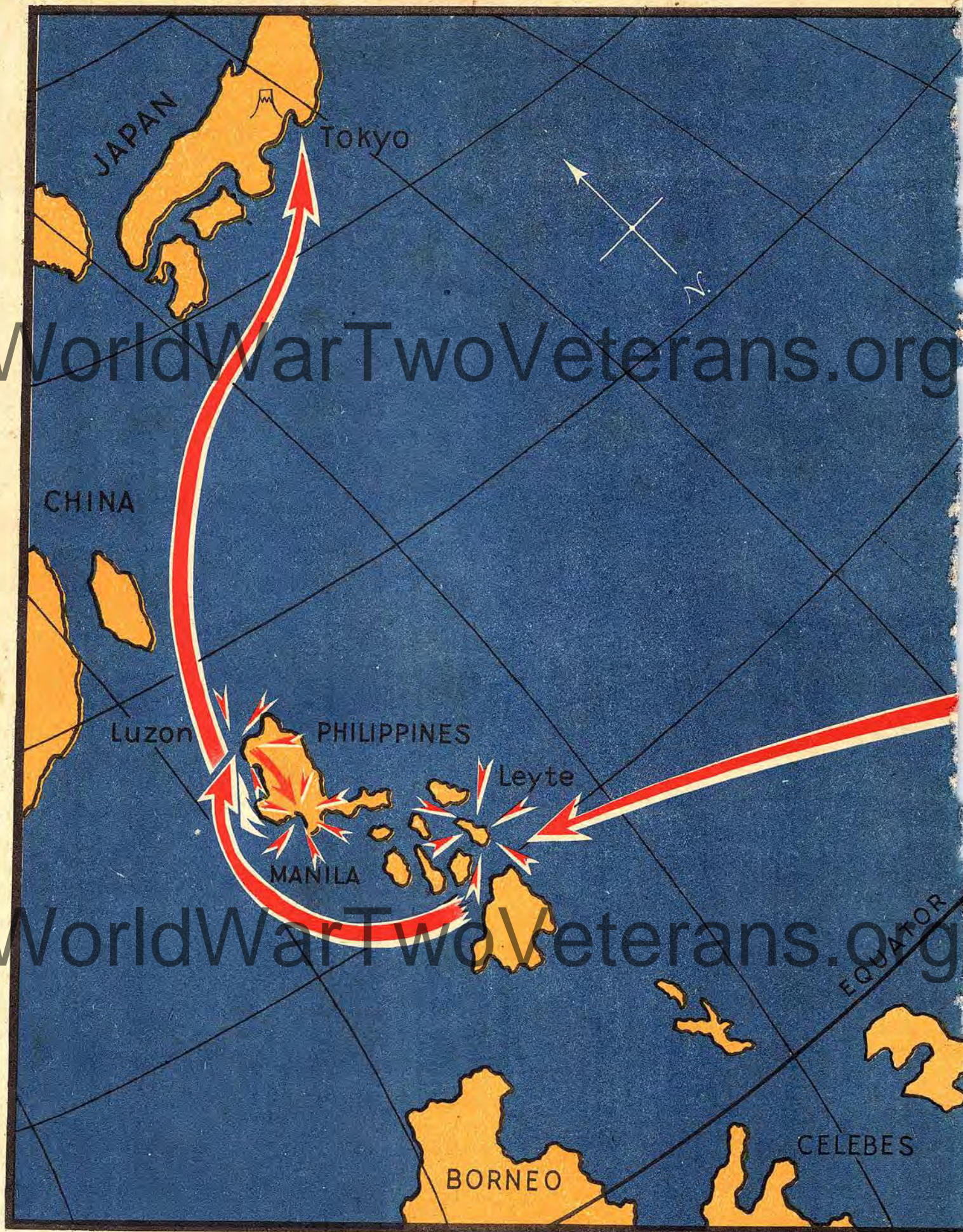
BORNEO

CELEBES

EQUATOR

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

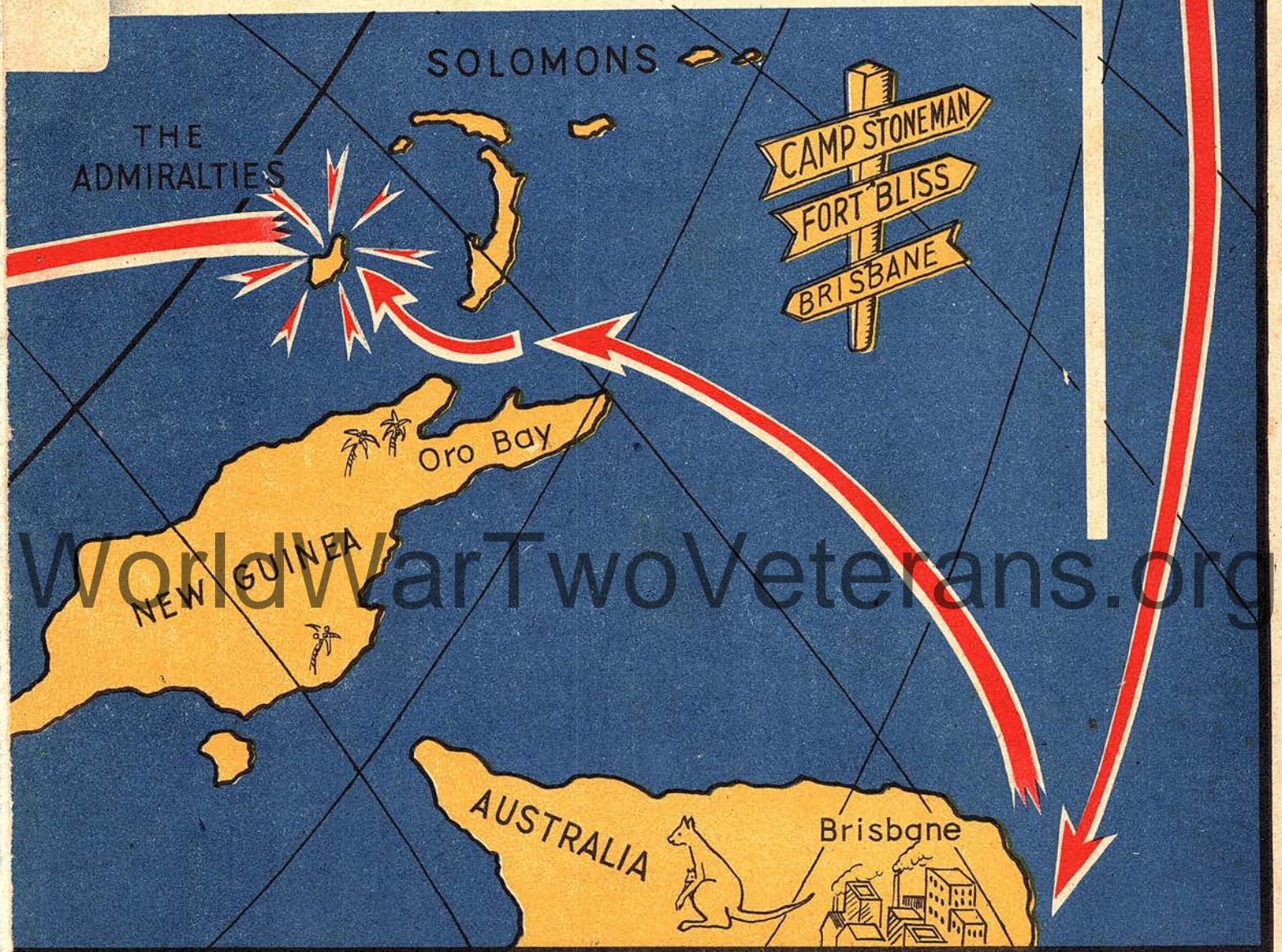




# Road to Tokyo



1ST CAVALRY DIVISION





WorldWarTwoVeterans.org

WorldWarTwoVeterans.org